

The minitoc package^{*}

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

22nd March 2007

^{*}This document corresponds to minitoc v53, dated 2007/03/22.

Summary

Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
About this document	19
I User's Manual	21
1 The minitoc package	23
2 Frequently Asked Questions	53
3 Memento	77
4 Examples of documents	86
5 Messages	145
6 Jargon	195
7 Installation	226
8 Postface	231
Acknowledgments	240
II Implementation	243
9 Commented code of the minitoc package	245
10 Commented code of the mtcoff package	419
11 Commented code of the mtcmess package	433
12 Patch for the memoir class	434

<i>SUMMARY</i>	3
13 The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	436
III Complements	528
Bibliography	530
Changes History	561
Index	593

Table of Contents

Summary	2
Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
About this document	19
 I User's Manual	 21
1 The minitoc package	23
1.1 Introduction	24
1.1.1 Important restrictions	25
1.1.2 Version	25
1.2 License	25
1.3 Using the minitoc package	26
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	26
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	26
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	28
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	32
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	33
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	38
1.4.7 Position of the titles	38
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	38
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	38
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	38
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles	39
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	39
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	39
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	40
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	41

1.4.12	Languages for the titles	41
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	42
1.5	Special Features	44
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	44
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	44
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	45
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	46
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	46
1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.5	Special Entries in the Table of contents	47
1.6	The notoccite option	49
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	49
1.8	The hints option	49
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	51
1.10	Why several L ^A T _E X runs are required ?	52
1.11	The mtcoff package	52
2	Frequently Asked Questions	53
2.0	Introduction	54
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	54
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	55
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	55
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	55
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	56
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	56
2.7	Supported document classes	56
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	56
2.9	Other mini-tables	57
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	57
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	58
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	58
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	59
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	59
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	59
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	59
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	59
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	60
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	60
2.20	Use with the appendix package	60
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	61
2.22	Use with the memoir class	62
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	63
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	63
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	63
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	67
2.27	Use with the abstract package	67
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	67
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	67

2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	68
2.31	Use with packages for captions	69
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	69
2.33	Use with the varsects package	69
2.34	Initial font settings	69
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	71
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	71
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package	72
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	72
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	72
2.40	Use with the romannum package	72
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	72
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	73
2.43	Use with the captcont package	73
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before or after parttoes, partlofs, and partlots titles	73
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable	74
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages	75
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package	76
3	Memento	77
4	Examples of documents	86
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	87
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	88
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file	89
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file	92
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file	97
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file	102
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file	103
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file	103
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file	108
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file	114
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	118
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file	120
4.13	The mtc-fko.tex document file	120
4.14	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	121
4.15	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	123
4.16	The mtc-gap.tex document file	124
4.17	The mtc-hi1.tex document file	124
4.18	The mtc-hi2.tex document file	124
4.19	The mtc-hia.tex document file	125
4.20	The mtc-hir.tex document file	125
4.21	The mtc-hop.tex document file	126
4.22	The mtc-liv.tex document file	128
4.23	The mtc-mem.tex document file	132
4.24	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	132
4.25	The mtc-mu.tex document file	133
4.26	The mtc-sbf.tex document file	135
4.27	The mtc-scr.tex document file	137

4.28	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	138
4.29	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	140
4.30	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	141
4.31	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	142
4.32	The <code>mtc-tsfc.tex</code> document file	142
5	Messages	145
5.1	Introduction	145
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	147
5.2.1	Informative messages	147
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	155
5.2.2	Warning messages	158
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	163
5.2.3	Error messages	179
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	192
5.3.1	Warning messages	192
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	194
6	Jargon	195
7	Installation	226
8	Postface	231
8.1	The origins	231
8.2	New design in 1993	232
8.3	Developments in 1994	232
8.4	No developments in 1995	233
8.5	Developments en 1996	233
8.6	Developments in 1997	233
8.7	Developments in 1998	233
8.8	Developments in 1999	233
8.9	Developments in 2000	234
8.10	Developments in 2001	234
8.11	Developments in 2002	234
8.12	Developments in 2003	234
8.13	Developments in 2004	235
8.14	Developments in 2005	235
8.15	Developments in 2006	237
	Acknowledgments	240
II	Implementation	243
9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	245
9.1	Introduction	248
9.2	Identification code	249
9.3	A file descriptor to write	249
9.4	Indentation and skip	249
9.5	Tests and flags	250
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	250

9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	251
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	251
9.5.4	Insertion of empty mini-tables	252
9.5.5	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	252
9.5.6	Flags to check if some commands are used	253
9.5.7	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	254
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoc</code> option	255
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	255
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	256
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	256
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captocont</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.10	Is the memoir class loaded ?	259
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	260
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	262
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	262
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	263
9.15	Section level macros	263
9.16	Corrections for numbering	264
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	264
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	264
9.19	Chapter level macros	265
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	265
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	265
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	266
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	266
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	268
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	268
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	269
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	271
9.28	Fake tables of contents	274
9.29	Depth counters for <code>minilofs</code> and <code>minilots</code>	274
9.30	Chapter level commands	275
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	275
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	277
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	277
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	278
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	278
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	278

9.35.2 The <code>\minilof</code> command	282
9.35.3 The <code>\minilot</code> command	285
9.36 Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	288
9.37 The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	288
9.38 TOC entries without leaders	289
9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders	289
9.40 The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	290
9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	293
9.41 Mini-lists of figures	297
9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	297
9.42 Mini-lists of tables	300
9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	300
9.43 Macro to write a contents line	302
9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	303
9.45 Part level commands	304
9.46 Fonts for the parttocs	305
9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables	305
9.48 The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	307
9.49 The part level mini-tables : <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code>	308
9.49.1 The <code>\parttoc</code> command	308
9.49.2 The <code>\partlof</code> command	311
9.49.3 The <code>\partlot</code> command	314
9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	317
9.51 Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	317
9.52 The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	317
9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs	320
9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs	323
9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots	326
9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	328
9.54 Section-level commands	328
9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	329
9.56 Internal macros for title positioning	329
9.57 The <code>stc@verse</code> environment	330
9.58 The <code>\secttoc</code> , <code>\sectlof</code> , and <code>\sectlot</code> commands	330
9.58.1 The <code>\secttoc</code> command	331
9.58.2 The <code>\sectlof</code> command	333
9.58.3 The <code>\sectlot</code> command	336
9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level	338
9.60 Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	339
9.61 The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	340
9.62 End of section-level commands	350
9.63 The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	350
9.64 Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	351
9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values	351
9.66 The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	352
9.66.1 Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	352
9.66.2 The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	354
9.66.3 The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	358
9.66.4 The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	359
9.66.5 The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	360

9.66.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	365
9.66.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	367
9.66.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	369
9.66.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	372
9.67	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	373
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	375
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	377
9.70	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	378
9.71	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	378
9.72	The “coffee breaks”	379
9.73	Initialization of counters	380
9.74	Declarations for simple options	380
9.74.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	380
9.74.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	380
9.74.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	380
9.74.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	381
9.74.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	381
9.75	The <code>insection</code> option	381
9.76	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	382
9.77	Language options	382
9.78	The <code>hints</code> option	388
9.78.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	388
9.78.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	389
9.78.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	389
9.78.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	389
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	390
9.78.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	390
9.78.1.6	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	390
9.78.1.7	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	391
9.78.1.8	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	392
9.78.1.9	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	392
9.78.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	393
9.78.1.11	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	393
9.78.1.12	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	394
9.78.1.13	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	394
9.78.1.13.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	394
9.78.1.13.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	395
9.78.1.13.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	395
9.78.1.14	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands	396
9.78.2	Final part : <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	397
9.78.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	397
9.78.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	397
9.78.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	399
9.78.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	401
9.78.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	404
9.78.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	405
9.78.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	405
9.78.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	405
9.78.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	406

9.78.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	406
9.78.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	406
9.78.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	407
9.78.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	407
9.78.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	407
9.78.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	408
9.78.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	408
9.78.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	408
9.78.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	409
9.78.2.19	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	409
9.78.2.20	Check if obsolete commands have been used	411
9.78.2.21	Check if some hints have been written	412
9.79	Processing of options	412
9.79.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	413
9.79.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	414
9.79.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	414
9.79.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	415
9.79.5	Saving the sectionning commands	415
9.80	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	416
9.81	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	418
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	419
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ?	420
10.2	Identification of the package	420
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	421
10.4	Faking simple commands	423
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	423
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	424
10.7	Disabling the font commands	425
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	426
10.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	426
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	427
10.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	427
10.12	Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command	427
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	427
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	428
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	428
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	429
10.17	Caution for some commands	429
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	431
10.19	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	431
10.20	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth</code> internal commands	431
10.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	432
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	432
10.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	432
11	Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package	433
12	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	434

13 The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	436
13.1 “Acadian” language : acadian.mld	440
13.2 “Acadien” language : acadien.mld	441
13.3 “Afrikaan” language : afrikaan.mld	441
13.4 “Afrikaans” language : afrikaans.mld	442
13.5 “Albanian” language : albanian.mld	442
13.6 “American” language : american.mld	442
13.7 “Arab” language : arab.mld	443
13.8 “Arab2” language : arab2.mld	443
13.9 “Arabi” language : arabi.mld	444
13.10 “Arabic” language : arabic.mld	444
13.11 “Armenian” language : armenian.mld	444
13.12 “Australian” language : australian.mld	445
13.13 “Austrian” language : austrian.mld	445
13.14 “Bahasa” language : bahasa.mld	445
13.15 “Bahasai” language : bahasai.mld	446
13.16 “Bahasam” language : bahasam.mld	446
13.17 “Bangla” language : bangla.mld	447
13.18 “Basque” language : basque.mld	447
13.19 “Bicig” language : bicig.mld	448
13.20 “Bicig2” language : bicig2.mld	449
13.21 “Bicig3” language : bicig3.mld	449
13.22 “Bithe” language : bithe.mld	450
13.23 “Brazil” language : brazil.mld	450
13.24 “Brazilian” language : brazilian.mld	451
13.25 “Breton” language : breton.mld	451
13.26 “British” language : british.mld	451
13.27 “Bulgarian” language : bulgarian.mld	452
13.28 “Bulgarianb” language : bulgarianb.mld	452
13.29 “Buryat” language : buryat.mld	453
13.30 “Buryat2” language : buryat2.mld	454
13.31 “Canadian” language : canadian.mld	454
13.32 “Canadien” language : canadien.mld	454
13.33 “Castillan” language : castillan.mld	455
13.34 “Castillian” language : castillian.mld	455
13.35 “Catalan” language : catalan.mld	455
13.36 “Chinese1” language : chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo	456
13.37 “Chinese2” language : chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo	456
13.38 “Croatian” language : croatian.mld	457
13.39 “Czech” language : czech.mld	457
13.40 “Danish” language : danish.mld	458
13.41 “Devanagari” language : devanagari.mld	458
13.42 “Dutch” language : dutch.mld	459
13.43 “English” language : english.mld	459
13.44 “English1” language : english1.mld	460
13.45 “English2” language : english2.mld	460
13.46 “Esperant” language : esperant.mld	461
13.47 “Esperanto” language : esperanto.mld	461
13.48 “Estonian” language : estonian.mld	462

13.49	“Ethiopia” language : <code>ethiopia.mld</code>	462
13.50	“Ethiopian” language : <code>ethiopian.mld</code>	463
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language : <code>ethiopian2.mld</code>	463
13.52	“Farsi1” language : <code>farsi1.mld</code> and <code>farsi1.mlo</code>	464
13.53	“Farsi2” language : <code>farsi2.mld</code> and <code>farsi2.mlo</code>	464
13.54	“Farsi3” language : <code>farsi3.mld</code>	465
13.55	“Finnish” language : <code>finnish.mld</code>	465
13.56	“Finnish2” language : <code>finnish2.mld</code>	466
13.57	“Francais” language : <code>francais.mld</code>	466
13.58	“French” language : <code>french.mld</code>	467
13.59	“French1” language : <code>french1.mld</code>	467
13.60	“French2” language : <code>french2.mld</code>	468
13.61	“Frenchb” language : <code>frenchb.mld</code>	469
13.62	“Frenchle” language : <code>frenchle.mld</code>	469
13.63	“Frenchpro” language : <code>frenchpro.mld</code>	469
13.64	“Galician” language : <code>galician.mld</code>	469
13.65	“German” language : <code>german.mld</code>	470
13.66	“Germanb” language : <code>germanb.mld</code>	471
13.67	“Germanb2” language : <code>germanb2.mld</code>	471
13.68	“Greek” language : <code>greek.mld</code>	472
13.69	“Greek-mono” language : <code>greek-mono.mld</code>	472
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language : <code>greek-polydemo.mld</code>	473
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language : <code>greek-polykatha.mld</code>	474
13.72	“Guarani” language : <code>guarani.mld</code>	475
13.73	“Hangul1” language : <code>hangul1.mld</code> and <code>hangul1.mlo</code>	476
13.74	“Hangul2” language : <code>hangul2.mld</code> and <code>hangul2.mlo</code>	476
13.75	“Hangul3” language : <code>hangul3.mld</code> and <code>hangul3.mlo</code>	477
13.76	“Hangul4” language : <code>hangul4.mld</code> and <code>hangul4.mlo</code>	477
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language : <code>hangul-u8.mld</code> and <code>hangul-u8.mlo</code>	478
13.78	“Hanja1” language : <code>hanja1.mld</code> and <code>hanja1.mlo</code>	478
13.79	“Hanja2” language : <code>hanja2.mld</code> and <code>hanja2.mlo</code>	479
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language : <code>hanja-u8.mld</code> and <code>hanja-u8.mlo</code>	479
13.81	“Hebrew” language : <code>hebrew.mld</code>	480
13.82	“Hebrew2” language : <code>hebrew2.mld</code>	481
13.83	“Hindi” language : <code>hindi.mld</code>	481
13.84	“Hindi-modern” language : <code>hindi-modern.mld</code>	482
13.85	“Hungarian” language : <code>hungarian.mld</code>	482
13.86	“Icelandic” language : <code>icelandic.mld</code>	483
13.87	“Indon” language : <code>indon.mld</code>	483
13.88	“Indonesian” language : <code>indonesian.mld</code>	483
13.89	“Interlingua” language : <code>interlingua.mld</code>	484
13.90	“Irish” language : <code>irish.mld</code>	484
13.91	“Italian” language : <code>italian.mld</code>	485
13.92	“Italian2” language : <code>italian2.mld</code>	485
13.93	“Japanese” language : <code>japanese.mld</code> and <code>japanese.mlo</code>	486
13.94	“Japanese2” language : <code>japanese2.mld</code> and <code>japanese2.mlo</code>	486
13.95	“Japanese3” language : <code>japanese3.mld</code> and <code>japanese3.mlo</code>	487
13.96	“Japanese4” language : <code>japanese4.mld</code> and <code>japanese4.mlo</code>	487
13.97	“Japanese5” language : <code>japanese5.mld</code> and <code>japanese5.mlo</code>	488

13.98	“Japanese6” language : japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	488
13.99	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	489
13.100	“Khalka” language : khalkha.mld	489
13.101	“Latin” language : latin.mld	489
13.102	“Latin2” language : latin2.mld	490
13.103	“Latvian” language : latvian.mld	491
13.104	“Letton” language : letton.mld	491
13.105	“Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	491
13.106	“Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	492
13.107	“Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	493
13.108	“Magyar” language : magyar.mld	493
13.109	“Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	493
13.110	“Magyar3” language : magyar3.mld	494
13.111	“Malay” language : malay.mld	494
13.112	“Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	495
13.113	“Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	495
13.114	“Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	496
13.115	“Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	496
13.116	“Manju” language : manju.mld	497
13.117	“Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld	497
13.118	“Mongol” language : mongol.mld	497
13.119	“Mongolb” language : mongolb.mld	498
13.120	“Mongolian” language : mongolian.mld	499
13.121	“Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld	499
13.122	“Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld	500
13.123	“Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld	500
13.124	“Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld	500
13.125	“Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld	501
13.126	“Norsk” language : norsk.mld	501
13.127	“Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld	502
13.128	“Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld	502
13.129	“Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld	503
13.130	“Polish” language : polish.mld	503
13.131	“Polish2” language : polish2.mld	504
13.132	“Polski” language : polski.mld	504
13.133	“Portuges” language : portuges.mld	505
13.134	“Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld	505
13.135	“Romanian” language : romanian.mld	506
13.136	“Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld	506
13.137	“Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld	507
13.138	“Russian” language : russian.mld	507
13.139	“Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld	508
13.140	“Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld	509
13.141	“Russianb” language : russianb.mld	510
13.142	“Russianc” language : russianc.mld	511
13.143	“Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	511
13.144	“Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	512
13.145	“Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	512

13.146 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	512
13.147 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	513
13.148 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	513
13.149 “Samin” language : samin.mld	514
13.150 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld	514
13.151 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld	515
13.152 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld	515
13.153 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld	516
13.154 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld	517
13.155 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld	517
13.156 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld	518
13.157 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld	518
13.158 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld	519
13.159 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld	519
13.160 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld	520
13.161 “Thai” language : thai.mld and thai.mlo	520
13.162 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld	521
13.163 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld	521
13.164 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld	522
13.165 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld	522
13.166 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld	522
13.167 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld	522
13.168 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld	523
13.169 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld	523
13.170 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld	524
13.171 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld	524
13.172 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld	525
13.173 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld	525
13.174 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld	525
13.175 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld	526
13.176 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld	526
13.177 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld	527

III Complements	528
Bibliography	530
Changes History	561
Index	593

List of Figures

1.1	Float barriers	30
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	42
2.1	Three compilations for minitoc	55

List of Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	27
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	28
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	31
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	33
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	34
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	35
1.7	Available languages	36
1.8	Horizontal rules	43
1.9	Page numbers	43
1.10	Features for mini-tables	45
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	51
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	74
3.1	Package options	77
3.2	General commands	78
3.3	Commands : part level	79
3.4	Commands : chapter level	80
3.5	Commands : section level	81
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	82
3.7	Commands for page numbers	82
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	83
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	83
3.10	Adjustment commands	84
3.11	Obsolete commands	84
3.12	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	85
6.1	Category codes	201
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	201
6.3	Standard document classes	202
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	204
6.5	Various encodings	205
6.6	Most common font encodings	217
6.7	Most common font families	217
6.8	Most common font series	217
6.9	Most common font shapes	218
6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	218
6.11	Author commands for fonts	218

<i>LIST OF TABLES</i>	18
6.12 Some systems derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$	219
7.1 List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>)	227
7.2 A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the minitoc files	228
9.1 Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions	267

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 22):
 - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 23, describes the essential commands to use the package;
 - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 53, may help you to solve some specific problems;
 - the “Memento” chapter, page 77, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
 - the “Examples of documents” chapter, page 86, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
 - the “Messages” chapter, page 145, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages;
 - the “Jargon” chapter, page 195, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
 - the “Installation” chapter, page 226, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
 - the “Postface” chapter, page 231, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 244, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 436, may be useful if you are interested by some language.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 529, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [123], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables; as the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks, these mini-tables should help you to navigate in the document;
- the `booktabs` package [132] to format the tables;
- the `doc` [239] and `docstrip` [209] packages to document the code.

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The minitoc package	23
2	Frequently Asked Questions	53
3	Memento	77
4	Examples of documents	86
5	Messages	145
6	Jargon	195
7	Installation	226
8	Postface	231
	Acknowledgments	240

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	24
1.1.1	Important restrictions	25
1.1.2	Version	25
1.2	License	25
1.3	Using the minitoc package	26
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	26
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	26
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	28
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	32
1.4	Typesetting of the mini-tables	33
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	38
1.4.7	Position of the titles	38
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	38
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	38
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	38
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	39
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	39
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	39
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	40
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	41
1.4.12	Languages for the titles	41
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	42
1.5	Special Features	44
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	44
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	44
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	45
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	46
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	46

1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.5	Special Entries in the Table of contents	47
1.6	The notoccite option	49
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	49
1.8	The hints option	49
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	51
1.10	Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?	52
1.11	The mtcff package	52

Figures

1.1	Float barriers	30
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	42

Tables

1.1	Commands for a minitoc	27
1.2	Commands for a secttoc	28
1.3	Commands for a parttoc	31
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	33
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	34
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	35
1.7	Available languages	36
1.8	Horizontal rules	43
1.9	Page numbers	43
1.10	Features for mini-tables	45
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	51

1.1 Introduction

The minitoc package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 231. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report` [204]) or sections (classes like `article`²) [204]. Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use

¹ The minitoc package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard `proc` class [203], and the `ltxdoc` [99] and `ltnews` [180] classes, load the standard `article` class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the `article` class.

section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions

Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectioning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.



1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #53. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 231) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 561.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L^AT_EX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don’t bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter` `\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}`

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the following page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc*(*N*), where (*N*) is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is *.mlf*(*N*) for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt*(*N*) for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending on the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc*(*N*), *document.mlf*(*N*), and
document.mlt(*N*) files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectioning commands; if you modify sectioning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you ask for details with a high value for `minitocdepth`.

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [97], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>or:</code>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dominitoc</code>	
<code>\dominilof</code>	
<code>\dominilot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fake\listoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fake\listoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\chapter{...}</code>	
<code>\minitoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

<code>\dosecttoc</code>	The commands <code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , and <code>\dosectlot</code> (for mini-tables at the section level) and <code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , and <code>\dopartlot</code> (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.
<code>\dosectlof</code>	
<code>\dosectlot</code>	
<code>\doparttoc</code>	
<code>\dopartlof</code>	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for <i>all</i> the mini-tables.
<code>\dopartlot</code>	
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	
<code>\listoffigures</code>	
<code>\listoftables</code>	To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must <i>imperatively be put before</i> any command analog to the <code>\tableofcontents</code> , <code>\listoffigures</code> , and <code>\listoftables</code> commands, or their <code>\fake...</code> siblings.

It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption`-like command producing an entry in the list of figure (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot` commands); else disorder in the mini-tables might result.



Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add the section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56).

`\usepackage` As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the
`\FloatBarrier` section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:



```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent sectlofs and sectlots. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [9] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the following page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [210] and [242, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section. In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [221] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [207].



If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3 on page 31. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.ptc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf<N>` for partial lists of figures and is `.plt<N>` for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56).

Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a `minilof` for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a `partlof` for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (`secttoc`, `sectlof`, and `sectlot`) and to the part-level mini-tables (`parttoc`, `partlof`, and `partlot`).



But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Donald ARSENEAU

⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

With the section option	
Command	Action
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
With the above option	
Command	Action
\section	$\uparrow \uparrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
With the below option	
Command	Action
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\downarrow \downarrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
With the above and below options	
Command	Action
\section	$\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	Float inserted here
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 28) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `document.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [107, 109] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

`\addstarredpart` **NOTE:** if using `\chapter*` and a
`\addstarredchapter`
`\addstarredsection` `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}`

command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:



```
\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}
```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

`\addcontentsline` `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}`

for example, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```
\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}
```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):
`\adjustmtc` the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`
`\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or `\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff` package (see section 1.11 on page 52) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others), but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic commands of L^AT_EX, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

```
\adjustptc[n]
\adjustmtc[n]
\adjuststc[n]
```

where n is the increment (default: 1).

Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>

<code>\decrementptc</code>	There are similar commands to <i>decrement</i> or <i>increment</i> by 1 these counters:
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	<code>\decrementptc</code> , <code>\decrementmtc</code> , <code>\decrementstc</code> , <code>\incrementptc</code> , <code>\incrementmtc</code> ,
<code>\decrementstc</code>	and <code>\incrementstc</code> ; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.
<code>\incrementptc</code>	
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	
<code>\incrementstc</code>	
<code>\mtcaddpart</code>	A more clever way to solve this problem is to use commands similar to:
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	
<code>\mtcaddsection</code>	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>

This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 68 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.



1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

<code>\mtcfont</code>	The mini-table of contents is typeset in the <code>\mtcfont</code> font, which is <code>\small\rmfamily</code> by default. In fact, the font <code>\mtcfont</code> is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof or minilot.
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are typeset in the
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<code>\mtcSfont</code> font, which is <code>\small\bfseries</code> by default. For subsections, subsubsections,
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands <code>\mtcSSfont</code> , <code>\mtcSSSfont</code> , <code>\mtcPfont</code> and
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<code>\mtcSPfont</code> are available (by default, <code>\small\rmfamily</code>) to enable the use of various
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts <code>\mlffont</code> and <code>\mltfont</code> ,
<code>\mlffont</code>	which are <code>\small\rmfamily</code> by default. There are also <code>\mlfSfont</code> and <code>\mltSfont</code> for
<code>\mltfont</code>	sub-figures and sub-tables entries. See tables 1.5 on the following page and 1.6 on page 35 ⁹ .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	
<code>\mltSfont</code>	

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
*for document classes with <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., book, report).			
**for document classes with no <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., article).			
[†] default for english; changed by the language definition files or <code>\renewcommand</code> .			
All these fonts use <code>\rmfamily</code> , <code>\upshape</code> , and <code>\mdseries</code> by default.			

Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence it is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed ¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can often be adjusted by changing some fonts.



¹⁰This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [186]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [285]), by example, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 67.

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

<code>\mtifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\mtifont</code> (<code>\large\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text strings
<code>\mtctitle</code>	of the titles are defined by <code>\mtctitle</code> , <code>\mlftitle</code> and <code>\mltttitle</code> , which are the strings
<code>\mlftitle</code>	“Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined
<code>\mltttitle</code>	by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	The language definition files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (the suffix <code>.mld</code> means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on the next page and section 1.4.12 on page 41) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

1. afrikaan (afrikaans)	29. english [†] (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	51. greek- polykatha ^{c,e}	82. magyar2	110. russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
2. albanian		52. guarani ^h	83. magyar3	111. russian- lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
3. arab (arabic) ^c		53. hangul1 ^{c,d,g}	84. malayalam-keli ^c	112. russian- lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
4. arab2 ^{a,c}		54. hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	85. malayalam- omega ^{c,e,g,h}	113. russian- lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
5. arabi ^{c,j}		55. hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	86. malayalam- rachana ^c	114. samin
6. armenian ^c	30. english1	56. hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	87. malayalam- rachana2 ^c	115. scottish
7. bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	31. english2	57. hangul-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	88. mongol ^c	116. serbian
8. bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	32. esperant (esperanto)	58. hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	89. mongolb (mongolian) ^{c,f,h}	117. serbianc ^c
9. bangla ^c	33. estonian	59. hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	90. ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	118. slovak
10. basque	34. ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	60. hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}		119. slovene
11. bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	35. ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	61. hebrew ^{c,h}	91. ngermanb2	120. spanish (castillan, castillian)
12. bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	36. farsi1 ^{c,f,g}	62. hebrew2 ^{c,h}	92. norsk	121. spanish2
13. bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	37. farsi2 ^{c,f,g}	63. hindi-modern ^c	93. norsk2	122. spanish3 ^{e,f}
14. bithe (manju) ^c	38. farsi3 ^{c,j}	64. icelandic ^f	94. nynorsk	123. spanish4
15. brazil (brazilian)	39. finnish	65. interlingua	95. nynorsk2	124. swedish
16. breton	40. finnish2	66. irish	96. polish	125. swedish2
17. bulgarian ^c	41. french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	67. italian	97. polish2 ^{c,e}	126. thai ^{c,d,f,g}
18. bulgarianb ^c		68. italian2	98. polski ^c	127. turkish
19. buryat ^c	42. french1	69. japanese ^{c,d,g}	99. portuguese (portuges)	128. ukrainian (ukraineb) ^{b,c}
20. buryat2 ^c	43. french2	70. japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	100. romanian	129. uppersorbian (usorbian)
21. catalan	44. galician	71. japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	101. romanian2	130. vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
22. chinese1 ^{c,g}	45. german (austrian)	72. japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	102. romanian3	131. welsh
23. chinese2 ^{c,g}	46. germanb	73. japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	103. russian ^{b,c}	132. xalx (khalkha) ^c
24. croatian	47. germanb2	74. japanese6 ^{c,d,g}	104. russianb ^{b,c}	133. xalx2 ^c
25. czech	48. greek ^c	75. kannada ^c	105. russianc ^{b,c}	134. xalx3 ^c
26. danish	49. greek-mono ^{c,e}	76. latin	106. russian2m ^{c,e}	
27. devanagari (hindi) ^c	50. greek- polydemo ^{c,e}	77. latin2	107. russian2o ^{c,e}	
28. dutch		78. latvian (letton) ^e	108. russian-cca ^{c,g,h}	
		79. lithuanian	109. russian-cca1 ^{c,g,h}	
		80. lowersorbian (lsorbian)		
		81. magyar (hungarian)		

() The languages between parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

[†] The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory.

^a The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [198, 199] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [44, 45], but russianb [208] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [216, 217].

^e Requires Lambda (Λ), the version of L^AT_EX for Omega (Ω).

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The bicig language is also known as uighur.

^j The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the Arabi package [178].

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as
`\ptcCfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning
`\ptcSfont` of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.
`\ptcSSfont` Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by
`\ptcSSSfont` default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily`
`\ptcPfont` by default. For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands
`\ptcSPfont` `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default,
`\plffont` `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Partial lists of figures and tables
`\pltfont` are typeset in the fonts `\plffont` and `\pltfont`, which are `\normalsize\rmfamily` by
`\plfSfont` default. There are also `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.
`\pltSfont`

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

`\ptifont` Titles are typeset in the `\ptifont` (`\LARGE\bfseries` by default) font and the text
`\ptctitle` strings of the titles are defined by `\ptctitle`, `\plftitle` and `\plttitle`, which are the
`\plftitle` strings “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title
`\plttitle` commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetttitle` for languages other
`\mtcsetttitle` than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and many
`\mtcselectlanguage` others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the preceding page) are available. Read also
section 1.4.12 on page 41. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language
(see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the
`\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as
`\stcSSfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning
`\stcSSSfont` of a secttoc, sectlof or sectlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.
`\stcPfont` Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries`
`\stcSPfont` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is
`\slffont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands
`\sltfont` `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you
`\slfSfont` want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts
`\sltSfont` `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There
are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\sltttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on page 36 and explained in section 1.4.12 on page 41) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

`\doparttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof` and `\dopartlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one parttoc (or partlof or partlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\parttoc` (or `\partlof` or `\partlot`).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

`\dominitoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for “empty” (“no” title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\minitoc` (or `\minilof` or `\minilot`).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one sectoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:

`\dopartlof`

`\dopartlot`

`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,

`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,

`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,

`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`

`\dosectlof`

`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positioning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\mtcprepare`

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`

`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,

`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,

`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`

`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positioning only for the title of the current mini-table.

`\sectlof`

`\sectlot`

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\tightmtctrue`

`\tightmtcfalse`

But with the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set `\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends on the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option, `parskip` option and variants).

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\ktightmtctrue`

`\ktightmtcfalse`

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:

`\mtcsetttitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectionning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the parttocs, partlofs and partlofs) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [44, 45] of Johannes L. BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [198, 199], `Arabi` [178], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [114], `BangTeX` (bangla) [263], `CervanTeX` (spanish) [36]. `Devanāgarī` for `TeX` [265], `ethiop` [35], `guarani` [38], `malayalam` [3] and `omal` [4], `MonTeX` (mongol) [110, 113], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [216, 217], `PLaTeX` [258, 319] (polish), `SLaTeX` [231] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` [129] (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam` [218] — `latvian` (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* (Λ), i.e., the Omega (Ω) version of `LATeX`, (see [194]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome. See table 1.7 on page 36.

But for some oriental languages¹¹, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹², not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of `minitoc` package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.



¹¹Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹²The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

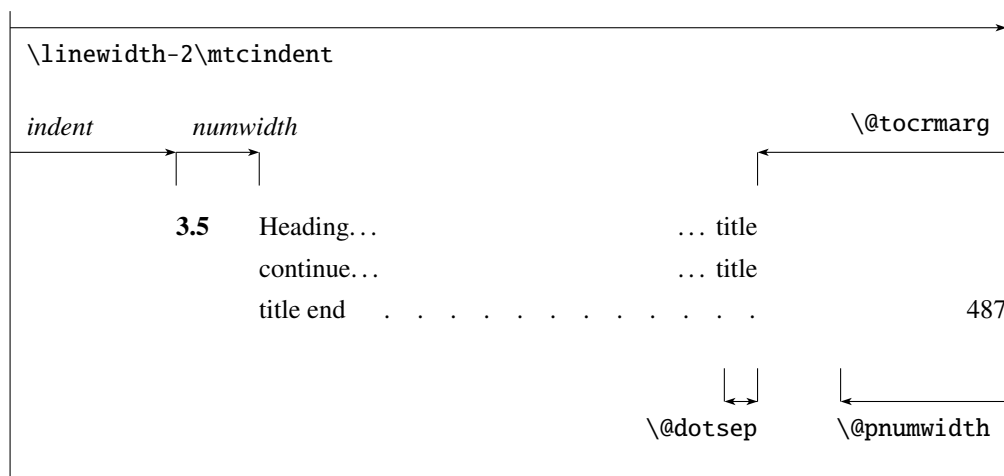


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

1.4.13 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 (this figure is adapted from [324]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but \LaTeX commands, created by \newcommand , modifiable via \renewcommand).

- \@dotsep , which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- \@pnumwidth , is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a \LaTeX command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- \@tocrmarg , is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than \@pnumwidth , and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

\mtcsetformat As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on specific mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the \mtcsetformat command:

$\text{\mtcsetformat}\{mini-table\}\{parameter\}\{value\}$

where *mini-table* is one of the parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof or sectlot keywords; *parameter* is one of the dotinterval (for

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
	rules in		no rules in	book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

`\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long.

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2 on the preceding page).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 on the page before are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.13 on page 42.

¹³0 and o are the letter O, Ø is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlof	<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlot	<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
minitoc	<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{command}</code> Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a parttoc (or a partlof or a partlot), in a book- or report-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10, whose meaning is obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: *parttoc... sectlot*. *keyword* is one of the followings: *before*, *after* or *pagestyle*. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁴

The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}`, because in document classes defining the `\chapter` command, the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages. If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour comes from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the *empty* page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short example¹⁵:



```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
{\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{thispagestyle}%
{\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
{\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each *parttoc*, then we set the *empty* page style for the first page of the *parttocs*, the *myheadings* page style for the following pages of the *parttocs*, and set *headings* page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

¹⁴This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [22], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the *minitoc* package.

¹⁵This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

1.5.4.1 Before version #23 (1994/11/08)

`\firstpartis` To make the minitoc package work with such documents, you must insert the command:
`\firstchapteris`
`\firstsectionis` `\firstchapteris{⟨N⟩}`

before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands. $\langle N \rangle$ is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a

`\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}`

command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis` commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

1.5.4.2 Since version #23 (1994/11/08)

These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

**1.5.5 Special Entries in the Table of contents**

If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the `tocbibind` package [327] by Peter R. WILSON (this package is available from the CTAN archives).



`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the `.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl` KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`, `bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxTOTOC`). The solutions are the same ones.

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the involved
`\tableofcontents` commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.
`\listoffigures`
`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography` command.

`\printindex` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just after the `\printglossary` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixglossary      \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
                    \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
                    \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



`\printindex` For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printindex` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixindex      \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
                  \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
                  \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc(N)` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 92) and `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 97) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.



1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run \TeX using the `unsrt` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`¹⁶. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the \TeX run. Under Unix or Linux, you can use something like:

```
cat document.maf | \tool{xargs} -i -t \rm {}
```

1.8 The hints option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:



- `\part` • Alteration of some of the following commands¹⁷: `\part`, `\@part`, `\@spart`, `\chapter`, `\@chapter`, `\@schapter`, `\section`, `\@sect`, and `\@ssect`. Note that the `hyperref` package (see section 2.17 on page 59) alters these commands at `\begin{document}`, hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the `hyperref` must be loaded *before* minitoc.
- `\@chapter` • Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: `amsbook` (class), `memoir` (class), `appendix`, `placeins` (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), `scrbook` (class), `scrcrpt` (class), `scrartcl` (class), `tocbibind`, and `tocloft`.
- `\schapter`
- `\@schapter`
- `\section`
- `\@sect`
- `\@ssect`



¹⁶This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

¹⁷The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of \TeX , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

- Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are *incompatible* with the minitoc package: `amsart` (class), `amsproc` (class), `alphanum`, `jura` (class), `titlesec`, and `titletoc`¹⁸.
- | | |
|--|---|
| <code>\parttoc</code>
<code>\doparttoc</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>
<code>\dosectlot</code> | • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> ; or the reverse. |
| <code>\tableofcontents</code>
<code>\listoftables</code> | • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> . |
| <code>\sectlof</code>
<code>\sectlot</code> | • Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option). |
- If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the `shorttext` package option, see section 1.9 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the `hints` package option displays a warning.
 - `\mtcaddchapter` • If the abstract package [325] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, `\mtcaddsection` a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your abstract environment.
 - If the `sectsty` package [232] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.
 - If the `varsects` package [300] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `fnycchap` package [220] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `hangcaption` package [182] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `quotchap` package [301] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `romannum` package [333] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `sfheaders` package [222] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `alnumsec` package [196] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `captcont` package [108] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.



¹⁸The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard L^AT_EX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally *incompatible*, and it is very sad.

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$.V $\langle N \rangle$

- If one of the caption [296], caption2¹⁹ [294], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [329] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [171] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.
- If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 28).

`\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global hint as reminder.

- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS

Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The .mtc $\langle N \rangle$ extensions will become .M $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. The extensions .mlf $\langle N \rangle$ and .mlt $\langle N \rangle$ become .F $\langle N \rangle$ and .T $\langle N \rangle$. The .ptc $\langle N \rangle$ extensions become .P $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute part number. The extensions .plf $\langle N \rangle$ and .plt $\langle N \rangle$ become .G $\langle N \rangle$ and .U $\langle N \rangle$. The .stc $\langle N \rangle$ extensions become .S $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute section number. The extensions .slf $\langle N \rangle$ and .slt $\langle N \rangle$ become .H $\langle N \rangle$ and .V $\langle N \rangle$. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 49) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 56.



¹⁹This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.

1.10 Why several \LaTeX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first \LaTeX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third \LaTeX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 55).

1.11 The `mtcoff` package

If a document has been prepared with the `minitoc` package, it contains many `minitoc` specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the `minitoc` package by the `mtcoff` package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the `document.log` file. At least two \LaTeX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files from `minitoc` specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	54
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	54
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	55
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	55
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	55
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	56
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	56
2.7	Supported document classes	56
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	56
2.9	Other mini-tables	57
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	57
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	58
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	58
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	59
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	59
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	59
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	59
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	59
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	60
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	60
2.20	Use with the appendix package	60
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	61
2.22	Use with the memoir class	62
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	63
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	63
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	63
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	67
2.27	Use with the abstract package	67
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	67
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	67
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	68
2.31	Use with packages for captions	69
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	69

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	69
2.34	Initial font settings	69
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	71
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanum</code> package	71
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	72
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	72
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	72
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	72
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	72
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	73
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	73
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before or after <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	73
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	74
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	75
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	76

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	55
-----	---	----

Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	74
-----	---	----

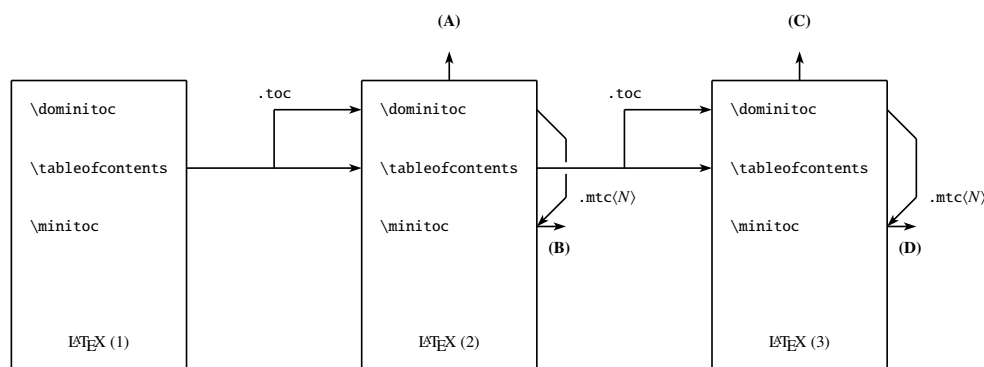
2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 53, please upgrade to version #53. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 49), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last ressort (please join a minimal but complete example reproducing the problem).

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [201]. The `needspace` package [323] may also be useful.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.13 on page 42.

2.3 A “`\`” command in a contents line makes an error

Use `\protect\linebreak`.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute `\LaTeX` at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1¹. Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute `\LaTeX` at least three times.

¹ I used the `pict2e` package [143], by Hubert GÄSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK, to prepare this figure.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

2.6 Playing with the chapter number

Do not cheat with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the `minitoc` package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries in the Table of Contents”, section 1.5.5 on page 47.

The same remark applies to the `part` and `section` counters.

2.7 Supported document classes

The `minitoc` package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article” [204]. There are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter” [205], which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported². See also section 2.24 on page 63.

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make `minitoc` to work. They got a message like:

² This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The `minitoc` package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.




```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have `minilof`, `minilot` and `minibbl` (mini-bibliographies per part, chapter or section). First, “`minibbl`” is another problem, strongly related to the `BrTEX`’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [13], `bibunits` [155], `multibib` [156], `bibtopic` [18], and `splitbib` [229] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic `minilofs` and `minilots`. `Minibbbls` are not the aim of this package³.

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all `minitocs`, one for all `minilofs`, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 28) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the `LATEX` run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 49.

³ See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=multibib>

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the \LaTeX run. If you run \LaTeX via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 51 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [26] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are parttocs, partlofs and partlots for the part level in book|report-like and article-like documents, secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots for the section level in article-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$

`\protect` The more recent version of $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,
`\contentsline` `.lof` and `.lot` files. The version #17 of minitoc attempts to be compatible with $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ and $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$. This will be the *last* version usable with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$. Versions #18 and later are $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ specific, and no more compatible with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, minitoc works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.13 on page 42.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc

Since version #31, minitoc works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [277], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, using the work of Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS. Hence the *minitoc-hyper* package [311] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using minitoc, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the \LaTeX run, then re- \LaTeX the document. There will be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from minitoc #30 to minitoc #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with minitoc #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* minitoc. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with minitoc.



2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the .aux, .toc, .lof, .lot files of the document, else the first L^AT_EX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

2.19 A local table of contents for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 63.

2.20 Use with the appendix package

<code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\adjustmtc</code> <code>\adjuststc</code>	<p>If you use the appendix package [326] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with minitocs in the appendices environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening <code>\begin{appendices}</code> hides a <code>\addcontentsline</code> command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of minitocs or secttocs. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a <code>\adjustmtc</code> or <code>\adjuststc</code> command (depending on the level of the appendices, chapter or section) after <i>each</i> <code>\begin{appendices}</code> command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble <i>after</i> the loading of the appendix package:</p>
---	---

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section.

A rather elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [324].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction⁴, which fortunately can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

⁴ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the minitoc section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The memoir class [331, 332, 334] offers basically the functionalities of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. WILSON), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on page 60, 1.5.5 on page 47, and 2.21 on the page before respectively). If your version of the memoir class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the memoir class *could be no more compatible* with the minitoc package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the memoir is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the memoir class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsettitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the memoir class (or of the `tocloft` package).

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the memoir class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the memoir/tocloft font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsettitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsettitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\sltttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter` Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are *incompatible* with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:



```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 60. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```

1 \<mtc - apx>
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4   [2007/03/22]
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
9 \begin{document}
10 \doparttoc \dominitoc % prepare the mini-tables
11 \tableofcontents
12 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
13 \chapter{First}
14 \minitoc
15 First chapter
16 \section{First section}
17 \lipsum[1]
18 \section{Second section}
19 \lipsum[2]
20 \chapter{Second}
21 \minitoc
22 Second
23 \section{First section of second chapter}
24 \lipsum[3]
25 \section{Second section of second chapter}
26 \lipsum[4]
27 \appendix % begins the appendices
28 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
29 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
30 \mtcsettitle{parttoc}{List of Appendices} % changes the parttoc title
31 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
32 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the appendices in the main TOC,
33 % % but chapter-level entries would be still visible in the main TOC
34 % % if you use 0 in place of -1 as optional argument.
35 \chapter{First appendix}
36 \minitoc
37 First appendix
38 \section{First section}
39 \lipsum[5]
40 \section{Second section}
41 \lipsum[6]
42 \chapter{Second appendix}
43 \minitoc
44 Second appendix
45 \section{First section of second appendix}
46 \lipsum[7]
47 \section{Second section of second appendix}
48 \lipsum[8]
49 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
50 \end{document}
51 \>/mtc - apx>

```


Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.

Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):



<pre> 52 <*mtc – hi1> 53 \documentclass{report} 54 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}% 55 [2007/01/04] 56 \usepackage% 57 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 58 \begin{document} 59 \dominilof 60 \dominilot 61 \listoffigures 62 \listoftables 63 \chapter{First} 64 \minilof 65 \minilot 66 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 67 \caption{AAAA1} 68 \end{figure} 69 \begin{figure} 70 \caption{AAAA2} 71 \end{figure} 72 \begin{table} 73 \caption{TAAAA1} 74 \end{table} 75 \begin{table} 76 \caption{TAAAA2} 77 \end{table} 78 \chapter{Second} 79 \minilof 80 \minilot 81 %%----- </pre>
---	---

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 82 \begin{mtchideinmainlof} 83 \begin{mtchideinmainlot} 84 \begin{figure} 85 \caption{BBBB1} 86 \end{figure} 87 \begin{figure} 88 \caption{BBBB2} 89 \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> 90 \begin{table} 91 \caption{TBBBB1} 92 \end{table} 93 \begin{table} 94 \caption{TBBBB2} 95 \end{table} 96 \chapter{Third} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 97 \end{mtchideinmainlot} 98 \end{mtchideinmainlof} 99 %%----- 100 \minilof \minilot 101 \begin{figure} 102 \caption{CCCC1} 103 \end{figure} 104 \begin{figure} 105 \caption{CCCC2} </pre>	<pre> 106 \end{figure} 107 \begin{table} 108 \caption{TCCCC1} 109 \end{table} 110 \begin{table} 111 \caption{TCCCC2} 112 \end{table} 113 \end{document} 114 </mtc – hi1> </pre>
--	---

But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to

hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):



<pre> 115 <*mtc – hi2> 116 \documentclass{report} 117 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}% 118 [2007/01/04] 119 \usepackage% 120 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 121 \begin{document} 122 \dominilof 123 \dominilot 124 \listoffigures 125 \listoftables 126 \chapter{First} 127 \minilof \minilot 128 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 129 \caption{AAAA1} 130 \end{figure} 131 \begin{figure} 132 \caption{AAAA2} 133 \end{figure} 134 \begin{table} 135 \caption{TAAAA1} 136 \end{table} 137 \begin{table} 138 \caption{TAAAA2} 139 \end{table} 140 \chapter{Second} 141 \minilof 142 \minilot </pre>
--	--

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.



<pre> 143 \begin{figure} 144 \mtchideinmainlof % <-- 145 \caption{BBBB1} 146 \end{figure} 147 \begin{figure} 148 \caption{BBBB2} </pre>	<pre> 149 \endmtchideinmainlof % <-- 150 \end{figure} 151 \begin{table} 152 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 153 \caption{TBBBB1} 154 \end{table} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.



<pre> 155 \begin{table} 156 \caption{TBBBB2} 157 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 158 \end{table} 159 \chapter{Third} 160 \minilof 161 \minilot 162 \begin{figure} 163 \caption{CCCC1} 164 \end{figure} 165 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 166 \caption{CCCC2} 167 \end{figure} 168 \begin{table} 169 \caption{TCCCC1} 170 \end{table} 171 \begin{table} 172 \caption{TCCCC2} 173 \end{table} 174 \end{document} 175 </mtc – hi2> </pre>
--	---

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is much more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own .mld file

`\mtcsettitle` First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via `\renewcommand` or better via `\mtcsettitle`. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via `\mtcselectlanguage`. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the *language*[.mld-.mlo] pairs of language definition files.

`\mtcselectlanguage`

2.27 Use with the abstract package

`\mtcaddchapter` If the abstract package [325] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your abstract environment.

`\mtcaddsection`

`\chapter`

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [232] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like `\l@part`, `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, etc.

The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the `report` and `book` classes) and lower levels, these commands are (`book` class, `book.cls`) by default:

```
\newcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
```

```
\newcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\newcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
```

which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of `\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes [204], the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends on the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 35), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section ... \l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a `@` in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [324] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 61.
- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 39) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 35), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is necessary to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages.
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectionning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because

`\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [296], `caption2`⁵ [294], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [329] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [171] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [277] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [331, 332, 334], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the `varsects` package [300] (by Daniel TAUPIN⁺) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the `parttoc`s as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁶:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the `minitoc` package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.

⁵ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

⁶ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the parttocs, partlofs, and partlots. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

In the initialization of the minitoc package, we have a sequence of commands:



```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a parttoc (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the parttocs, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

Note that if you say:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

after loading the minitoc package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a minitoc font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}% for high sectionning levels:
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [191, 252, 281], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 47. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are *incompatible* with minitoc.



2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the babel package [44, 45], you can automatize the loading of the .mld file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%  
  \addto\captionslanguageI{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for babel and *language2* the language name for minitoc; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized .mld file, by example).

2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the fncychap package [220] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the quotchap package [301] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.40 Use with the romannum package

If the romannum package [333] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.41 Use with the sfheaders package

If the sfheaders package [222] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [196] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [108] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.44 Vertical space (gap) before or after `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the book and report document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these default values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:



```
176 \*mtc-gap)
177 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
178 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}%
179 [2007/01/04]
```

We use the `vruler` package (by Zhuhan JIANG) to display a vertical showing the position of the titles:

```
180 \usepackage{vruler} % to have a vertical graduation to note positions
181 % % (by Zhuhan Jiang)
182 % \begin{macrocode}
183 \usepackage{txfonts}
184 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
185 \begin{document}
186 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][0pt] % with vruler package
187 \doparttoc
188 \faketableofcontents
189 \part{First part}
```

A normal parttoc, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
190 \parttoc
191 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
192 \part{Second part}
```

We set large gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
193 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
194 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
195 \parttoc
196 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
197 \part{Third part}
```

We set small gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
198 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
199 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
200 \parttoc
201 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
202 \end{document}
203 </mtc-gap>
```

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend on the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A}
\section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A}
\section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a `minitoc` without page numbers as I wanted.

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in `minitocs`). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [324, pages 45-56]; `XXX` is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
204 (*mtc - tlo)
205 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
206 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}%
207 [2007/01/04]
```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```
208 \usepackage{tocloft}
209 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
210 \begin{document}
```

We define the global font for the minitoc entries:

```
211 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
212 \frontmatter
213 \dominitoc
214 \tableofcontents
```

For the section entries in the minitocs, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by using commands from the `tocloft` package:

```
215 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
216 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
217 \mainmatter
218 \chapter{Chapter}
219 \section{Section A}
220 \section{Section B}
221 \chapter{Second Chapter}
222 \minitoc
223 \section{Section A}
224 \section{Section B}
225 \end{document}
226 </mtc – tlo>
```

2.47 Use with the hangcaption package

If the `hangcaption` package [182] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables	
3.1	Package options 77
3.2	General commands 78
3.3	Commands: part level 79
3.4	Commands: chapter level 80
3.5	Commands: section level 81
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules 82
3.7	Commands for page numbers 82
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features 83
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands 83
3.10	Adjustment commands 84
3.11	Obsolete commands 84
3.12	Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc 85

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the <i>document.log</i> file. Useful to detect some problems.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 36. Default: english.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <i>language.mld</i> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mltttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a secttoc is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a sectlof is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a sectlot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following secttocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on sectlofs and sectlots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on sectlofs and sectlots.
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for secttoc.
	Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for sectlof.
	Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for sectlof (subfigures).
	Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for sectlot.
	Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for sectlot (subtables).
	Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of secttocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of sectlofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of sectlots. Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for sectXXX titles.
	Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code> Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominilof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\minilof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument p , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument p has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by n .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by n .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by n .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for index in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main table of contents.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of tables.

Table 3.11: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	N is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first section.
These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).	

Table 3.12: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	50	[325]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	50	[196]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	71	[92]
* C	amsart	\mathcal{AMS}	63	[6]
C	amsbook	\mathcal{AMS}	63	[6]
* C	amsproc	\mathcal{AMS}	63	[6]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	60	[326]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	50	[108]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	51	[295, 296]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	51	[294]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	51	[329]
P	fnycchap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	72	[220]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	76	[182]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	59	[255, 277, 278]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	71	[92]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	51	[171]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	62	[331, 332, 334]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	49	[8]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	29	[9]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	50	[301]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	50	[333]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and scrreprt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	71	[191, 252, 281]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	67	[232]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	72	[222]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	31	[109]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	31	[107]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	50	[39]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	50	[39]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	47	[327]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	61, 75	[324]
P	varsects	Daniel TAUPIN [†]	50	[300]

* *Incompatible* with minitoc.

C Class.

P Package.

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	87
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	88
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file	89
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file	92
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file	97
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file	102
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file	103
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file	103
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file	108
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file	114
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	118
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file	120
4.13	The mtc-fko.tex document file	120
4.14	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	121
4.15	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	123
4.16	The mtc-gap.tex document file	124
4.17	The mtc-hi1.tex document file	124
4.18	The mtc-hi2.tex document file	124
4.19	The mtc-hia.tex document file	125
4.20	The mtc-hir.tex document file	125
4.21	The mtc-hop.tex document file	126
4.22	The mtc-liv.tex document file	128
4.23	The mtc-mem.tex document file	132
4.24	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	132
4.25	The mtc-mu.tex document file	133
4.26	The mtc-sbf.tex document file	135
4.27	The mtc-scr.tex document file	137
4.28	The mtc-syn.tex document file	138
4.29	The mtc-tbi.tex document file	140
4.30	The mtc-tlc.tex document file	141
4.31	The mtc-tlo.tex document file	142
4.32	The mtc-tsfc.tex document file	142

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 64, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 65, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 66, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 73, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 75,

4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [237] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a `minitoc` is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

<pre> 227 *mtc - 2c> 228 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% 229 {report} 230 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}% 231 [2007/01/04] 232 \usepackage{multicol} 233 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 234 \usepackage% 235 [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc} 236 \usepackage[latin]{babel} 237 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} 238 \begin{document} 239 \dominitoc 240 \tableofcontents </pre>
--	---

Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a `minitoc` on one full width column, then the body of the chapter on two columns:

<pre> 241 \chapter{Primum capitulum} 242 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 243 \section{Prima sectio} 244 \lipsum[1-2] 245 \section{Secunda sectio} 246 \lipsum[3-4] 247 \end{multicols} 248 \chapter{Secundum capitulum} </pre>	<pre> 249 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 250 \section{Prima sectio} 251 \lipsum[5-6] 252 \section{Secunda sectio} 253 \lipsum[7-8] 254 \section{Tertia sectio} 255 \lipsum[9-10] 256 \end{multicols} </pre>
---	---

A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the `minitoc` are in the first column:

<pre> 257 \begin{multicols}{2} 258 \chapter{Tertium capitulum} 259 \minitoc 260 \section{Prima sectio} 261 \lipsum[11-12] </pre>	<pre> 262 \section{Secunda sectio} 263 \lipsum[13-14] 264 \section{Tertia sectio} 265 \lipsum[15-16] 266 \end{multicols} </pre>
--	---

A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the `minitoc` and the chapter body on two columns (the `minitoc` is in the first column):

<pre> 267 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum} 268 \begin{multicols}{2} 269 \minitoc 270 \section{Prima sectio} 271 \lipsum[16-17] 272 \section{Secunda sectio} </pre>	<pre> 273 \lipsum[18-19] 274 \section{Tertia sectio} 275 \lipsum[20-21] 276 \end{multicols} 277 \end{document} 278 \</mtc-2c> </pre>
---	--

4.2 The mtc-2nd.tex document file

This document tests the french2.mld minitoc language definition file (section 13.60 on page 468) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the french2 minitoc package language option¹:

```

279 \<*mtc-2nd>
280 %% Test de french2.mld:
281 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
282 %% compilez 3 fois.
283 \documentclass{report}
284 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
285 [2007/01/04]
286 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
287 \usepackage[french]{babel}
288 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
289 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
290 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
291 \usepackage{mypatches}
292 \begin{document}

```

We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (zero, one, three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

293 \ifmtcsecondpart
294 Il n’y a que 2 parties: seconde.
295 \else
296 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
297 \fi
298 \clearpage

```

The body of the document, with two parts:

```

299 \doparttoc
300 \faketableofcontents
301 \part{P1}
302 \parttoc
303 \chapter{P1C1}

```

¹ The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.

If you want also a third part, comment out this line and recompile 3 times:

Observe the titles of the parttocs when the document has two then three parts. Note the changes after each compilation. You can play by adding and removing parts. It would be interesting to add a starred part, with starred chapters, at the beginning of the document, this part and these chapters having their entries in the TOC. By example, try to add the following lines after `\faketableofcontents`:

and you will see how the parttoc of the new starred part is titled.

This document shows how to prepare a minitoc on three columns, with some modifications of the code the `mtc@verse` environment.

```

317 \<*mtc - 3co>
318 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
319 \ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
320 [2007/02/19]

```

```

321 \usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
322 \usepackage{lipsum}
323 \usepackage{multicol}
324 \usepackage[toc]{multitoc}
325 \renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{3}

```

Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for the minitocs. We alter the `mtc@verse` environment to add a `multicols` environment²:

```

326 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%
327 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
328 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
329 \mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
330 \newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
331 \makeatletter
332 \let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
333 \let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
334 \def\mtc@verse{\SV@mtc@verse\removelastskip%
335 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
336 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
337 \def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
338 \makeatother
339 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the `lipsum` package [157] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```

340 \begin{document}
341 \dominitoc
342 \tableofcontents
343 \chapter{First chapter}
344 \minitoc
345 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used `\mtcsetformat` to avoid hyphenations).

```

346 \section{First section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
347 \section{Second section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
348 \section{Third section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
349 \section{Fourth section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
350 \section{Fifth section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
351 \section{Sixth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
352 \section{Seventh section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
353 \section{Eighth section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
354 \section{Ninth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
355 \section{Tenth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
356 \section{Eleventh section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
357 \section{Twelfth section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

² Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```

358 \section{Thirteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
359 \section{Fourteenth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
360 \section{Fifteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
361 \section{Sixteenth section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
362 \section{Seventeenth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
363 \section{Eighteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
364 \section{Nineteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
365 \section{Twentieth section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
366 \section{Twenty-first section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
367 \section{Twenty-second section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
368 \section{Twenty-third section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
369 \section{Twenty-fourth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
370 \subsection{A very long subsection title,
371 for the fun in a multicolumn
372 table of contents}               \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
373 \section{Twenty-fifth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
374 \section{Twenty-sixth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
375 \section{Twenty-seventh section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
376 \section{Twenty-eighth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
377 \section{Twenty-ninth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
378 \section{Thirtieth section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
379 \section{Thirty-first section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
380 \section{Thirty-second section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
381 \section{Thirty-third section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
382 \section{Thirty-fourth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
383 \section{Thirty-fifth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
384 \section{Thirty-sixth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
385 \section{Thirty-seventh section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
386 \section{Thirty-eighth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
387 \section{Thirty-ninth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
388 \section{Fortieth section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
389 \section{Forty-first section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
390 \section{Forty-second section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
391 \section{Forty-third section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
392 \section{Forty-fourth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
393 \section{Forty-fifth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
394 \section{Forty-sixth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
395 \section{Forty-seventh section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
396 \section{Forty-eighth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
397 \section{Forty-ninth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
398 \section{Fiftieth section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
399 \section{Fifty-first section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
400 \section{Fifty-second section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
401 \section{Fifty-third section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
402 \section{Fifty-fourth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
403 \section{Fifty-fifth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
404 \section{Fifty-sixth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
405 \section{Fifty-seventh section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
406 \section{Fifty-eighth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
407 \section{Fifty-ninth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
408 \end{multicols}
409 \clearpage
410 \end{document}
411 </mtc - 3co>

```

4.4 The `mtc-add.tex` document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the `tocbibind` package [327].

```

412 \*mtc - add)
413 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
414 %%\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
415 \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
416   [2007/01/04]
417 \usepackage{url}
418 \usepackage{tocbibind}
419 \usepackage{makeidx}
420 \makeatletter
421 \newif\ifscan@allowed
422 \scan@allowedtrue
423 \makeatother
424 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
425 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
426           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%

```

Load the `minitoc` package, or `mtcoff`.

```

427 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
428 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}

429 \makeindex
430 \begin{document}

```

We call the mini-table preparation commands:

```

431 \dominitoc
432 \dominilof
433 \dominilot

```

We are using the `tocbibind` package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 47:

```

434 \tableofcontents
435 \mtcaddchapter
436 \listoffigures
437 \mtcaddchapter
438 \listoftables
439 \mtcaddchapter

```

For a chapter, we want a `minitoc`, a `minilof` and a `minitoc`:

```

440 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
441 \minitoc

```

```

442 \mtcskip
443 \minilof
444 \mtcskip
445 \minilot

```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

446 \section{First section}
447
448 \begin{figure}[tp]
449 \caption{First figure}
450 \end{figure}
451 \begin{table}[tp]
452 \caption{First table}
453 \end{table}
454
455 \section{Second section}
456 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
457 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
458 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
459 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
460 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
461 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
462 \index{would}\index{yes}%
463 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
464 But I imagine that he would, yes.}\
465 \hbox{}\hfill
466 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
467 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
468
469 \begin{figure}[tp]
470 \caption{Second figure}
471 \end{figure}
472 \begin{table}
473 \caption{Second table}
474 \end{table}

```

A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

475 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
476 \index{chapter!starred}
477 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
478 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
479 %%\mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
480 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
481 %%%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
482 %%\mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
483 %%\mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
484 %%%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}

```

```

485 \index{tests}
486
487 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
488 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
489 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
490 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
491 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
492 and at this chapter.
493 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
494 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
495 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
496 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
497 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
498 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
499 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
500 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
501 \index{variations}\index{you}%
502 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
503
504 \chapter{Third chapter}
505 \index{chapter!normal}
506 \minitoc
507 \mtcskip
508 \minilof
509 \mtcskip
510 \minilot
511 \section{Third section}
512
513 \begin{figure}
514 \caption{Third figure}
515 \end{figure}
516 \begin{table}
517 \caption{Third table}
518 \end{table}
519
520 \section{Fourth section}
521
522 \begin{figure}
523 \caption{Fourth figure}
524 \end{figure}
525 \begin{table}
526 \caption{Fourth table}
527 \end{table}

```

As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

```

528 \nocite*
529 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
530 \bibliographystyle{plain}
531 \bibliography{mtc-add}
532 \adjustmtc

```

As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

```

533 \printindex
534 %%\mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
535 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
536 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
537 \mtcaddchapter
538 %%
539
540 \appendix
541 \chapter{App.~1}
542 \index{chapter!appendix}
543 \minitoc
544 \mtcskip
545 \minilof
546 \mtcskip
547 \minilot
548 \section{Fifth section}
549
550 \begin{figure}
551 \caption{Fifth figure}
552 \end{figure}
553 \begin{table}
554 \caption{Fifth table}
555 \end{table}
556
557 \section{Sixth section}
558
559 \begin{figure}
560 \caption{Sixth figure}
561 \end{figure}
562 \begin{table}
563 \caption{Sixth table}
564 \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

565 \chapter{App.~2}
566 \index{chapter!appendix}
567 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
568 \minitoc
569 \mtcskip
570 \minilof
571 \mtcskip
572 \minilot
573 \section{Seventh section}
574 \begin{figure}
575 \caption{Seventh figure}
576 \end{figure}
577 \begin{figure}

```

```

578 \caption{Eighth figure}
579 \end{figure}
580
581 \section{Eighth section}
582
583 \begin{figure}
584 \caption{Ninth figure}
585 \end{figure}
586 \begin{figure}
587 \caption{Eleventh figure}
588 \end{figure}
589
590 \end{document}
591 </mtc – add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [125]:

```

592 <*mtc – addbib>
593 @MISC{minitoc,
594     TITLE="The {\textsf{minitoc}} package",
595     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
596     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
597     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
598     MONTH=mar,
599     YEAR=2007}
600

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [124]:

```

601 @MISC{fminitoc,
602     TITLE="Le paquetage {\textsf{minitoc}}",
603     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
604     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
605     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
606     MONTH=mar,
607     YEAR=2007}
608

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [123]:

```

609 @MISC{shorttoc,
610     TITLE="The {\textsf{shorttoc}} package",
611     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
612     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
613     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx}}",
614     MONTH=aug,
615     YEAR=2002}
616

```

- a novel [17] from which a short citation is taken:

```

617 @BOOK{dark,
618     TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",

```



```

619          AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
620          PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
621          ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
622          YEAR=1993}
623    </mtc – addbib>

```

4.5 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocibind package [327] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

624 <*mtc – ads>
625 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
626 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
627   [2007/01/04]
628 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
629 \makeatletter
630 \newif\ifscan@allowed
631 \scan@allowedtrue
632 \makeatother
633 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss.\hss}\hfil}%
634 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
635           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
636 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
637 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
638 \makeindex

```

The preparation commands:

```

639 \begin{document}
640 \doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot
641 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot

```

The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the tocibind package, we must add some \mtcaddsection commands:

```

642 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
643 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
644 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
645 \tableofcontents
646 \mtcaddsection
647 \listoffigures
648 \mtcaddsection
649 \listoftables
650 \mtcaddsection

```

The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.

```

651 \part{Part~1}
652 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
653
654 \section{First section}
655 \index{section!normal}
656 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
657 \subsection{First subsection}
658
659 \begin{figure}[tp]
660 \caption{First figure}
661 \end{figure}
662 \begin{table}[tp]
663 \caption{First table}
664 \end{table}
665
666 \subsection{Second subsection}
667 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\!
668 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
669 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
670 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
671 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
672 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
673 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
674 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
675 But I imagine that he would, yes.\!
676 \hbox{\hfill Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}}%
677 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}%
678 \index{background}
679 \begin{figure}[tp]
680 \caption{Second figure}
681 \end{figure}
682 \begin{table}
683 \caption{Second table}
684 \end{table}

```

Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several solutions (good or bad).

```

685 \section*{Second section, starred}
686 \index{section!starred}
687 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
688 \mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
689 %%\mtcaddsection[] % BAD
690 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
691 %%\mtcaddsection % BAD
692 %%%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
693 \index{tests}
694
695 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
696 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and

```

```

697 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
698 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
699 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
700 and at this section.
701 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
702 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
703 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
704 \index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
705 \index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
706 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
707 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
708 \index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
709 \index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
710 \index{variations}\index{you}%
711 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
712
713 \section{Third section}
714 \index{section!normal}
715 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
716 \subsection{Third subsection}
717
718 \begin{figure}
719 \caption{Third figure}
720 \end{figure}
721 \begin{table}
722 \caption{Third table}
723 \end{table}
724
725 \subsection{Fourth subsection}
726
727 \begin{figure}
728 \caption{Fourth figure}
729 \end{figure}
730 \begin{table}
731 \caption{Fourth table}
732 \end{table}
733
734 \subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
735 \subsubsection{And yet another one}
736
737 \part{Part~2}
738 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
739
740 \section{Fourth section}
741 \index{section!normal}
742 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
743 \subsection{Fifth subsection}
744
745 \begin{figure}[tp]
746 \caption{Fifth figure}
747 \end{figure}
748 \begin{table}[tp]
749 \caption{Fifth table}
750 \end{table}

```

```

751
752 \subsection{Sixth subsection}
753 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
754 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
755 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
756 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
757 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
758 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
759 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
760 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
761 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
762 \hbox{}\hfill
763 Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
764 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}%
765 \index{dark}\index{background}
766
767 \begin{figure}[tp]
768 \caption{Sixth figure}
769 \end{figure}
770 \begin{table}
771 \caption{Sixth table}
772 \end{table}
773
774 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
775 \index{section!starred}
776 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
777 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
778 %%\mtcaddsection[] % OK
779 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
780 %%\mtcaddsection % OK
781 %%%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
782 \index{tests}
783
784 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
785 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
786 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
787 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
788 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
789 and at this section.\index{a}%
790 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
791 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
792 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
793 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
794 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
795 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
796 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
797 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
798 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
799 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
800 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
801
802 \section{Sixth section}
803 \index{section!normal}
804 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot

```

```

805 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
806
807 \begin{figure}
808 \caption{Seventh figure}
809 \end{figure}
810 \begin{table}
811 \caption{Seventh table}
812 \end{table}
813
814 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
815
816 \begin{figure}
817 \caption{Eighth figure}
818 \end{figure}
819 \begin{table}
820 \caption{Eighth table}
821 \end{table}

```

The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [327] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

822 \nocite*
823 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
824 \bibliographystyle{plain}
825 \bibliography{mtc-add}
826 \adjuststc

```

The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [327] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```

827 \printindex
828 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 2 following lines
829 %%\addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
830 %%\addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
831 %%\mtcaddsection
832
833 \appendix
834 \section{App.~1}
835 \index{section!appendix}
836 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
837 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
838
839 \begin{figure}
840 \caption{Ninth figure}
841 \end{figure}
842 \begin{table}
843 \caption{Ninth table}
844 \end{table}
845
846 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
847
848 \begin{figure}
849 \caption{Tenth figure}

```

```

850 \end{figure}
851 \begin{table}
852 \caption{Tenth table}
853 \end{table}
854
855 \section{App.~2}
856 \index{section!appendix}
857 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
858 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
859 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
860
861 \begin{figure}
862 \caption{Eleventh figure}
863 \end{figure}
864 \begin{figure}
865 \caption{Twelfth figure}
866 \end{figure}
867
868 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
869
870 \begin{figure}
871 \caption{Thirteenth figure}
872 \end{figure}
873 \begin{figure}
874 \caption{Fourteenth figure}
875 \end{figure}
876
877 \end{document}
878 </mtc – ads>

```

4.6 The mtc-amm.tex document file

This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

<pre> 879 <*mtc – amm> 880 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir} 881 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}% 882 [2007/01/04] 883 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text 884 \usepackage% 885 [tight]{minitoc} 886 \begin{document} </pre>	<pre> 887 \dominitoc 888 \tableofcontents 889 \adjustmtc 890 \chapter{First chapter} 891 \minitoc 892 \lipsum[1] 893 \section{First section} 894 \lipsum[2] </pre>
--	--

The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

<pre> 895 \begin{appendices} 896 \addappheadtotoc 897 \chapter{Afterthought} 898 \minitoc 899 \lipsum[3] 900 Afterthought appendix 901 \section{Further remarks} 902 \lipsum[4] </pre>	<pre> 903 \end{appendices} 904 \chapter{Conclusion} 905 \minitoc 906 \section{Bye} 907 \lipsum[5] 908 \end{document} 909 </mtc – amm> </pre>
--	--

4.7 The mtc-apx.tex document file

The mtc-apx.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 64.

4.8 The mtc-art.tex document file

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

910 < *mtc – art>
911 %% mtc-art.tex
912 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #53
913 %% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
914 %% article (\section must be defined)
915 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
916 \ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
917 [2007/01/04]
918 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
919 %%\usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
920 \usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
921 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
922 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
923 \setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
924 %% % font for secttocs, default
925 \renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
926 %% % font for secttocs, subsections
927 %%\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sffamily}%
928 %% you can make experiments with \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
929 %% but it is ‘fontomania’...
930 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent on the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

931%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
932%% resetting section number in each part
933%%\makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
934%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

935 \begin{document}

```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

936 \dosecttoc
937 \dosectlof[c]           % center titles of the sectlofs
938 \dosectlot
939 \doparttoc              % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
940 \dopartlof              % added in version #15
941 \dopartlot              % added in version #15

```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

942 \faketableofcontents    % or \tableofcontents
943 \fakelistoffigures      % to check compatibility
944 \fakelistoftables       % to check compatibility

```

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a partlot:

```

945 \part{First Part}
946 \parttoc
947 \partlof[r]
948 \partlot

```

A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).

```

949 \twocolumn\sloppy       % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
950                          % but works. Ideas to make it better?
951 \section{AAAAA}          % a section with a lot of sections
952 \secttoc[r]              % secttoc title on the right
953 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
954 \lipsum[1]
955 \subsection{S1}
956 \lipsum[2]
957 \subsection{S2}
958 \lipsum[3]
959 \subsection{S3}
960 \lipsum[4]
961 \subsection*{S4}
962 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}

```


A lot of subsections:

963 \lipsum[5]	990 \subsection{S18}
964 \subsection{S5}	991 \lipsum[19]
965 \lipsum[6]	992 \subsection{S19}
966 \subsection{S6}	993 \lipsum[20]
967 \lipsum[7]	994 \subsection{S20}
968 \subsection{S7}	995 \lipsum[21]
969 \lipsum[8]	996 \subsection{S21}
970 \subsection{S8}	997 \lipsum[22]
971 \lipsum[9]	998 \subsection{S22}
972 \subsection{S9}	999 \lipsum[23]
973 \lipsum[10]	1000 \subsection{S23}
974 \subsection{S10}	1001 \lipsum[24]
975 \lipsum[11]	1002 \subsection{S24}
976 \subsection{S11}	1003 \lipsum[25]
977 \lipsum[12]	1004 \subsection{S25}
978 \subsection{S12}	1005 \lipsum[26]
979 \lipsum[13]	1006 \subsection{S26}
980 \subsection{S13}	1007 \lipsum[27]
981 \lipsum[14]	1008 \subsection{S27}
982 \subsection{S14}	1009 \lipsum[28]
983 \lipsum[15]	1010 \subsection{S28}
984 \subsection{S15}	1011 \lipsum[29]
985 \lipsum[16]	1012 \subsection{S29}
986 \subsection{S16}	1013 \lipsum[30]
987 \lipsum[17]	1014 \subsection{S30}
988 \subsection{S17}	1015 \lipsum[31]
989 \lipsum[18]	

We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are subsections and figures). The insection package option should ensure that floating objects (like figures) do not drift outside their section.

```

1016 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
1017 \section{BBBBB}
1018 \secttoc
1019 \mtcskip                     % put some skip here
1020 \sectlof                    % a sectlof
1021 \lipsum[32]
1022 \subsection{T1}
1023 \lipsum[33]
1024 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1025 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1026 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1027 \end{picture}
1028 \caption{F1}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1029 \end{figure}
1030 \FloatBarrier
1031 \subsubsection[tt1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1032 \lipsum[34]
1033 \paragraph{TTT1}
1034 \lipsum[35]

```

```

1035 \subparagraph{TTTT1}
1036 \lipsum[36]
1037 \begin{figure}[t]
1038 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1039 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1040 \end{picture}
1041 \caption[f2]{F2}           % tests optional arg. of a caption
1042 \end{figure}
1043 \FloatBarrier
1044 \subsection{T2}
1045 \lipsum[37]
1046 \section*{CCCCC}          % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
1047 %%\addstarredsection{CCCCC}
1048 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
1049 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1050 \lipsum[38]
1051 \subsection{U1}
1052 \lipsum[39]
1053 \subsubsection{UU1}
1054 \lipsum[40]
1055 \paragraph{UUU1}
1056 \lipsum[41]
1057 \subparagraph{UUUU1}
1058 \lipsum[42]
1059 \subsection{U2}
1060 \lipsum[43]
1061 \part{Second Part}
1062 \parttoc
1063 \partlof[c]
1064 \partlot
1065 %%                          % the following section should have no secttoc,
1066 \section{DDDDD}            % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
1067 %%\secttoc
1068 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1069 %                          % the secttoc appears
1070 \lipsum[44]
1071 \subsection{V1}
1072 \lipsum[45]
1073 \subsubsection{VV1}
1074 \lipsum[46]
1075 \paragraph{VVV1}
1076 \lipsum[47]
1077 \subparagraph{VVVV1}
1078 \lipsum[48]
1079 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1080 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1081 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1082 \end{picture}
1083 \caption{F3}               % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1084 \end{figure}
1085 \FloatBarrier
1086 \lipsum[49]
1087 \subsection{V2}
1088 \lipsum[50]

```

We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1089 \section{EEEEEE}           % this section should have a secttoc
1090 {%                         % left brace, see below
1091 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
1092                             % try with different values.
1093 \secttoc
1094 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1095 }                           % right brace
1096 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1097 %% on secttocdepth.
1098 \lipsum[51]
1099 \subsection{W1}             % with the given depth
1100 \lipsum[52]
1101 \subsubsection{WW1}
1102 \lipsum[53]
1103 \paragraph{WWW1}
1104 \lipsum[54]
1105 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1106 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1107 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1108 \end{picture}
1109 \caption{F4}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1110 \end{figure}
1111 \FloatBarrier
1112 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
1113 \subparagraph{WWW1}
1114 \lipsum[55]
1115 \subsection{W2}
1116 \lipsum[56]
1117 \chapter*{}
1118 \part{Appendices}
1119 \parttoc
1120 \mtcskip
1121 \partlof
1122 \mtcskip
1123 \partlot
1124 \FloatBarrier
1125 \appendix
1126 \section{Comments}
1127 \lipsum[57]
1128 \secttoc
1129 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1130 \subsection{C1}
1131 \lipsum[58]
1132 \subsection{C2}
1133 \lipsum[59]
1134 \subsection{C3}
1135 \lipsum[60]
1136 \begin{figure}[hb]         % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1137 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1138 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1139 \end{picture}
1140 \caption{F5}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)

```

```

1141 \end{figure}
1142 \FloatBarrier
1143 \subsection{C4}
1144 \lipsum[61]
1145 \FloatBarrier
1146 \section{Evolution}
1147 \secttoc
1148 \sectlof % empty
1149 \sectlot % empty
1150 \lipsum[62]
1151 \subsection{D1}
1152 \lipsum[63]
1153 \subsection{D2}
1154 \lipsum[64]
1155 \subsection{D3}
1156 \lipsum[65]
1157 \subsection{D4}
1158 \lipsum[66]
1159 \end{document}
1160 </mtc - art>

```

4.9 The mtc-bk.tex document file

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

1161 <*mtc - bk>
1162 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
1163 %% mtc-bk.tex
1164 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #53
1165 %% package file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
1166 %% book/report (\chapter must be defined).
1167 %% You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc
1168 %% commands and parameters.
1169 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
1170 %%\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
1171 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
1172 [2007/01/04]
1173 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
1174 %%\usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
1175 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
1176 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
1177 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
1178 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
1179 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
1180 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
1181 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
1182 %%\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections

```

```

1183%% you can make experiments with \mtcSSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
1184%% but it is ‘fontomania’...
1185\raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent on the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

1186%% TEST: uncomment the 3 next lines to test
1187%% resetting chapter number in each part
1188%%\makeatletter
1189%%\@addtoreset{chapter}{part}
1190%%\makeatother
1191%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

1192\begin{document}
1193\mtcpagenumbers
1194\noptcrule
1195%% \nomtcrule % suppresses minitoc rules
1196%% \nomtcpagenumbers % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1197%% \nomlfpagenumbers % ----- minilof ----
1198%% \nomltpagenumbers % ----- minilot ----

```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

1199\dominitoc
1200\dominilof[c] % centers title of minilof's
1201\dominilot
1202\doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
1203\dopartlof % added in version #15
1204\dopartlot % added in version #15

```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

1205\tableofcontents % or \faketableofcontents
1206\listoffigures % or \fakelistoffigures
1207\fakelistoftables % or \listoftables

```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```

1208%%\addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0

```

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:

```

1209\part{First Part}
1210\parttoc

```

```
1211 \partlof[r]
1212 \partlot[r]
```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```
1213 \twocolumn\sloppy           % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1214 \chapter{AAAAA}             % a chapter with a lot of sections
1215 \minitoc[r]                  % minitoc title on the right
1216 \lipsum[1]
1217 \section{S1}
1218 \lipsum[2]
1219 \section{S2}
1220 \lipsum[3]
1221 \section{S3}
1222 \lipsum[4]
```

A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:

```
1223 \section*{S4}
1224 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}}{S4}}
```

A lot of subsections:

1225 \lipsum[5]	1254 \section{S19}
1226 \section{S5}	1255 \lipsum[20]
1227 \lipsum[6]	1256 \section{S20}
1228 \section{S6}	1257 \lipsum[21]
1229 \lipsum[6]	1258 \section{S21}
1230 \section{S7}	1259 \lipsum[22]
1231 \lipsum[7]	1260 \section{S22}
1232 \section{S8}	1261 \lipsum[23]
1233 \lipsum[9]	1262 \section{S23}
1234 \section{S9}	1263 \lipsum[24]
1235 \lipsum[10]	1264 \section{S24}
1236 \section{S10}	1265 \lipsum[25]
1237 \lipsum[11]	1266 \section{S25}
1238 \section{S11}	1267 \lipsum[26]
1239 \lipsum[12]	1268 \section{S26}
1240 \section{S12}	1269 \lipsum[27]
1241 \lipsum[13]	1270 \section{S27}
1242 \section{S13}	1271 \lipsum[28]
1243 \lipsum[14]	1272 \section{S28}
1244 \section{S14}	1273 \lipsum[29]
1245 \lipsum[15]	1274 \section{S29}
1246 \section{S15}	1275 \lipsum[30]
1247 \lipsum[16]	1276 \section{S30}
1248 \section{S16}	1277 \lipsum[31]
1249 \lipsum[17]	1278 \subsection{SS1}
1250 \section{S17}	1279 \lipsum[32]
1251 \lipsum[18]	1280 \section{S31}
1252 \section{S18}	1281 \lipsum[33]
1253 \lipsum[19]	

We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

1282 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
1283 \chapter{BBBBB}
1284 \minitoc
1285 \mtcskip                     % put some skip here
1286 \minilof                     % a minilof
1287 \mtcskip                     % put some skip here
1288 \minilot                     % a minilot
1289 \lipsum[34]
1290 \section{T1}
1291 \lipsum[35]
1292 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1293 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1294 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1295 \end{picture}
1296 \caption{F1}                % (tables are similar)
1297 \end{figure}
1298 \begin{table}[b]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1299 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1300 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1301 \end{picture}
1302 \caption{T1}                % (tables are similar)
1303 \end{table}
1304 \clearpage
1305 \subsection{tt1}{TT1}      % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1306 \lipsum[36]
1307 \subsubsection{TTT1}
1308 \lipsum[37]
1309 \paragraph{TTTT1}
1310 \lipsum[38]
1311 \begin{figure}
1312 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1313 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1314 \end{picture}
1315 \caption[f2]{F2}           % tests optional arg. of a caption
1316 \end{figure}
1317 \section{T2}
1318 \lipsum[39]

```

A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning commands must also be starred.

```

1319 \chapter*{CCCCC}          % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
1320 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
1321 \lipsum[40]
1322 \section*{U1}
1323 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1324 \lipsum[41]
1325 \subsection*{UU1}
1326 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
1327 \lipsum[42]
1328 \subsubsection*{UUU1}

```

```

1329 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1330 \lipsum[43]
1331 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1332 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1333 \lipsum[44]
1334 \section*{U2}
1335 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1336 \lipsum[45]
1337 \part{Second Part}
1338 \parttoc
1339 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1340 %%                                % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1341 \chapter{DDDDD}                    % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1342 %%\minitoc                        % the minitoc appears
1343 \lipsum[46]
1344 \section{V1}
1345 \lipsum[47]
1346 \subsection{VV1}
1347 \lipsum[48]
1348 \subsubsection{VVV1}
1349 \lipsum[49]
1350 \paragraph{VVVV1}
1351 \lipsum[50]
1352 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1353 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1354 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1355 \end{picture}
1356 \caption{F3}                      % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1357 \end{figure}
1358 \lipsum[51]
1359 \section{V2}
1360 \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1361 \chapter{EEEE}                   % this chapter should have a minitoc
1362 {%                                % left brace, see below
1363 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}      % depth of mini table of contents;
1364                                  % try with different values.
1365 \minitoc
1366 }                                % right brace
1367 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1368 %% on minitocdepth.
1369 \lipsum[53]
1370 \section{W1}                      % with the given depth
1371 \lipsum[54]
1372 \subsection{WW1}
1373 \lipsum[55]
1374 \subsubsection{WWW1}
1375 \lipsum[56]

```



```

1376 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1377 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1378 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1379 \end{picture}
1380 \caption{F4}                 % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1381 \end{figure}
1382 \lipsum[57]
1383 \paragraph{WWW1}
1384 \lipsum[58]
1385 \subparagraph{WWWWW1}
1386 \lipsum[59]
1387 \section{W2}
1388 \lipsum[60]

```

Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its parttoc:

```

1389 \appendix
1390 \part{Appendices}
1391 \parttoc

```

Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional argument:

```

1392 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1393 \chapter{Comments}
1394 \minitoc
1395 \section{C1}
1396 \lipsum[61]
1397 \section{C2}
1398 \lipsum[62]
1399 \section{C3}
1400 \lipsum[63]
1401 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1402 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1403 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1404 \end{picture}
1405 \caption{F5}                 % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1406 \end{figure}
1407 \section{C4}
1408 \chapter{Evolution}
1409 \minitoc
1410 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1411 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1412 \section{D1}
1413 \lipsum[64]
1414 \section{D2}
1415 \lipsum[65]
1416 \section{D3}
1417 \lipsum[66]
1418 \section{D4}

```

We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1419%% this line closes the omitted part
1420 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1421%% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
1422 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1423 \lipsum[67]
1424 \end{document}
1425 </mtc - bk>

```

4.10 The `mtc-bo.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the `tocloft` package [324]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a `minitoc` and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads some useful packages for the french language, the `geometry` package [306], which defines the global page layout, the `multicol` package [237], the `color` package [101], because we want a colored background for the `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package [324], to change some parameters of the `minitoc`, and, at least, the `minitoc` package itself.

```

1426 <*mtc - bo>
1427 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1428 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1429 [2007/01/04]
1430 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1431 lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1432 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1433 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1434 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1435 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
1436 \usepackage{mypatches}
1437 \usepackage{multicol}
1438 \usepackage{color}

```

We use the `tocloft` package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the `minitoc`:

```

1439 \usepackage{tocloft}
1440 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
1441 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
1442 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
1443 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1444 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1445 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1446 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

1447 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1448 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

1449 \usepackage[français,tight]{minitoc}
1450 \usepackage{hyperref}
1451 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1452 \nomtcrule           % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1453 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1454 %                    (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1455 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

```

1456 %%%
1457 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT « RENCONTRE » AU LIEU DE « CHAPITRE » %
1458 % Sans saut de ligne (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ) %
1459 %%%
1460 \makeatletter
1461 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1462   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1463   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1464     \interlinepenalty \@M
1465     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1466       \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1467       \fi
1468       \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1469       \vskip 10\p@
1470 }}
1471 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1472   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1473   {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1474     \interlinepenalty \@M
1475     \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1476     \vskip 10\p@
1477 }} \makeatother

```

```

1478 %%%
1479 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES %
1480 %%%
1481 % param1: date de la rencontre

```

```

1482 % param2: nombre de périodes
1483 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1484 % param4: messages
1485 % param5: lecture
1486 % param6: exercices
1487 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1488 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1489 \parindent = 0.0in
1490 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1491 \begin{multicols}{2}
1492     {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1493     \textit{(#2)}}
1494     \vfill\columnbreak
1495     \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1496     #1
1497 \end{multicols}
1498 \vspace{-18pt}
1499 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1500
1501 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt}
1502 \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1503 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1504
1505 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1506 \colorbox[cmk]{.1,0,0,0}{%
1507     \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1508         \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1509         \minitoc%
1510     }}
1511 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1512
1513 \mtcskip
1514
1515 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1516
1517 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1518 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1519
1520 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1521
1522 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1523 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1524
1525 %: LECTURE
1526 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1527
1528 % EXERCICES
1529 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1530
1531 %\newpage
1532 \end{multicols}%
1533 }
1534 %{\newpage}
1535 {\hrule}

```

```

1536
1537 \renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1538
1539 \pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1540 \parindent = 0.0in
1541 \parskip = 0.1in
1542
1543 %%%%%%%%%%%
1544 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS %
1545 %%%%%%%%%%%
1546 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1547 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1548

```

The body of the document:

```

1549 %%%%%%%%%%%
1550 %: BEGIN %
1551 %%%%%%%%%%%
1552 \begin{document}
1553 \dominitoc
1554 \faketableofcontents
1555 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1556 %\minitoc
1557 \begin{pageUn}
1558     {%1      Date du cours
1559             lundi 25 août
1560             }
1561     {%2      Durée du cours
1562             2 périodes
1563             }
1564     {%3      Liste des documents à~distribuer
1565             \item Plan de cours
1566             \item Fiche d'identification
1567             \item Grille horaire
1568             \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1569             }
1570     {%4      Ne pas oublier
1571             \item Acheter le livre de référence
1572             \item Apporter une disquette
1573             }
1574     {%5      Lecture
1575             Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp
1576             }
1577     {%6      Exercice
1578             Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1579             }
1580 \end{pageUn}
1581
1582 %%%%%%%%%%%
1583 \section{Titre de la section} %
1584 %%%%%%%%%%%
1585

```

```

1586 Texte dans la section
1587
1588 %%
1589 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1590 %%
1591 Bla bla bla
1592
1593 %%
1594 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1595 %%
1596 Bla bla bla
1597
1598
1599 %%%%%%%%%%%
1600 \section{Titre d'une autre section} %
1601 %%%%%%%%%%%
1602
1603 Texte dans la section
1604
1605 %%
1606 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1607 %%
1608 Bla bla bla
1609
1610 %%
1611 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1612 %%
1613 Bla bla bla
1614
1615
1616 %%%%%%%%%%%
1617 \section{Encore une autre section} %
1618 %%%%%%%%%%%
1619
1620 Texte dans la section
1621
1622 \end{document}
1623 </mtc - bo>

```

4.11 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

```

1624 <*mtc - ch0>
1625 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1626 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1627 [2007/01/04]
1628 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1629 \begin{document}

```

```

1630 \dominitoc
1631 \tableofcontents

```

The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:

```

1632 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1633 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1634 \minitoc
1635 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1636 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1637 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1638 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1639
1640 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1641 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1642 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1643 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1644 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1645 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1646 things by halves around here.
1647
1648 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1649 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1650 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1651 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1652
1653 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1654 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1655 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1656 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1657 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1658 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1659 things by halves around here.

```

The second chapter is normal:

```

1660 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1661 \minitoc
1662 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1663 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1664 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1665 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1666
1667 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1668 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1669 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1670 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1671 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1672 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1673 things by halves around here.
1674 \end{document}
1675 </mtc - ch0>

```

4.12 The `mtc-cri.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a starred part and starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the `mtc-cri.log` file.

<pre> 1676 *mtc - cri> 1677 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% 1678 {report} 1679 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}% 1680 [2007/01/04] 1681 \usepackage[francais]{babel} 1682 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc} 1683 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc} 1684 \usepackage% 1685 [french2,tight]% 1686 {minitoc} 1687 1688 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2} 1689 1690 \begin{document} 1691 \doparttoc 1692 \dominitoc 1693 \tableofcontents 1694 \part*{Présentation générale} 1695 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale] 1696 \adjustptc[-2] 1697 \parttoc 1698 1699 Texte de la 1700 présentation générale\ldots 1701 1702 \chapter*{Les auteurs} 1703 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs] 1704 Présentation des auteurs\ldots 1705 </pre>	<pre> 1706 \chapter*{Les lecteurs} 1707 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs] 1708 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots 1709 1710 \part{Première partie} 1711 \parttoc 1712 \chapter*{Introduction} 1713 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction] 1714 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1715 \minitoc 1716 \section{Première section~A} 1717 \section{Deuxième section~A} 1718 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1719 \minitoc 1720 \section{Première section~B} 1721 \section{Deuxième section~B} 1722 1723 \part{Deuxième partie} 1724 \parttoc 1725 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1726 \minitoc 1727 \section{Première section~C} 1728 \section{Deuxième section~C} 1729 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1730 \minitoc 1731 \section{Première section~D} 1732 \section{Deuxième section~D} 1733 \end{document} 1734 \</mtc - cri> </pre>
--	--

4.13 The `mtc-fko.tex` document file

This is a document using the `scrbook` class. Without any precaution, some entries in the minitocs are not in the right font (bold sans serif) like in the main table of contents; moreover, the language of the minitoc titles is not correct because the options of the `babel` package are not transferred to the `minitoc` package. To solve the language problem, we just set “german” as a *global* option in the `\documentclass` command (`babel` and `minitoc` will hence use this global option).


```

1735 <*mtc – fko>
1736 \documentclass[german,a4paper,oneside]{scrbook}
1737 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fko.tex}%
1738 [2007/02/19]

```

Then we load the packages and set some parameters:

```

1739 \usepackage{babel}
1740 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1741 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} % optional

```

Then we set explicitly the fonts for the entries³ and the font of the titles of the minitocs, knowing that the font command `\sectfont` is defined in `scrbook.cls`; we change also the title for the minitocs:

```

1742 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\sectfont\small}
1743 \mtcsetttitlefont{minitoc}{\sectfont\large}
1744 \mtcsetttitle{minitoc}{Inhalt}

```

Then the body of the document, with a chapter (with a minitoc) containing a section. The section entry did not appear in bold sans serif in the original document (before the corrections).

```

1745 \begin{document}
1746 \dominitoc
1747 \tableofcontents
1748 %
1749 \chapter{Ein serifenloses Kapitel}
1750 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
1751 \section{Dieser Text ist in minitoc serifenlos}
1752 Auch der Text \glqq Inhaltsangabe\grqq\ will
1753 so wie koma es definiert.
1754 \end{document}
1755 </mtc – fko>

```

4.14 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

```

1756 <*mtc – fo1>
1757 \documentclass{report}
1758 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
1759 [2007/01/04]
1760 \usepackage{lipsum}
1761 \usepackage{txfonts}

```

³ Here we only gave the commands for the section entries in the minitocs, but analog commands may be used for lower entries.

```

1762 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1763 \begin{document}
1764 \doparttoc
1765 \dominitoc
1766 \tableofcontents
1767 \part{Introduction}
1768 \clearpage

```

A first copy, with default fonts:

```

1769 \parttoc

```

A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

```

1770 \clearpage
1771 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1772 \parttoc

```

A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

```

1773 \clearpage
1774 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1775 \parttoc

```

A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

```

1776 \clearpage
1777 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1778 \parttoc
1779 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1780 \minitoc
1781 \lipsum[1]
1782 \section{First section}
1783 \lipsum[2]
1784 \subsection{Alpha}
1785 \lipsum[3]
1786 \subsection{Beta}
1787 \lipsum[4]
1788 \section{Second section}
1789 \lipsum[5]
1790 \subsection{Gamma}
1791 \lipsum[6]
1792 \subsection{Delta}
1793 \lipsum[7]
1794 \end{document}
1795 </mtc - fo1>

```

4.15 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of mtc-fo1.tex (see section 4.14 on page 121).

```

1796 <*mtc - fo2>
1797 \documentclass{report}
1798 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1799 [2007/01/04]
1800 \usepackage{lipsum}
1801 \usepackage{txfonts}
1802 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

We declare the fonts with the old method:

```

1803 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
1804 \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
1805 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
1806 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
1807 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
1808 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
1809 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
1810 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
1811 \begin{document}
1812 \doparttoc
1813 \dominitoc
1814 \tableofcontents
1815 \part{Introduction}
1816 \clearpage

```

A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```

1817 \parttoc
1818 \clearpage

```

A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```

1819 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1820 \parttoc
1821 \clearpage

```

A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```

1822 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1823 \parttoc
1824 \clearpage

```

A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```
1825 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1826 \parttoc
1827 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1828 \minitoc
1829 \lipsum[1]
1830 \section{First section}
1831 \lipsum[2]
1832 \subsection{Alpha}
1833 \lipsum[3]
1834 \subsection{Beta}
1835 \lipsum[4]
1836 \section{Second section}
1837 \lipsum[5]
1838 \subsection{Gamma}
1839 \lipsum[6]
1840 \subsection{Delta}
1841 \lipsum[7]
1842 \end{document}
1843 </mtc – fo2>
```

4.16 The mtc-gap.tex document file

The mtc-gap.tex document file is described in section 2.44 on page 73.

4.17 The mtc-hi1.tex document file

The mtc-hi1.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 65.

4.18 The mtc-hi2.tex document file

The mtc-hi2.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 66.

4.19 The mtc-hia.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the `article` class.

<pre> 1844 (*mtc – hia) 1845 \documentclass% 1846 [oneside,a4paper]{article} 1847 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}% 1848 [2007/01/04] 1849 \usepackage{lipsum} 1850 \usepackage% 1851 [tight,insection]% 1852 {minitoc} 1853 \dosomectlot 1854 \begin{document} 1855 \listoftables </pre>	<pre> 1856 \section{First section} 1857 \sectlot 1858 \lipsum[1] 1859 \begin{table}[hb] 1860 \caption{My first visible table} 1861 \end{table} 1862 \lipsum[2] 1863 \begin{table}[ht] 1864 \caption{A second visible table} 1865 \end{table} 1866 \lipsum[3] </pre>
---	---

For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:



<pre> 1867 \begin{table}[hb] 1868 \mtchideinmainlot 1869 \caption{My first hidden table} 1870 \end{table} 1871 \lipsum[4-6] 1872 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1873 \caption{A second hidden table} 1874 \end{table} 1875 \lipsum[7] 1876 \section{Second section} 1877 \sectlot 1878 \lipsum[8] </pre>
---	--

For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:



<pre> 1879 \begin{table}[hb] 1880 \caption{My last hidden table} 1881 \endmtchideinmainlot 1882 \end{table} 1883 \lipsum[9] 1884 \begin{table}[ht] 1885 \caption{A third visible table} 1886 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1887 \lipsum[10] 1888 \begin{table}[hb] 1889 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1890 \end{table} 1891 \lipsum[11] 1892 \end{document} 1893 \end{mtc – hia} </pre>
---	---

4.20 The mtc-hir.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the `report` class.

<pre> 1894 <*mtc – hir> 1895 \documentclass[a4paper]{report} 1896 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}% 1897 [2007/01/04] 1898 \usepackage{lipsum} 1899 \usepackage% 1900 [tight]{minitoc} 1901 \dominilot 1902 \begin{document} 1903 \listoftables 1904 \chapter{First chapter} </pre>	<pre> 1905 \minilot 1906 \lipsum[1] 1907 \begin{table}[hb] 1908 \caption{My first visible table} 1909 \end{table} 1910 \lipsum[2] 1911 \begin{table}[ht] 1912 \caption{A second visible table} 1913 \end{table} 1914 \lipsum[3] </pre>
---	--

For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

<pre> 1915 \begin{table}[hb] 1916 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 1917 \caption{My first hidden table} 1918 \end{table} 1919 \lipsum[4–6] 1920 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1921 \caption{A second hidden table} 1922 \end{table} 1923 \lipsum[7] 1924 \chapter{Second chapter} 1925 \minilot 1926 \lipsum[8] </pre>
--	--

For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

<pre> 1927 \begin{table}[hb] 1928 \caption{My last hidden table} 1929 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 1930 \end{table} 1931 \lipsum[9] 1932 \begin{table}[ht] 1933 \caption{A third visible table} 1934 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1935 \lipsum[10] 1936 \begin{table}[hb] 1937 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1938 \end{table} 1939 \lipsum[11] 1940 \end{document} 1941 </mtc – hir> </pre>
--	--

4.21 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class scrbook.

```

1942 <*mtc – hop>
1943 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1944 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1945   [2007/01/04]
1946 \usepackage{lipsum}
1947 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1948 \begin{document}

```

We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF file is prepared):

```

1949 \dominitoc
1950 \dominilof
1951 \tableofcontents
1952 \fakelistoffigures

```

A starred part with its entry in the TOC:

```

1953 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1954 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:

```

1955 \chapter{Chapter 1}
1956 \minitoc
1957 \minilof
1958 \section{Section one of first chapter}
1959 \lipsum[1]
1960 \begin{figure}
1961     \centering
1962     Test
1963     \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1964 \end{figure}
1965
1966 \section{Section two of first chapter}
1967 \lipsum[2]
1968 \begin{figure}
1969     \centering
1970     Test
1971     \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1972 \end{figure}
1973
1974 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1975 \minitoc \minilof
1976
1977 \section{Section one of second chapter}
1978 \lipsum[3]
1979 \begin{figure}
1980     \centering
1981     Test
1982     \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1983 \end{figure}
1984 \cleardoublepage
1985 \section{Section two of second chapter}
1986 \lipsum[4]
1987 \begin{figure}
1988     \centering
1989     Test
1990     \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1991 \end{figure}
1992 \end{document}
1993 </mtc - hop>

```

4.22 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1994 <*mtc – liv>
1995 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1996 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
1997 [2007/01/04]
```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine \cleardoublepage:

```

1998 \makeatletter
1999 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
2000 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
2001 \if@twoside
2002 \ifodd\c@page\else
2003 \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
2004 \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
2005 \fi
2006 \fi
2007 }%
2008 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
2009 \makeatother
```

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```

2010 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2011 \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}
```

We load two packages, tocloft [324], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and sectsty [232], to customize the sectionning commands:

```

2012 \usepackage{tocloft}
2013 \usepackage{sectsty}
```

We load the minitoc package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```

2014 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
2015 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
2016 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
2017 \usepackage{mypatches}
2018 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}
```

We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:


```

2019 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
2020 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
2021 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
2022 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
2023 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
2024 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
2025 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
2026 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)

```

Some informations for the title page:

```

2027 \title{Systèmes d'occultation}
2028 \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}

```

And the document body⁴:

```

2029 \begin{document}
2030
2031 \maketitle
2032
2033 \dominitoc
2034 \tableofcontents
2035
2036 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}
2037 \label{chap+controle}
2038 \minitoc
2039
2040 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
2041 \index{taylorisme}
2042 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
2043 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
2044 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
2045 industrielle.
2046
2047 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
2048 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
2049 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
2050 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
2051 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
2052 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
2053
2054 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
2055 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
2056 son destinataire.
2057
2058 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
2059 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
2060 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
2061 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
2062 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
2063 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous

```

⁴ The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

2064 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
2065
2066 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
2067 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
2068 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
2069
2070 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
2071 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
2072 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
2073 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
2074
2075 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}
2076 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
2077 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
2078 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]
2079
2080 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
2081 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
2082 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
2083 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
2084
2085 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}
2086 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
2087 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
2088 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
2089 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les
2090 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]
2091
2092 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}
2093 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un
2094 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de
2095 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent
2096 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]
2097
2098 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}
2099 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne
2100 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]
2101
2102 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}
2103 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion
2104 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]
2105
2106 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}
2107
2108 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons
2109 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup
2110 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du
2111 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]
2112
2113 \chapter{Le travail informatique}
2114 \minitoc
2115
2116 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}
2117

```

2118 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}
2119 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin
2120 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des
2121 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,
2122 on pensait~[...]
2123
2124 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}
2125 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du
2126 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus
2127 au sujet de la programmation.
2128
2129 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
2130 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres
2131 principes. Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la
2132 préserver~[...]
2133
2134 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}
2135 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}
2136
2137 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
2138 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
2139 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre
2140 préoccupation.
2141
2142 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
2143 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
2144 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires
2145 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
2146 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]
2147
2148 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
2149 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
2150 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
2151 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
2152
2153 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
2154 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
2155 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
2156 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
2157 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
2158
2159 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
2160 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
2161 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
2162 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
2163
2164 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
2165 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
2166 modèle~[...]
2167 \end{document}
2168 \</mtc – liv>

```

4.23 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

<pre> 2169 (*mtc – mem) 2170 \documentclass% 2171 [oneside]{memoir} 2172 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}% 2173 [2007/01/04] 2174 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 2175 %%\usepackage{hyperref} 2176 %%\usepackage{memhfixc} 2177 \usepackage% 2178 [tight]{minitoc} 2179 %%\usepackage{mtcoff} 2180 \begin{document} </pre>
--	---

We use the starred form `\tableofcontents*` specific of the memoir class. Note that the `\chapter` command has *two* optional arguments in the memoir class.

<pre> 2181 \dominitoc 2182 \tableofcontents* 2183 2184 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC} 2185 \minitoc 2186 \lipsum[1] 2187 \newpage 2188 \lipsum[2] 2189 \section{S-1-one} 2190 \lipsum[3] 2191 \section{S-1-two} 2192 \lipsum[4] </pre>	<pre> 2193 2194 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC} 2195 \minitoc 2196 \lipsum[4] 2197 \newpage 2198 \lipsum[5] 2199 \section{S-2-one} 2200 \lipsum[6] 2201 \section{S-2-two} 2202 \lipsum[7] 2203 \end{document} 2204 </mtc – mem> </pre>
--	---

4.24 The mtc-mm1.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the adaptations necessary for fonts. First, the preamble:

```

2205 (*mtc – mm1)
2206 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
2207 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
2208   [2007/01/04]
2209 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text

```

We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```

2210 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2211 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}

```

Then we redefine them:

```

2212 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
2213 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}

```

We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, without success:

```

2214 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
2215 %% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref} \usepackage{memhfixc}
2216 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2217 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
2218 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape

```

But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```

2219 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2220 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
2221 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
2222 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}

```

But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```

2223 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
2224 %% this is working beautifully ->
2225 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}

```

The document body:

```

2226 \begin{document}
2227 \dominitoc
2228 \tableofcontents*
2229
2230 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
2231 \minitoc
2232 \section{This section}
2233 \lipsum[1]
2234 \section{Second section}
2235 \lipsum[2]
2236 \section{Third section}
2237 \lipsum[3]
2238 \end{document}
2239 </mtc - mm1>

```

4.25 The mtc-mu.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted in the text with the wrapfig package [12].

```

2240 <*mtc - mu>

```

```

2241 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2242 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
2243   [2007/01/04]
2244 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2245 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
2246 \usepackage{wrapfig}
2247 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
2248 \begin{document}
2249 \dominitoc
2250 \tableofcontents

```

A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:

```

2251 \chapter{Mulspren}\label{chapter+mulspren}
2252 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
2253 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
2254 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
2255 \minitoc
2256 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
2257 \end{minipage}
2258 \end{wrapfigure}

```

The remaining of the text:

```

2259 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
2260 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
2261 These gulfs were often created when programing environments used
2262 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
2263 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
2264 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
2265 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
2266 notations helped users understand programs.
2267 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2268 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2269 programming gulfs.
2270 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2271 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2272 programming gulfs.
2273
2274 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
2275 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
2276 benefits of multiple notations.
2277 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
2278 similar to conventional code.
2279 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
2280 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
2281 This is programming using dual notations.
2282 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
2283 Mulspren's language signature is \LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}.
2284
2285 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
2286 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.

```

```

2287
2288 \section{section 1}
2289 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
2290 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2291 \section{section 3}
2292 \section{section 4}
2293 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
2294 bla bla bla bla bla}

```

I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

```

2295 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
2296 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
2297 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2298 \newblock Mulspre: a multiple language simulation programming
2299 environment.
2300 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
2301 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
2302 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
2303
2304 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
2305 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2306 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.
2307 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
2308 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
2309 Australia, 2005.
2310 Australian Computer Society, Inc.
2311 \end{thebibliography}
2312 \end{document}
2313 </mtc - mu>

```

4.26 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfigure package [107]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2314 <*mtc - sbf>
2315 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2316 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2317 [2007/01/04]
2318 \usepackage{subfigure}
2319 \makeatletter
2320 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{%
2321 \@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2322 \makeatother

```

We load the `varioref` package (to have nice cross-references) and the `minitoc` package:

```
2323 \usepackage{varioref}
2324 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:

```
2325 \newcommand{\goodap}{%
2326   \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
2327   \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
2328 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2329 \begin{document}
```

We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:

```
2330 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2331 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2332 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2333 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2334 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2335 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2336 %% no tables in this document
2337 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2338 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2339 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2340 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

We prepare the `minilofs`, the table of contents and the list of figures:

```
2341 \dominilof
2342 \tableofcontents
2343 \listoffigures
```

A chapter, with is `minilof`, twice but with different depths:

```
2344 \chapter{First Chapter}
2345 \minilof
2346 \mtcskip
2347 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2348 \minilof
```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```
2349 \begin{figure}
2350 \centering
2351   \fbox{%
2352     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2353       \raggedright
2354       \begin{center}
2355         \subfigure[First]{%
```



```

2356      \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2357      \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2358      \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2359      \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\
2360      \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2361      \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\
2362      \caption{Three subfigures.}%
2363      \label{3figs}%
2364      \end{center}
2365      \vspace{4pt}%
2366      This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2367      Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2368      \end{minipage}}
2369 \end{figure}
2370 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
2371 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2372 \end{document}
2373 </mtc – sbf>

```

4.27 The mtc-scr.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class [191, 252, 281], scrreprt. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2374 (*mtc – scr)
2375 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2376 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2377 [2007/01/04]
2378 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2379 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2380 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2381 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The hyperref package, if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc:

```

2382 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

With a KOMA-Script class [191, 252, 281], use the k-tight package option in place of tight; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:

```

2383 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2384 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2385 \begin{document}
2386 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2387 \dominitoc
2388 \tableofcontents

```

In this document class, with the `liststotoc` class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```
2389 \listoftables
2390 \mtcaddchapter
```

With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the `tocbind` package.

```
2391 \clearpage
2392 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits
2393 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1
2394
2395 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}
2396
2397 Text.
2398
2399 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}
2400
2401 \begin{table}
2402   \centering
2403   \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2404     \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} & \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft \\
2405   \\
2406     \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2407     Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort \\
2408   \end{longtable}
2409   \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2410 \end{table}
2411
2412 Text.
2413
2414 \appendix
2415 \chapter{Dokumente}
2416 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2417
2418 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2419 Text.\\
2420 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2421 \end{document}
2422 \end{mtc-scr}
```

4.28 The `mtc-syn.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2423 \*mtc – syn)
2424 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2425 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2426 [2007/01/04]
2427 \usepackage{minitoc}
2428 \begin{document}
2429 \dominitoc

```

Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2430 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2431 \mtcaddchapter          % Added for a starred chapter
2432                        % without entry in the ToC
2433 Dedication goes here
2434
2435 \chapter*{Abstract}
2436 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2437                        % with an entry in the ToC
2438 Abstract goes here
2439
2440 \chapter*{Declaration}
2441 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2442                        % with an entry in the ToC
2443 Declaration goes here

```

The table of contents comes here. Looking at the `document.log` file shows that the minitoc files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```

2444 \tableofcontents
2445 \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

```

The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

<pre> 2446 \chapter{Chapter One} 2447 \minitoc 2448 2449 \section{Section 1} 2450 Some text. 2451 2452 \section{Section 2} 2453 Some text. 2454 2455 \chapter{Chapter Two} </pre>	<pre> 2456 \minitoc 2457 2458 \section{Another Section 1} 2459 Some more text. 2460 2461 \section{Another Section 2} 2462 Some more text. 2463 2464 \end{document} 2465 *mtc – syn) </pre>
---	---

4.29 The mtc-tbi.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [327].

<pre>2466 <*mtc - tbi> 2467 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}</pre>	<pre>2468 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}% 2469 [2007/01/04]</pre>
---	---

We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option nottoc for the tocbibind package:

<pre>2470 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind} 2471 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} 2472 \begin{document}</pre>	<pre>2473 \dominitoc 2474 \tableofcontents</pre>
---	--

As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction⁵:

<pre>2475 %% tocbibind compatibility 2476 %% not used if nottoc option :</pre>	<pre>2477 %% \mtcaddchapter[]</pre>
--	-------------------------------------

A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;

<pre>2478 \chapter*{Introduction}</pre>	<pre>2479 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]</pre>
---	--

Some normal chapters:

<pre>2480 \chapter{Title of chapter~1} 2481 \minitoc 2482 \section{as1} 2483 \section{as2} 2484 \chapter{Title of chapter~2} 2485 \minitoc 2486 \section{bs1} 2487 \section{bs2}</pre>	<pre>2488 \chapter{Title of chapter~3} 2489 \minitoc 2490 \section{cs1} 2491 \section{cs2} 2492 \chapter{Title of chapter~4} 2493 \minitoc 2494 \section{ds1} 2495 \section{ds2}</pre>
--	--

Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:

<pre>2496 \chapter*{Conclusion}</pre>	<pre>2497 \mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]</pre>
---------------------------------------	--

Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC:

⁵ It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

<pre> 2498 \chapter*{Appendices} 2499 \mtcaddchapter[Appendices] 2500 \minitoc 2501 \section*{first appendix} 2502 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}% </pre>	<pre> 2503 {first appendix} 2504 \section*{second appendix} 2505 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}% 2506 {second appendix} </pre>
---	--

The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the `tocbibind` package), so a correction must be applied:

<pre> 2507 \listoffigures 2508 %% tocbibind compatibility </pre>	<pre> 2509 \mtcaddchapter </pre>
--	----------------------------------

The `tocbibind` package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the recommended correction:

<pre> 2510 \begin{thebibliography}{3} 2511 \bibitem {s1}{title ...} 2512 \end{thebibliography} 2513 %% tocbibind compatibility </pre>	<pre> 2514 \adjustmtc 2515 \end{document} 2516 \</mtc - tbi> </pre>
---	---

4.30 The `mtc-tlc.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of the `article` class. It is the example of [242, page 58], modernized.

<pre> 2517 \<*mtc - tlc> 2518 \documentclass{article} </pre>	<pre> 2519 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}% 2520 [2007/01/04] </pre>
--	---

Dimensions of the text on the page:

<pre> 2521 \setlength{\textwidth}% 2522 {124.20126pt} </pre>	<pre> 2523 \setlength{\textheight}% 2524 {19\baselineskip} </pre>
--	---

We load the `minitoc` package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for the `secttocs`:

<pre> 2525 \usepackage{minitoc} 2526 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt} 2527 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}% </pre>	<pre> 2528 {\footnotesize} 2529 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3} </pre>
---	---

We prepare the `secttocs`, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:

2530 \begin{document}	2542
2531 \dosecttoc[e]	2543 \section{Albania}
2532 \faketableofcontents	2544 \secttoc
2533	2545 \subsection{Geography}
2534 \section{Afghanistan}	2546 \subsubsection{Total area}
2535 \secttoc	2547 28,750 km ²
2536 \subsection{Geography}	2548 \subsubsection{Land area}
2537 \subsubsection{Total area}	2549 27,400 km ²
2538 647,500 km ²	2550 \subsection{History} \ldots
2539 \subsubsection{Land area}	2551 \end{document}
2540 647,500 km ²	2552 \end{mtc-tlc}
2541 \subsection{History} \ldots	

4.31 The mtc-tlo.tex document file

The mtc-tlo.tex document file is described in section 2.46 on page 75.

4.32 The mtc-tsf.tex document file

This document⁶ shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfig package [109]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth. The old package fullpage [116] is used have a wide text area.

The preamble loads the subfig package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2553 \*mtc - tsf
2554 \documentclass{report}
2555 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}%
2556 [2007/01/04]
2557 \usepackage{fullpage}
2558 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2559 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2560 \newdimen\testtemp
2561 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2562   \testtemp #1%
2563   \advance\testtemp .5pt%
2564   \divide\testtemp 2%
2565   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2566     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%

```

⁶ It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the subfig package [109].

```

2567 \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2568 \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2569   \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt}\hfil}}
2570 %%
2571 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2572 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2573   \fbox{%
2574     \vbox to 1in{%
2575       \vfil
2576       \hbox to 2in{%
2577         \parbox{2in}{%
2578           \centering
2579           #1}}}%
2580       \vfil
2581       \vbox to 0pt{%
2582         \vss
2583         \hbox to 2in{%
2584           \hfil
2585           \ru{1.1in}%
2586           \hfil}}}}}}

```

The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and the list of figures:

```

2587 \begin{document}
2588 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2589 \dominilof
2590 \listoffigures
2591 \newpage

```

A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print a minilof twice, with different depths:

```

2592 \chapter{Reference Test}
2593 \minilof
2594 \mtcskip
2595 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2596 \minilof
2597
2598 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2599   \centering
2600   \subfigure{%
2601     \label{fig+A}%
2602     \figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\
2603       (no opt)}}
2604   \quad
2605   \subfigure[]{%
2606     \label{fig+B}%
2607     \figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\
2608       (empty opt)}}\\
2609
2610   \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2611     \label{fig+C}%
2612     \figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\

```

```

2613         (opt)}}
2614 \quad
2615 \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2616   \label{fig+D}%
2617   \figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\
2618     (empty opt and opt)}}
2619 \quad
2620 \subfigure[][]{%
2621   \label{fig+E}%
2622   \figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\
2623     (both empty opt)}}\\
2624
2625 \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2626   \label{fig+F}%
2627   \figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\
2628     (both opt)}}
2629 \quad
2630 \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][]{%
2631   \label{fig+G}%
2632   \figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\
2633     (opt and empty opt)}}
2634
2635 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2636 \label{fig+main}%
2637 \end{figure}
2638
2639 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2640 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2641 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2642 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2643 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2644
2645 \section{Centering Test}
2646 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2647 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2648 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2649 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2650 have centered labels.
2651 \end{document}
2652 </mtc - tsf>

```


Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

5.1	Introduction	145
5.2	Messages from the minitoc package	147
5.2.1	Informative messages	147
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	155
5.2.2	Warning messages	158
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	163
5.2.3	Error messages	179
5.3	Messages from the mtcff package	192
5.3.1	Warning messages	192
5.4	Message from the mtcpatchmem package	194

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and its associates, mtcff and mtcpatchmem¹.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation, but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).
- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L^AT_EX does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may differ.

- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but \LaTeX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.
 - *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
 - *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
 - *command* The name of the command.
 - *counter* The name of a \LaTeX counter.
 - *document* The name of your document, without its *.tex* extension.
 - *extension* The extension part of the name of a file.
 - *file* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the *document.toc* file, the *document.lof* file, or the *document.lot* file).
 - *internal_name* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
 - *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
 - *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
 - *new_title* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsettitle`.
 - *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
 - *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
 - *sequence* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
 - *value* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 433.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

```
Package: minitoc 2007/03/22 v53 Package minitoc (JPFD)
```

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFD” are my initials. This message has no identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0001>
(minitoc)             *** minitoc package, version 53 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0002>
(minitoc)             Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0003>
(minitoc)             chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0004>
(minitoc)             chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0005>
(minitoc)           compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the `hyperref` package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0006>
(minitoc)           document.extension is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0007>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type `ARGI`.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0008>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type `ARGI`.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0009>
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the `document.maf` file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 49. This option is the default since version #48.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0010>
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0011>
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0012>
(minitoc)                Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0013>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)                "counter" as "value" on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *value*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0014>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)                "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)                "\sequence" on input line LINE.

```

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *internal_name* with the given *sequence*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0015>
(minitoc)             \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "macro" as "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *sequence* of font commands.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0016>
(minitoc)             \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "\internal_name" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0017>
(minitoc)             \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "internal_name" as
(minitoc)             "new_title" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0018>
(minitoc)             \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)             "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\internal_name` macro which the given *sequence*.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0019>
(minitoc(hints))           No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))           in the document.log file.

```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0020>
(minitoc)             old version of the memoir class.

```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0021>
(minitoc)             Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0022>
(minitoc)             Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0023>
(minitoc)             part level macros available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0024>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINITOCs FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0025>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0026>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0027>
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0028>
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0029>
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0030>
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.

```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0031>
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0032>
(minitoc)             This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)             a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)             incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)             We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0033>
(minitoc)             Writing document.extension.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0034>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0035>
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A \dopartlof command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0036>
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A \dosectlof command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0037>
(minitoc) PREPARING MINILOFS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A \dominilof command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0038>
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A \dopartlot command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0039>
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A \dosectlot command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *file*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0040>
(minitoc(hints))           The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))           loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))           You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))           documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.27 on page 67.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0041>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.24 on page 63.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0042>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 60.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0043>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 47. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281] compatible with `minitoc`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0044>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using the memoir class, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 62.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0045>
(minitoc(hints))          The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))          has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))          on input line LINE.

```

A minitoc preparation command has been invoked more than once.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0046>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 47.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0047>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 61.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0048>
(minitoc(hints))           Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))           hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))           because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))           commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))           without any previous check.

```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0049>
(minitoc(hints))           ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))           Some hints are eventually given below.

```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the *document.log* file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <I0050>
(minitoc)                  The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                  The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                  will not be available.
(minitoc)                  Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                  or from the CTAN archives.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <I0051>
(minitoc)                  The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                  The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                  will not be available.
(minitoc)                  Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                  or from the CTAN archives.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

5.2.2 Warning messages

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0001>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0002>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0003>
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0004>
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0005>
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0006>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0007>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0008>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0009>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0010>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0011>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0012>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0013>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0014>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0015>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0016>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0017>
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.
```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0018>
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.
```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0019>
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.
```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0020>
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the minitoc package will try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.



```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation as soon as possible.



```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0093>
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The list of the missing files is given in the W0094 warning message.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0094>
(minitoc)                Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)                ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0023>
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The *hyperref* package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 59.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0024>
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))          in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the *document.log* file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0025>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `alphanum` package which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0026>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsart` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0027>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0028>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \chapter command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0029>
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0030>
(minitoc(hints))                --- The \part command is altered
                                after minitoc.

```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0031>
(minitoc(hints))                --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))                without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))                but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))                which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))                loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))                You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))                ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while minitoc is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0032>
(minitoc(hints))                --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))                too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))                dated of 2005/04/18 at least.

```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0033>
(minitoc(hints))                The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0034>
(minitoc(hints))               The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The caption2 package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69. Note that the caption2 package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the caption package.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0035>
(minitoc(hints))               The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0036>
(minitoc(hints))               The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0037>
(minitoc(hints))               The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 67.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0038>
(minitoc(hints))               The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 69.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0039>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \section command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0040>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the titletoc package, but it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. See note 18 on page 50.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0041>
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0042>
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0043>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0044>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0045>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0046>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0047>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0048>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0049>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0050>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                           command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0051>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                           command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0052>
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete
                              command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (\firstsectionis). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0053>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0054>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0055>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0056>
(minitoc(hints))              You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))              \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))              option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page [29](#).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0057>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0058>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0059>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0060>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0061>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0062>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0063>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0064>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0065>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0066>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))               \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0067>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))               \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0068>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0069>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0070>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.

```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0071>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.

```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0072>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoffigures.

```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0073>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.

```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0074>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0075>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))               but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0076>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))               but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0077>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))               but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0078>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))               but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0079>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0080>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0081>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0082>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0083>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0084>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))      use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0085>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0086>
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 72.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0087>
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 72.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0088>
(minitoc(hints))               The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The romannum package alters the numbering of some sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.40 on page 72.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0089>
(minitoc(hints))               The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.41 on page 72.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0090>
(minitoc(hints))               The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.42 on page 73.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0091>
(minitoc(hints))               The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The captcont package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.43 on page 73.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0092>
(minitoc(hints))               The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The hangcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.47 on page 76.

5.2.3 Error messages

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0001>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixglossary` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0002>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixindex` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0003>
(minitoc)                Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0004>
(minitoc)          Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0005>
(minitoc)          Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0006>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0007>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0008>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0009>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0010>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0011>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0012>
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a feature param
(minitoc)          (before, after, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, or `thispagestyle`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0013>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0014>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0015>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, `...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0016>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
(minitoc)                It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)                pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0017>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)                argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0018>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)                argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```


The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists³ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0019>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0020>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists³ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

³ O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0021>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0022>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0023>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are *incompatible*. You should verify them.



```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0024>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0025>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are *incompatible*. One is likely to be misspelt.



```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0026>
(minitoc)          The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)          is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0027>
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0028>
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.

```

Your version of the memoir class is really *incompatible* with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.



```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0029>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0030>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0031>
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0032>
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0033>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0034>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0035>
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0036>
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue

```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0037>
(minitoc)                The \command command is incompatible
(minitoc)                with the document class.
```

```
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
...
```

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (*\command*) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0038>
(minitoc)                Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)                A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)                We will try to continue with
(minitoc)                current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory *LANGUAGE.mld* language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

5.3 Messages from the mtcff package

The mtcff package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

5.3.1 Warning messages

```
Package mtcff Warning: <F0001>
(mtcff)                \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcff Warning: <F0002>
(mtcff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcff Warning: <F0003>
(mtcff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0004>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0005>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0006>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0007>
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the `document.log` file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0008>
(mtcoff)                The macro \string\kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

```
Package mtcpatchmem Info: <M0001>
Package mtcpatchmem Info: mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class.
```

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter 12 on page 434.

Chapter 6

Jargon

Tables

6.1	Category codes	201
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	201
6.3	Standard document classes	202
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	204
6.5	Various encodings	205
6.6	Most common font encodings	217
6.7	Most common font families	217
6.8	Most common font series	217
6.9	Most common font shapes	218
6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	218
6.11	Author commands for fonts	218
6.12	Some systems derived from T _E X and L ^A T _E X	219

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages, and from [3, 4, 110, 113, 190, 191, 204, 211–213, 226, 227, 230, 242, 252, 256, 257, 315].

- .aux** The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a L^AT_EX document. It carries some information from a L^AT_EX run to the next.
- .cls** The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via `\documentclass`.
- .dtx** The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a L^AT_EX package or class. This file is often associated with a `.ins` file to generate the package or class. Compiling a `.dtx` file with L^AT_EX generates the documentation.
- .F** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Fnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .G** The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Gnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.

.H	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Hnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.ins	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a L ^A T _E X package or class. When compiled with L ^A T _E X, it extracts the files of the package or class from an <i>.dtx</i> file.
.lof	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
.log	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
.lot	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
.M	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Mnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.maf	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
.mld	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
.mlf	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mlfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.mlo	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <i>.mld</i> file; hence the <i>.mld</i> file must load a <i>.mlo</i> file.
.mlt	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mltmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.mtc	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mtcmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.P	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Pnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.plf	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.plfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.plt	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.pltmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.ptc	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.ptcmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.S	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Snn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
.slf	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.slfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.slt	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.sltmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.
.stc	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.stcmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.

- .sty** The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.
- .T** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Tnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .tex** The suffix of the name of a \TeX or \LaTeX normal source file.
- .toc** The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
- .U** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Unn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
- .V** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Vnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.

absolute numbering The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

abstract The abstract package [325] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

adjustment Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`, `\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

alnumsec The `alnumsec` package [196] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. Its output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [92]), but you can use the standard \LaTeX sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.42 on page 73).

alphanum The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [92], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.



\mathcal{AMS} The American Mathematical Society. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are *incompatible* with the minitoc package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.



amsart, amsart.cls A document class for articles [6], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.



amsbook, amsbook.cls A document class for books [6], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the minitoc package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 63.

amsproc, amsproc.cls A document class for conference proceedings [6], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.



Antomega Antomega [194] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* (Λ), based on the original *omega.sty* file of the Omega project (Ω). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (.mld) use titles taken from Antomega: *greek-mono.mld*, *greek-polydemo.mld*, *greek-polykatha.mld*, *latvian.mld*, *polish2.mld*, *russian2m.mld*, *russian2o.mld*, and *spanish3.mld*.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The appendix package [326] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for example, for per chapter/section appendices. If this package is used with minitoc, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 60).

Arabi Arabi [178] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in *arabi.mld* and *farsi3.mld* come from the *arabic.ldf* and *farsi.ldf* files of this system.

ArabTeX ArabTeX [198, 199] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in *arab.mld* (or *arabic.mld*), *arab2.mld* and *hebrew.mld* come from ArabTeX, while those of *hebrew2.mld* come from babel [44, 45].

ArmTeX ArmTeX [114] is a package (prepared by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the armenian language. The titles in *armenian.mld* come from ArmTeX.

article A standard \LaTeX document class [204]. It has sectionning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

\AtBeginDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

\AtEndDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

autoconfiguration Since version #28, minitoc detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

auxiliary During the preparation of a document, the \LaTeX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are `document.aux` (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), `document.toc` for the table of contents, `document.lof` for the list of figures, and `document.lot` for the list of tables. The minitoc package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are `document.extension`, the table 1.11 on page 51 lists the possible extensions.

babel The babel package [44, 45] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write \LaTeX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the babel package.

BangTeX A package for typesetting documents in the bangla language using the \TeX/\LaTeX systems; see [263].

before A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

BibTeX A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in \LaTeX documents. Distributed with \LaTeX . See [230, 267, 268, 292].

bibtopic A \LaTeX package [18] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.

bibunits The bibunits package [155] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `natbib` [117, 118], `overcite` [11] and KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281].

book A standard \LaTeX document class [204]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

cappuccino See “minutes” below.

captcont The captcont package [108] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the subfig package [109] in particular.

caption The caption package [296] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such figure and table and cooperates with many other packages.

caption2 The¹ caption2 package [294] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular caption package [296] and has been superseed by the new release of the regular caption package version 3.0 in December 2003. caption2 is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the caption package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the caption2 package should be used instead of the caption package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

CATALOG A plain text file which contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

catcode Short for “category code”. In² the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that T_EX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1 on the next page. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that T_EX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The T_EXbook*” led you to believe that there were just two types—the escape character and the others—and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The ccaption package [329] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the minitoc package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (\firstchapteris and co.). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in minitoc version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 46.

chapterbib The chapterbib package [13] allows multiple bibliographies in a L^AT_EX document, including items \cite'd in more than one bibliography. Despite the name

¹ This text comes from the documentation of the caption package. The caption and caption2 packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

² This definition is taken from “*The T_EXbook*” [187].

Table 6.1: Category codes

Category	Meaning
0	Escape character (<code>\</code> usually)
1	Beginning of group (<code>{</code> usually)
2	End of group (<code>}</code> usually)
3	Math shift (<code>\$</code> usually)
4	Alignment tab (<code>&</code> usually)
5	End of line (<i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter (<code>#</code> usually)
7	Superscript (<code>^</code> usually)
8	Subscript (<code>_</code> usually)
9	Ignored character (<i>null</i> usually)
10	Space (<code>_</code> usually)
11	Letter (<code>A, ..., Z</code> and <code>a, ..., z</code>)
12	Other character (none of the above or below)
13	Active character (<code>~</code> usually)
14	Comment character (<code>%</code> usually)
15	Invalid character (<i>delete</i> usually)

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

“chapterbib”, the *bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.74.2 on page 380.

CJK The CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare \LaTeX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into \TeX since some of the

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article [204]	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
proc [203]	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc [99]	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltnews [180]	For preparing the announcement of a L ^A T _E X release; analog to the article class.
report [204]	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
book [204]	For real books.
letter [205]	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides [236]	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT _E X ^a instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

^a <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

values used for the encodings' second bytes are reserved for control characters: '{', '}', and '\'. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in L^AT_EX; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [226, 227]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the .mlo files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.12 on page 41.

class The **class**³ is the first information L^AT_EX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes [204]. The L^AT_EX 2_ε distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 56.

cmk An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.

CMR For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in english.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [186] designed by Donald E. KNUTH for T_EX. Initially they were built with METAFONT [119, 188] (a program also created by KNUTH),

³ This note is extracted from [257], then adapted.

but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

counter A $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, but $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, $\varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ [94], allows more counters. Omega (Ω) also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are:

- `ftp.dante.de` (Cologne [KÖln], Germany)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.dante.de/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de`
- `ftp.tex.ac.uk` (Cambridge, England, UK)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/`
 - NFS mountable from `nfs.tex.ac.uk/tex-archive`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.tex.ac.uk/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk`
- `tug.ctan.org` (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/archive)`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.ctan.org/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org`

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

de.comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, in german.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the `secnumdepth` counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 on the following page for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the parttocs, minitocs, and secttocs, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectioning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ (and $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$* (Devanāgarī) package [265] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$.

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the minitoc package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 229.

en-mtc.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [148] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [106, 121, 307]), etc. See table 6.5 on the following page and [214].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

ethiop A $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ package [35] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [44, 45].

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
<code>ansinew</code>	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
<code>applemac</code>	Macintosh encoding.
<code>ascii</code>	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
<code>cp1250</code>	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
<code>cp1251</code>	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
<code>cp1252</code>	Synonym for <code>ansinew</code> .
<code>cp437</code>	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
<code>cp437de</code>	IBM 437 code page (German version).
<code>cp850</code>	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
<code>cp852</code>	IBM 852 code page.
<code>cp855</code>	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
<code>cp865]</code>	IBM 865 code page.
<code>cp866]</code>	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
<code>decmulti</code>	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
<code>latin1</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
<code>latin2</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
<code>latin3</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, <code>latin5</code> is the preferred character set for Turkish.
<code>latin4</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
<code>latin5</code>	Is essentially the same as <code>latin1</code> , except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
<code>next</code>	Next encoding.

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 51 and 2.5 on page 56. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

farsi.sty See FarsiTeX below.

FarsiTeX A package [129] to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L^AT_EX2.09. See also sections 13.52 on page 464 and 13.53 on page 464.

features A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Three features are associated to each mini-

table type: a “before” feature (executed before the mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the mini-table), and a “thispagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

filecontents A special \LaTeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.12 on page 41) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 46.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\FloatBarrier A macro from the `placeins` package [9]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

fminitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

fminitoc.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

fminitoc.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` script).

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 229.

fncychap The `fncychap` package [220] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.38 on page 72).

- fr.comp.text.tex** The Usenet newsgroup about \TeX and \LaTeX , in french.
- franc.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- frbib.sty** A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- fr-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [148] tool to add an URL field.
- frnew.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- guarani** A \LaTeX package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [38] and section 13.72 on page 475.
- hangcaption** The `hangcaption` package [182] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, \LaTeX 2.09).
- Hindi** For the Hindi language, see the Devanāgarī package [265] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available.
- hint** An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).
- hints** An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the consistency between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).
- H \LaTeX** A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* (Λ) (see below). Written by Un KOAUNGHI [190, in korean]. It uses special Hangŭl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.
- hyperlink** In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamicaly found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.
- hyperref** The `hyperref` package [277] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in \LaTeX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for `Hyper \TeX` dvi processors, for embedded `pdfmark` commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (`dvips` and `dvipsone`), for `dvipwindo`, for `pdf \TeX` , for `\TeX 4ht`, and for `V \TeX` 's pdf and HTML backends.

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperTeX project, described in [272]. It extends the functionality of all the L^AT_EX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

ifmtarg The ifmtarg package [335] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty (“empty” meaning zero or more spaces only).

imk An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 9 on page 229.

insection The insection package option loads the placeins package [9] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use `sectlofs` or `sectlots` in your document. See section 1.2 on page 28.

insertion The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are:

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 226.

\jobname A T_EX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by T_EX (or L^AT_EX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The jura class [92], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents.



k-loose A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `loose` package option for standard classes.

k-tight A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `tight` package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [191, 252, 281] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (`scrartcl`, `scrbook`, `scrlettr`, `scrlltr2`, and `scrreprt`) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

The `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl` classes are compatible with the `minitoc` package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 47). The `scrlettr` and `scrlettr2` have no sectioning commands, so the `minitoc` package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the \LaTeX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard \LaTeX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes `book`, `report`, and `article`. There is also a replacement for the standard class `letter`.

Lambda The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega (Ω) is called “*Lambda*” (Λ).

Lamed The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph (\aleph) is called “*Lamed*” (\aleph).

\LaTeX \LaTeX [201] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. \LaTeX uses \TeX [187, 189] as its formatting engine (from [257]).

In fact, \LaTeX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. \LaTeX was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [201]. It uses the \TeX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days \LaTeX is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the \LaTeX package was (deeply) updated by the \LaTeX 3 team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of \LaTeX 2.09 some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called \LaTeX 2 ϵ .

\LaTeX is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to \LaTeX in an ASCII environment, you type `LaTeX`. \LaTeX 2 ϵ is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed `LaTeX2e`.

\LaTeX 2.09 An obsolete version of the \LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it⁴. Use the current version of \LaTeX 2 ϵ , which is supported and much more efficient.

\LaTeX 2 ϵ The current version of the \LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.

\LaTeX 3 The future version of \LaTeX , whose development is still in progress.

leaders A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regulary spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

letter A standard document class [205] to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectioning commands nor structure, the `minitoc` package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.

⁴ Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.



lipsum The lipsum package [157] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).

listfiles An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the L^AT_EX run) in the *document.maf* file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 49.

LOF An acronym for “list of figures”.

lofdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

loose An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.

LOT An acronym for “list of tables”.

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

ltxdoc A standard L^AT_EX document class [99], for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the *article* document class; see above.

ltnews A standard L^AT_EX document class [180], for preparing the announcement of a L^AT_EX release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the *article* document class; see above.

\makeatletter and **\makeatother** Many⁵ internal commands of L^AT_EX, of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands **\makeatletter** and **\makeatother** make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands should never be used in a package or class file.

makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

mcaption The mcaption package [171] provides a *margin*cap environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

⁵ Informations from [242, page 843].

memoir, memoir.cls A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [331, 332, 334]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 62.

mini-bibliography See **minibbl** below.

mini-list Synonym for “mini-table” below.

mini-lof See “minilof” below.

mini-lot See “minilot” below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only table of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See “minitoc” below.

minibbl Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 57.

minilof A list of figures for a chapter.

minilofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

minilot A list of tables for a chapter.

minilotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

minitoc A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

minitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.

minitoc.bug A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 53.

minitocdepth This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

minitoc.dtx The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.

minitoc-hyper.sty A special version [311] of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS to work with the powerful hyperref package [277]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [311] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*



- minitoc.ins** The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with \LaTeX produces most of the files of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.lst** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.l** A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in `minitoc.l` are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.
- minitoc.lan** A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.pdf** The english documentation in PDF format.
- minitoc.pre** This file contains a \LaTeX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.ps** The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` scripts).
- minitoc.sty** This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.sum** A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 77.
- minitoc-tds.zip** A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.
- minutes** The minutes package [219] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter! ⁶
- MonTeX** MonTeX [110, 113] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russianc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [112]. The following description is extracted from [113].
- MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

⁶ The little cups ☕ come from the `marvosym` package [170].

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, \xalx{H/h}) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root *bicig* whereas the Manju commands have the name root *bi*the.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [111] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

mtc-2c.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout.

- mtc-2nd.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package and its french2 language option.
- mtc-add.bib** A small bibliographic data base for the mtc-add.tex and mtc-ads.tex example documents.
- mtc-3co.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns.
- mtc-add.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the tocbibind package [327] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 92.
- mtc-ads.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the tocbibind package [327] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 97. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.
- mtc-amm.tex** An example file showing the use of the appendices environment in a memoir class document with the minitoc package.
- mtc-apx.tex** An example file showing the use of the mtchideinmaintoc environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices.
- mtc-art.tex** An example of document (article class) using the minitoc package.
- mtc-bk.tex** An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package.
- mtc-bo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout and using the tocloft package [324].
- mtc-ch0.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred first chapter.
- mtc-cri.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with starred parts and chapters.
- mtc-fko.tex** An example file showing the problem of fonts in minitocs when using the scrbook class.
- mtc-fo1.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-fo2.tex** Another example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-gap.tex** An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- mtc-hi1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments.
- mtc-hi2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:
- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
 - `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.

- mtc-hia.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an article class document.
- mtc-hir.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a report class document.
- mtc-hop.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the scrbook document class.
- mtc-liv.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a book with customized table of contents and minitocs.
- mtc-mem.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class.
- mtc-mm1.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class, if you want to change some fonts.
- mtc-mu.tex** A document using a minitoc set in a wrapfigure environment with the wrapfig package [12].
- mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [107].
- mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class [191, 252, 281], screprpt.
- mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters.
- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocbind package [327].
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [242, page 58], modernized.
- mtc-tlo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [324] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables.
- mtc-tsfc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [109].
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for a unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.



mu A length unit normally used in math mode (mu means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.

multibib The multibib package [156] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [155] or chapterbib [13], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.

natbib It is a L^AT_EX 2_ε (but with some support for L^AT_EX 2.09) package [117, 118] to act as generalized interface for standard and non-standard bibliographic style files (B_BT_EX).

needspace The needspace package [323] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.

NFSS The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection system [213] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. L^AT_EX 2_ε includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Every text font in L^AT_EX has five *attributes*:

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L^AT_EX are K_NU_TH’s “T_EX text” encoding (OT1), and the “T_EX text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the T_EX Users Group members during a T_EX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [214].

family The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For example, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K_NU_TH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

series How heavy or expanded a font is. For example, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

shape The form of the letters within a font family. For example, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

size The design size of the font, for example “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L^AT_EX. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6 on the next page.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for example a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7 on the following page. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8 on the next page. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9 on page 218.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for example 10pt or 1.5in or 3mm; if no unit is specified, pt is assumed. These five parameters specify every L^AT_EX font, see table 6.10 on page 218, for example.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L ^A T _E X extended text (“Cork”)
TS1	L ^A T _E X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L ^A T _E X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L ^A T _E X text (African languages)
T5	L ^A T _E X text (Vietnamese)
T7	L ^A T _E X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T _E X text (as defined by Donald E. K _N UTH)
OT2	T _E X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T _E X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T _E X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T _E X math italic (Donald E. K _N UTH)
OMS	T _E X math symbols (Donald E. K _N UTH)
OMX	T _E X math large symbols (Donald E. K _N UTH)
X2	L ^A T _E X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some V _T eX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software

Table 6.7: Most common font families

Family	Description
cmr	Computer Modern Roman
cmss	Computer Modern Sans
cmtt	Computer Modern Typewriter
cmn	Computer Modern Math Italic
cmsy	Computer Modern Math Symbols
cmex	Computer Modern Math Extensions
ptm	Adobe Times
phv	Adobe Helvetica
pcr	Adobe Courier

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Series	Description
m	Medium
b	Bold
bx	Bold extended
sb	Semi-bold
c	Condensed

These five parameters are displayed whenever L^AT_EX gives an overfull box warning, for example:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
n	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
it	Italic
sl	Slanted (or “oblique”)
sc	Caps and small caps

Table 6.10: The five font parameters for some fonts

LaTeX specification	Font	TeX name
OT1 cmr m n 10	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	cmr10
OT1 cmss m sl 1pc	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	cmssi12
OML cmm m it 10pt	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	cmmi10
T1 ptm b it 1in	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	ptmb8t at 1in

Table 6.11: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	cmr
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	cmss
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	cmtt
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	m
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	bx
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	n
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	it
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	sl
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	sc
<code>\tiny</code>	size	5pt
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	7pt
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	8pt
<code>\small</code>	size	9pt
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	10pt
<code>\large</code>	size	12pt
<code>\Large</code>	size	14.4pt
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	17.28pt
<code>\huge</code>	size	20.74pt
<code>\Huge</code>	size	24.88pt

The table 6.11 lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes⁷.

nocheckfiles A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

nohints A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

⁷ The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

Table 6.12: Some systems derived from T_EX and L^AT_EX

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Omega & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \\
 & & + & & & & + \\
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\
 \hline
 & & \aleph & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \beth
 \end{array}$$

nolistfiles An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 49.

notoccite This option of the minitoc package loads the notoccite package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 49.

Omega The Omega typesetting system⁸ (Ω) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of T_EX that is aimed primarily at improving T_EX’s multilingual abilities.

When the T_EX program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then T_EX has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze T_EX, mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the T_EX code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of T_EX. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for T_EX users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The L^AT_EX format (in the T_EX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” (Λ). Extending Omega with the ε -T_EX [94] extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” (\aleph) [40, 150] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The L^AT_EX for Aleph is known as “*Lamed*” (\beth). There is an experimental system, named L^UA_T_EX [172], which will regroup P_DF_ET_EX, Aleph, ε -T_EX and other developments.

package Packages⁹ are a very important feature of L^AT_EX. These are extensions to the basic L^AT_EX commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty`

⁸ Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [160, 161, 164, 274, 275].

⁹ This info is taken from [192, page 12–13] and adapted.

and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by their origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the \LaTeX basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the \LaTeX 3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{\LaTeX}$ packages, published by the American Mathematical Society, should be in any installation¹⁰.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard \LaTeX usage, but all are useful.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

partlot A list of tables for a part.

partlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

parttoc A table of contents for a part.

parttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the parttoCs.

PDF Portable Document Format [145]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

placeins The `placeins` package [9] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flafter` package (described in [210] and [242, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 28.

placeins.txt A plain text file containing the documentation of the `placeins` package [9].

PLATEX A version of \LaTeX customized for the polish (`polski`) language. See [258, 319]. But the *same* name refers also to a version of \LaTeX customized for the Japanese language, $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ [176].

pmk An example of shell script to prepare the `minitoc` package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 9 on page 229.

PostScript A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

¹⁰They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.



preamble In the main file of a \LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

preparation The preparation commands of the minitoc package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are:

<code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , <code>\dopartlot</code> ,	(part level)
<code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominiloof</code> , <code>\dominilot</code> ,	(chapter level)
<code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , <code>\dosectlot</code> ,	(section level)
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	(all levels)

proc A standard \LaTeX document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

pseudo-chapter Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the minitoc package. See section 1.3.4 on page 32.

quotchap The quotchap package [301] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2 ϵ document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.39 on page 72).

README is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

report A standard \LaTeX document class [204]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

rmk An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 9 on page 229.

romannum The romannum package [333] changes the numbers (for sectioning commands) generated by \LaTeX from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [322]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.40 on page 72).

rubber `rubber` [26] is a wrapper for \LaTeX and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a \LaTeX source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B μ T ϵ X**, **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

scrartcl See KOMA-Script above.

scrbook See KOMA-Script above.

scrreprt See KOMA-Script above.

sectionning commands These are the \LaTeX commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the `minitoc` package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the `minitoc` commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the `minitoc` commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the `minitoc` package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the `minitoc` commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 25. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the `minitoc` package.

sectlof A list of figures for a section.

sectlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlofs`.

sectlot A list of tables for a section.

sectlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlots`.

sectsty The `sectsty` package [232] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.28 on page 67).

secttoc A table of contents for a section.

secttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the `secttocs`.




sfheaders The `sfheaders` package [222] (for \LaTeX 2_ε) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.41 on page 72).

shell In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

shorttext An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 56.

shorttoc The `shorttoc` package [123] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.

- SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the Japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [216, 217].
- SL^AT_EX** A version of L^AT_EX customized for the Swedish language. See [231].
- splitbib** A L^AT_EX package [229] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...
- stdclsdv** The stdclsdv package [322] is intended to be used by the authors of L^AT_EX packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.
- strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.
- subfig** The subfig package [109] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.
- subfigure** The subfigure package [107] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [109].
- suffix** See “extension” above.
- TDS** The T_EX Directory Structure [304, 305]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T_EX system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T_EX files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.
- T_EX** T_EX is a computer program created by Donald E. KNUTH [187]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T_EX typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T_EX as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T_EX is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T_EX is converging to π and is now at 3.141592.
T_EX is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T_EX becomes TeX.
- thailatex** The thailatex package [233] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [216, 217].
- thispagestyle** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

- tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is *loose*.
- titlesec** The titlesec package [39] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. 
- titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. 
The titletoc.sty file is not part of the titlesec package; it's an independent package, but it's described in the titlesec package documentation [39].
- tmk** A script file which creates a TDS hierarchy [304, 305] (to be adjusted to your system).
- TOC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The tocbibind package [327] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 47.
- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.
- tocloft** The tocloft package [324] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 61 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.
- TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- token** A token¹¹ is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “cat-code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T_EX's tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T_EX to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For example, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{₁’ already inside token lists of T_EX would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{₁₂’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. T_EX's digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter 

¹¹This definition is taken from “The T_EXbook” [187].

a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.

- UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the `minitoc` point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).
- UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.
- urlbst** A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [148], to add a webpage `BibTeX` entry type, and add support for general `url` and `lastchecked` fields, to (most) `BibTeX` .bst files. Optionally adds basic support for `eprint` and `doi` fields, and `HyperTeX`/`hyperref` support, too. See [272, 277].
- UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in `CJK`. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with `TEX`. See table 6.2 on page 201.
- varsects** The `varsects` package [300] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard `LATEX 2ε` document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.33 on page 69).
- wrapfig** The `wrapfig` package [12] provides the `wrapfigure` and `wratable` environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.
- xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.
- xr** The `xr` package [97] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David P. CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the `minitoc` package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the `hyperref` package [277], use `xr-hyper` [100] in place of the `xr` package.

Chapter 7

Installation

Tables

7.1 List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>)	227
7.2 A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files	228

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #53).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See table 7.1 on the next page. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.

- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself ¹.



The table 1.7 on page 36 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds the `.sty` files.

- (2) Informative text files:

¹ The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the `minitoc` package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1)

class (0) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx class (1) : -minitoc.sty -mtcoff.sty -mtcmess.sty -mtcpatchmem.sty -acadian.mld -acadien.mld -afrikaan.mld -afrikaans.mld -albanian.mld -american.mld -arab.mld -arab2.mld -arabi.mld -arabic.mld -armenian.mld -australian.mld -austrian.mld -bahasa.mld -bahasai.mld -bahasam.mld -bangla.mld -basque.mld -bicig.mld -bicig2.mld -bicig3.mld -bithe.mld -brazil.mld -brazilian.mld -breton.mld -british.mld -bulgarian.mld -bulgarianb.mld -buryat.mld -buryat2.mld -canadian.mld -canadien.mld -castillan.mld -castillian.mld -catalan.mld -chinese1.mld, chinese1.mlo -chinese2.mld, chinese2.mlo -croatian.mld -czech.mld -danish.mld -devanagari.mld -dutch.mld -english.mld -english1.mld -english2.mld -esperant.mld -esperanto.mld -estonian.mld -ethiopia.mld -ethiopian.mld -ethiopian2.mld -farsi1.mld, farsi1.mlo -farsi2.mld, farsi2.mlo -farsi3.mld -finnish.mld	-finnish2.mld -francais.mld -french.mld -french1.mld -french2.mld -frenchb.mld -frenchle.mld -frenchpro.mld -galician.mld -german.mld -germanb.mld -germanb2.mld -greek.mld -greek-mono.mld -greek-polydemo.mld -greek-polykatha.mld -guarani.mld -hangul1.mld, hangul1.mlo -hangul2.mld, hangul2.mlo -hangul3.mld, hangul3.mlo -hangul4.mld, hangul4.mlo -hangul-u8.mld, hangul-u8.mlo -hanja1.mld, hanja1.mlo -hanja2.mld, hanja2.mlo -hanja-u8.mld, hanja-u8.mlo -hebrew.mld -hebrew2.mld -hindi.mld -hindi-modern.mld -hungarian.mld -icelandic.mld -indon.mld -indonesian.mld -interlingua.mld -irish.mld -italian.mld -italian2.mld -japanese.mld, japanese.mlo -japanese2.mld, japanese2.mlo -japanese3.mld, japanese3.mlo -japanese4.mld, japanese4.mlo -japanese5.mld, japanese5.mlo -japanese6.mld, japanese6.mlo -kannada.mld -khalkha.mld -latin.mld -latin2.mld -latvian.mld -letton.mld -lithuanian.mld -lowersorbian.mld -lsorbian.mld -magyar.mld -magyar2.mld -magyar3.mld -malay.mld -malayalam-keli.mld -malayalam-omega.mld, malayalam-omega.mlo	-malayalam-rachana.mld -malayalam-rachana2.mld -manju.mld -meyalu.mld -mongol.mld -mongolb.mld -mongolian.mld -naustrian.mld -newzealand.mld -ngerman.mld -ngermanb.mld -ngermanb2.mld -norsk.mld -norsk2.mld -nynorsk.mld -nynorsk2.mld -polish.mld -polish2.mld -polski.mld -portuges.mld -portuguese.mld -romanian.mld -romanian2.mld -romanian3.mld -russian.mld -russianb.mld -russianc.mld -russian2m.mld -russian2o.mld -russian-cca.mld, russian-cca.mlo -russian-cca1.mld, russian-cca1.mlo -russian-lh.mld, russian-lh.mlo -russian-lhcyralt.mld, russian-lhcyralt.mlo -russian-lhcyrkoi.mld, russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo -russian-lhcyrwin.mld, russian-lhcyrwin.mlo -samin.mld -scottish.mld -serbian.mld -serbianc.mld -slovak.mld -slovene.mld -spanish.mld -spanish2.mld -spanish3.mld -spanish4.mld -swedish.mld -swedish2.mld -thai.mld, thai.mlo -turkish.mld -uighur.mld -uighur2.mld -uighur3.mld -UKenglish.mld -ukraineb.mld -ukrainian.mld -uppersorbian.mld -USenglish.mld -usorbian.mld -vietnam.mld	-vietnamese.mld -welsh.mld -xalx.mld -xalx2.mld -xalx3.mld class (2) : -INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG -minitoc.l class (3) : -mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mml1.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfx.tex class (4) : -minitoc.bug -minitoc.sum class (5) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -minitoc.bib -minitoc.ist -minitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -en-mtc.bst -lamed.eps, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex class (6) : -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx -fminitoc.bib -fminitoc.ist -fminitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty -fr-mtc.bst class (7) : -minitoc.pdf class (8) : -fminitoc.pdf class (9) : -cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk class (10) : -minitoc.tds.zip
--	--	--	--

Table 7.2: A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the minitoc files

TDS Root Directory						
bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	minitoc/	minitoc/
(A)	(B)	(C)			(F)	(G)
		examples/				
		(H)				
(A) fminitoc.bib, minitoc.bib;			mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.pdf, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfc.pdf, mtc-tsfc.tex.			
(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;						
(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG, fminitoc.lan, fminitoc.pdf, lamed.eps, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;						
(D) fminitoc.ist, minitoc.ist;						
(E) cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;						
(F) fminitoc.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;						
(G) minitoc.sty, mtccoeff.sty, mtcmess.sty, mtcpatchmem.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;						
(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf,						

- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
 - `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See table 7.1 on the page before.
 - `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
 - `CATALOG` contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
 - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-3co.tex`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fko.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mm1.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsfc.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 53) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 77).

- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english, `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` are images to include, `lamed.tex` is the source code². `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.
- (6) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french³.
- (7) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (8) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (9) `pmk` is a shell script⁴ to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts⁵ and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):
 - `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
 - `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
 - `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
 - `tmk`, which creates a TDS-conformant hierarchy [304, 305] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.2 on the preceding page; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc-tds.zip`;
 - `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF formate (recto-verso printing).

- (10) `minitoc-tds.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the `minitoc` package.

² Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package (both obsolete), plus conversion into EPS or PDF; hence I prefer to provide also the image files.

³ This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

⁴ You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

⁵ In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk` (but *not* `cmk`).

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.sty` files;
4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (9) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
5. the files of (7) and (8) must be installed as on-line documentation;
6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.

- **with `tmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file⁶ of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;
4. the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
5. the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (10) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.



- **with `pmk`:**

1. the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
2. the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
3. the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc-tds.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the `minitoc` package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using `minitoc` with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

⁶ The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc-tds.zip` file.

Chapter 8

Postface

Contents

8.1	The origins	231
8.2	New design in 1993	232
8.3	Developments in 1994	232
8.4	No developments in 1995	233
8.5	Developments en 1996	233
8.6	Developments in 1997	233
8.7	Developments in 1998	233
8.8	Developments in 1999	233
8.9	Developments in 2000	234
8.10	Developments in 2001	234
8.11	Developments in 2002	234
8.12	Developments in 2003	234
8.13	Developments in 2004	235
8.14	Developments in 2005	235
8.15	Developments in 2006	237

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 561. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

No room for a new `\write`.

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: `minitoc` used a `\newwrite` command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under \LaTeX (in fact, by the underlying \TeX program itself). As some descriptors are already used by \LaTeX , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (`minitocoff` at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the formatting of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$, replacing the ageing $\LaTeX 2.09$, some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *minitoc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [44, 45], by Johannes L. BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, with avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

8.5 Developments en 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtc` to keep its name short.

8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` commande is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [277], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS [311].

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [327] is documented.

Aliases for some languages are added.

8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [9] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [331, 332, 334].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [8].

8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the .mld files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [326].

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the \mathcal{AMS} classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and co.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [325].

The minitoc package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (sectsty package [232], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [191, 252, 281] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [331, 332, 334].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the \LaTeX compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [300].

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [148]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

Added hints about the `fncychap` [220], `quotchap` [301], `romannum` [333], `sfheaders` [222], `alnumsec` [196], and `captcont` [108] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 86.

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [182].

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tmk` script and a table describing a TDS structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

Corrections of minor bugs and in the documentation.

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

Added the `mtc-fko.tex` example file.

Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.

Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples¹, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups², and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO,
Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Vartan AKOPIAN, A. J. ALEX, Mark ALFORD, Jacques ANDRÉ,
Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Walter APPEL, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON,
Tim ARNOLD, Donald ARSENEAU, Helmer ASLASKEN, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN,
Philipp BACHMANN, Gonçal BADENES, Marin BALGARENSKY, Pierre BASSO, Dorjgotov BATMUNKH,
Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI,
Emmanuel BEFFARA, Benoît BELET, Rachid BELMOUHOUB, József BÉRCES,
Alexander BERDNIKOV, Jens BERGER, Karl BERRY, Berhanu BEYENE, Javier BEZOS,
Giuseppe BILOTTA, Árpád BÍRÓ, Denis BITOUZÉ, Laurent BLOCH, Georgi BOSHNAKOV,
Patrice BOUGETTE, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Victor BOYKO, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN,
Jim BREEN, Peter BREITENLOHNER, Mimi BURBANK, Mustafa BURC, Alexey BURYKIN,
Olivier CARDI, Samuele CARCAGNO, David CARELLA, David P. CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY,
Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, Winston CHANG, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER,
Jean-Pascal CHAUVET, Pehong CHEN, Céline CHEVALIER, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Otfried CHEONG,
Pai H. CHOU, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK,
Emmanuel CORNET, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Sergueï DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR,
Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Holger DANIELSSON, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA,
Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Bernard DESGRAUPES,
Cécile DESPRAIRIES, Sébastien DESREUX, Antoni R. DILLER, Dorjpalam DORJ, Denys DUCHIER,
Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ĚEHAJA, Ta Quang DUNG, Victor EIJKHOUT, Danie ELS,
Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Gilhooly ETIENNE, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN,
Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Michael J. FERGUSON, Jeff FESSLER,
Ulrike FISCHER, Jean-Julien FLECK, Daniel FLIPO, Peter L. FLOM, Peter FLYNN, Jim FOX,
Danny M. FÜRNISS, Tetsuo FURUKAWA, Federico GARCIA, Diego GARCÍA MORATE,
Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Maarten GELDERMAN, Chuck GENSCHTE, Mohammad GHODSI,
Helen GILHOOLY, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS,
Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, Norman GRAY, Enrico GREGORIO, Loïc GRENON,
Charles GREITHER, Olga A. GRINEVA, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD, Marion GUNN,
Eitan M. GURARI, Thomas HAFNER, Hans HAGEN, Boumediene HAMZI, Thé Thành HÀN,
Thorsten HANSEN, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Kathryn A. HARGREAVES,

¹ And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

² Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or english).

Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS, Michael A. HARRISON, Stephen HARTKE, Danny HEAP, Jim HEFFERON, André HEIDER, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Håvard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Hartmut HENKEL, Thomas HENLICH, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Jörg HESOLL, David HOADLEY, Taco HOEKWATER, Alan HOENIG, Joe HOGG, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Klaus HÖPPNER, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, Dave W. HUSEBY, Helene HYNA, Hiroya IKEDA, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Tetsuo IWAKUMA, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Youssef JABRI, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Alan JEFFREY, Regnor JERNSLETEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES, Christophe JORSSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald E. KNUTH, Markus KOHM, Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOVIACK, Kai KRATT, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Siep KROONENBERG, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Manfred KUDLEK, Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Olaf KUMMER, Frank KÜSTER, Stéphane LABORDE, Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Jeanne LEGRAND, Philipp LEHMAN, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Pierre LOBEL, Milos LOKAJCEK, Stoffel LOMBARD, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Vincent LOZANO, Daniel H. LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre A. MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Terry MART, Vadim MASLOV, Henri MASSIAS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben MCKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN, Jochen METZINGER, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACH, Young Joon MOON, Ross MOORE, Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAUMOV, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Tim NULL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Tobias OETIKER, Mariusz OLKO, Tanguy ORTOLO, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Minje Byeng-sen PARK, Hubert PARTL, Oren PATASHNIK, Jonathan PECHTA, Kasper PEETERS, Matthias PELGER, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Paul PICHAREAU, Éric PICHÉRAL, Bruno PIGUET, Karel PÍŠKA, John PLAICE, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Fabrice POPINEAU, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, Yuri ROBBERS, A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS, Will ROBERTSON, Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Rasmus Pank ROULUND, Chris A. ROWLEY, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michael RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Morgan SANGEUX, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, Elisabeth SCHLEGL, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Walter SCHMIDT, Thomas A. SCHMITZ, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Rainer SCHÖPF, Martin SCHRÖDER, Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Michael SHELL, JUNGSHIK Shin, Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Sindhu SINGH, Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Janković SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Nick SOFRONIOU, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Lianyi SONG, Yves SOULET, Arjen STEINER, D. P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, K. K. SUBRAMANIAM, Robert S. SUTOR, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Nicola TALBOT, Daniel TAUPIN[†], Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Ton ’t LAM, Sigita TOLUŠIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Hideo UMEKI, Un KOAUNGH, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Vincent VAQUIN, Suki K. VENKATESAN, Didier VERNA, Sylvain VESCO, Boris VEYTSMAN, Alexandre VIAL,

André VIOLANTE, Carl F. VOEGELIN, Florence M. VOEGELIN, Martin VOGEL, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, David WALDEN, Nigel WARD, John WARNOCK, Douglas WAUD Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Daphne WEST, Graham WILLIAMS, Peter R. WILSON, Jeroen WIJNHOUT, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Mark WOODING, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C. S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Federico ZENITH, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.

Part II

Implementation

Contents of the Second Part

9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	245
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	419
11	Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package	433
12	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	434
13	The language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	436

Chapter 9

Commented code of the minitoc package

Contents

9.1	Introduction	248
9.2	Identification code	249
9.3	A file descriptor to write	249
9.4	Indentation and skip	249
9.5	Tests and flags	250
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	250
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	251
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	251
9.5.4	Insertion of empty mini-tables	252
9.5.5	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	252
9.5.6	Flags to check if some commands are used	253
9.5.7	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	254
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	255
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	255
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	256
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	256
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?	259

9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	260
9.12	Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters	262
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	262
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	263
9.15	Section level macros	263
9.16	Corrections for numbering	264
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	264
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	264
9.19	Chapter level macros	265
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	265
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	265
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	266
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	266
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	268
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	268
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	269
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	271
9.28	Fake tables of contents	274
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	274
9.30	Chapter level commands	275
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	275
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	277
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	277
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	278
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	278
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	278
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	282
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	285
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	288
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	288
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	289
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	289
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	290
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	293
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	297
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	297
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	300
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	300
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	302
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	303
9.45	Part level commands	304
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	305
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	305
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	307
9.49	The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code>	308
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	308
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	311
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	314
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	317
9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	317
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	317
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	320
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	323
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	326

9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	328
9.54	Section-level commands	328
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	329
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	329
9.57	The stc@verse environment	330
9.58	The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands	330
9.58.1	The \secttoc command	331
9.58.2	The \sectlof command	333
9.58.3	The \sectlot command	336
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	338
9.60	Patching the \section command (continued)	339
9.61	The \dosectoc command and siblings	340
9.62	End of section-level commands	350
9.63	The \mtcprepare command	350
9.64	Necessary \l@... commands	351
9.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	351
9.66	The \mtcset... commands	352
9.66.1	Keywords for the \mtcset... commands	352
9.66.2	The \mtcsetfont command	354
9.66.3	The \mtcsetttitlefont command	358
9.66.4	The \mtcsetttitle command	359
9.66.5	The \mtcsetformat command	360
9.66.6	The \mtcsetpagenumbers command	365
9.66.7	The \mtcsetrules command	367
9.66.8	The \mtcsetfeature command	369
9.66.9	The \mtcsetdepth command	372
9.67	The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings	373
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	375
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	377
9.70	The \mtcselectlanguage command	378
9.71	The \mtcloadmlo internal command	378
9.72	The “coffee breaks”	379
9.73	Initialization of counters	380
9.74	Declarations for simple options	380
9.74.1	Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose	380
9.74.2	Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles	380
9.74.3	Options dotted and undotted	380
9.74.4	Option notoccite	381
9.74.5	Option shorttext	381
9.75	The insection option	381
9.76	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	382
9.77	Language options	382
9.78	The hints option	388
9.78.1	First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc	388
9.78.1.1	Hint about the alphanum package	389
9.78.1.2	Hint about the appendix package	389
9.78.1.3	Hint about the tocbibind package	389
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	390
9.78.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package	390
9.78.1.6	Hint about the titletoc package	390
9.78.1.7	Hint about the placeins package	391
9.78.1.8	Hint about the memoir class	392
9.78.1.9	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes	392
9.78.1.10	Hint about the amsbook class	393

9.78.1.11 Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	393
9.78.1.12 Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	394
9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	394
9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of <code>\part</code>	394
9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	395
9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of <code>\section</code>	395
9.78.1.14 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands	396
9.78.2 Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	397
9.78.2.1 Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	397
9.78.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests	397
9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	399
9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	401
9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	404
9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	405
9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	405
9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	405
9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	406
9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	406
9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	406
9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	407
9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	407
9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	407
9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	408
9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	408
9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	408
9.78.2.18 Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	409
9.78.2.19 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	409
9.78.2.20 Check if obsolete commands have been used	411
9.78.2.21 Check if some hints have been written	412
9.79 Processing of options	412
9.79.1 Processing the <code>insection</code> option	413
9.79.2 Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	414
9.79.3 Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	414
9.79.4 Processing the <code>hints</code> option	415
9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands	415
9.80 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	416
9.81 The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	418

9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the `minitoc` package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file¹ are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

¹ The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
2653 <{*minitoc>
```

```
\NeedsTeXFormat This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is
\ProvidesPackage written in the document.log file. This package will not work with LATEX2.09.
\mtcPackageInfo
\RequirePackage 2654 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
                2655 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
                2656 [2007/03/22 v53 Package minitoc (JPFD)]
                2657 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
                2658 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0001>]{minitoc}%
                2659 {*** minitoc package, version 53 ***\@gobble}
```

9.3 A file descriptor to write

```
\tf@mtc A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is \tf@mtc.
\newwrite
2660 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

9.4 Indentation and skip

```
\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default:
\mtcskipamount \bigskipamount).
\parskip
2661 \newlength\mtcindent
2662 \newskip\mtcskipamount
2663 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
2664 \def\mtcskip{{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}}
```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
\mtcgapafterheads

2665 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
2666 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}


\@ifundefined We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
\kernafterparttoc names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
\kernafterpartlof \renewcommand.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 2667 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 2668 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 2669 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 2670 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 2671 }%
\kernafterminilot 2672 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2673 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
2674 {}%
2675 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2676 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2677 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2678 }%
2679 }%
2680 {}%
2681 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2682 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
2683 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
2684 }%

```

9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags² (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.78 on page 388) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

```

\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

```

9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

But first, we define some flags for the `hints` option:

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).

² Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native \TeX engine (much more with $\varepsilon\text{-TeX}$ [94], but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure than a code programmed with counters, \imho .

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

```
2685 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
2686 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
2687 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false
```

9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 2688 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false
```

9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is an
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ recent enough version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc).
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2689 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2690 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
2691 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
2692 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
2693 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
```

```
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ We do the same for some caption-related packages:
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2694 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2695 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2696 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2697 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2698 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2699 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2700 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 2701 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
2702 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
2703 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false
```

```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ And the varsects package and other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2704 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2705 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2706 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2707 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2708 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 2709 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 2710 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ 2711 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@ 2712 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@ 2713 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2714 \newif\if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sheadersLoaded@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2715 \newif\if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2716 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
2717 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false

```

9.5.4 Insertion of empty mini-tables

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2718 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2719 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2720 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2721 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2722 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2723 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2724 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2725 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
2726 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

9.5.5 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

`\if@mtc@part@def@` The part counter:

```

2727 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
2728 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` The chapter counter:

```
2729 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
2730 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}
```

`\if@mtc@section@def@` The section counter:

```
2731 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
2732 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}
```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```
2733 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
2734 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
2735 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
2736 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
2737 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
2738 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

9.5.6 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.78 on page 388).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

`\if@partlof@used@`

`\if@partlot@used@` 2739 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false

`\if@doparttoc@used@` 2740 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false

`\if@dopartlof@used@` 2741 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false

`\if@dopartlot@used@` 2742 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false

2743 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false

2744 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false

```

\if@minitoc@used@ For the chapter level:
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 2745 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2746 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 2747 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 2748 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
2749 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
2750 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false

```

```

\if@secttoc@used@ For the section level:
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 2751 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2752 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2753 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2754 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
2755 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
2756 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false

```

```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2757 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
2758 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
2759 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

9.5.7 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
2760 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

2761 \AtBeginDocument{%
2762   \ifmtcsecondpart
2763     \global\mtcsecondparttrue
2764   \else
2765     \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
2766   \fi}

```

```

\AtEndDocument   At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:
\ifmtcsecondpart
  \@mainaux 2767 \AtEndDocument{%
            2768 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
            2769 \mtcsecondparttrue
            2770 \else
            2771 \mtcsecondpartfalse
            2772 \fi
            2773 \if@files
            2774 \ifmtcsecondpart
            2775 \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2776 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
            2777 \else
            2778 \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2779 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
            2780 \fi
            2781 \fi}

```

So we need two \LaTeX runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.60 on page 468) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 88.

9.6 Preparation for the `notoccite` option

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command
\if@mtc@notoccite@ (redefinable command) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile, used by this option (this has been
                    requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [8]). See section 1.6 on page 49.

```

```

2782 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
2783 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
2784 {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}

```

9.7 Preparation for the `tight` and `k-tight` options

```

\iftightmtc We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and
\ifktightmtc k-loose options):

```

```

2785 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
2786 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse

```

9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the `hyperref` package [277]. A flag is defined, then this preparation is performed in a `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This action defines some commands for the `hyperref` package.

```

2787 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0005>]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
2788 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
2789 \AtBeginDocument{%
2790   \ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
2791     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
2792     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
2793     \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
2794     \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
2795     \def\toclevel@xsection{1000}%
2796     \let\toclevel@starpertoclevel@part
2797     \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
2798     \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
2799     \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
2800     \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
2801     \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
2802     \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
2803   }{}}
```

9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

9.9.1 Check if the `sectsty` package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `sectsty` package [232] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.6 on page 405.

```

2804 \ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}
2805 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}}}
```

9.9.2 Check if the `varsects` package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the `varsects` package [300] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.7 on page 405.

```

2806 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
2807 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}}}
```


9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [220] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.8 on page 405.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@

2808 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}
2809 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [182] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.9 on page 406.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

2810 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}
2811 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [301] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.10 on page 406.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

2812 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}
2813 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [333] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.11 on page 406.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

2814 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}
2815 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.7 Check if the `sfheaders` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [222] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.12 on page 407.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

2816 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}
2817 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.8 Check if the `alnumsec` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [196] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.13 on page 407.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

2818 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}
2819 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.9 Check if the `captcont` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [108] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.14 on page 407.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

2820 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}
2821 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.10 Check if the `caption` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [296] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\AtBeginDocument minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ loaded. See section 9.78.2.15 on page 408.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

2822 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}
2823 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [294] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.16 on page 408.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

2824 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}
2825 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{} }
```

9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [329] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.17 on page 408.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

2826 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}
2827 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [171] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.18 on page 409.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

2828 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}
2829 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{} }
```

9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

```
\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir [331, 332, 334] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ adjustments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ chapter 12 on page 434). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ memoir.cls.
```

```
2830 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
2831 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
2832 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0030>]{minitoc}%
2833 {the memoir class is loaded:
2834 \MessageBreak
2835 compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
```



```

2836             {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
2837 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
2838 \ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
2839   {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[<I0020>]{minitoc}%
2840    {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2841   {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[<I0027>]{minitoc}%
2842    {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}
2843    \mtcPackageInfo[<I0032>]{minitoc}%
2844    {This version of the memoir class uses
2845     \MessageBreak
2846     a version of \string\chapter\space which is
2847     \MessageBreak
2848     incompatible with the minitoc package.
2849     \MessageBreak
2850     We try to patch\@gobble}%
2851   \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
2852 \fi

```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ And now the patch:

```

2853 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
2854 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
2855   \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{}{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}%
2856   \mtcPackageError[<E0028>]{minitoc}%
2857   {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
2858   {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
2859 \fi

```

9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

\mtc@ifmtarg Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package ifmtarg [335], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [317]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.

```

\mtc@WhilePreCondition
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While
\mtc@WhileNext
2860 \begingroup
2861 \catcode'\Q=3
2862 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
2863 \mtc@ifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
2864 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
2865 \endgroup
2866 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
2867 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
2868   \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
2869   \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
2870   \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
2871   \mtc@@While

```

```

2872 }
2873 \def\mtc@@While{%
2874   \mtc@WhilePreCondition
2875   \mtc@WhileCondition
2876   \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
2877     \mtc@WhileBody
2878     \mtc@@While
2879   }%
2880   \else
2881     \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
2882   \fi
2883   \mtc@WhileNext
2884 }

```

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue
\if@mtc@FE if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the file is not empty. An inexistent file is empty.
\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an
\mtc@endWhile eternity (33 s for 106 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.
\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline 2885 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\tf@mtc 2886 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\@inputcheck 2887 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
2888 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to
2889 \mtc@Rline\relax
2890 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2891 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
2892 \def\mtc@Rline{}
2893 \else
2894 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2895 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}%
2896 {\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
2897 \fi
2898 }
2899 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
2900 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
2901 \if@mtc@checkfiles
2902 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
2903 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
2904 \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}%
2905 {\mtc@Body}%
2906 \mtc@endWhile}%
2907 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
2908 \else
2909 \@mtc@FEfalse%
2910 \fi}
2911 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
2912 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
2913 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2914 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%

```

```

2915 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2916 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
2917 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2918 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

`\mtc@onebackpart` It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
`\mtc@onebackchapter` macros are:
`\mtc@onebacksection`
`\addtocounter` 2919 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
2920 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
2921 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

9.13 Patching the \part command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and
`\mtc@svspart` a warning is displayed³. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version)
`\mtc@svpart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the
`\@spart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 317.
`\@part`
`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14 on the next page) is also skipped if `\part` is not
defined.

```

2922 \@ifundefined{part}{%
2923   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0018>]{minitoc}%
2924   {part level macros NOT available}
2925 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
2926   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0023>]{minitoc}%
2927   {part level macros available\@gobble}
2928   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
2929   \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
2930   \let\mtc@svpart\@part
2931   \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

³ Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.

`\mtc@ifmtarg`

`\contentsline`

`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xpart`

`\l@xpart` we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@part`

`\l@part` `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `ptc` counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 304). Using `xpart` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2932 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
2933   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
2934   {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
2935   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
2936   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
2937   \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

2938 }%

```

9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the `minitoc` package with the class of your document.

`\section`

```

2939 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0004>]{minitoc}%
2940   {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2941   \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0029>]{minitoc}%
2942     {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2943     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0017>]{minitoc}%
2944     {no section or chapter level macros available
2945     \MessageBreak
2946     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
2947   {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0028>]{minitoc}%
2948     {section level macros available\@gobble}%

```

9.16 Corrections for numbering

```

\mtc@onebacksect As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement
\tableofcontents the secttoc counter (stc) via \mtc@onebacksect when the corresponding commands are
\listoffigures executed. Hence we patch these commands.
\listoftables
\mtcsv@tableofcontents 2949 \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 2950 \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 2951 \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
2952 \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
2953 \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
2954 \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}

```

9.17 Patching the \section command

```

\mtc@svsection If the \section command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it
\mtc@svss and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, \@sect (for the unstarred version)
\@ssect or \@ssect (for the starred version, \section*): we add \stepcounter{stc} to increment
\@sect the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case4.
\section
\stepcounter 2955 \let\mtc@svsection\section
2956 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
2957 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect

```

9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

```

\mtcaddsection To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the \mtcaddsection macro,
\mtc@ifmtarg which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC.
\contentsline By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via \mtc@ifmtarg) or omitted,
\adjuststc we add a \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we
\l@xsect add a \contentsline{section}{title}... line in the .toc file. We always add a
\l@xsection \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the
\l@section stc counter, via \adjuststc (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 328). Using
xsect as first argument of \contentsline means that \l@xsect will be invoked in place
of \l@section to print the entry in the TOC, but \l@xsect uses a huge depth (10 000) for
this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

```

2958 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][]{%
2959   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
2960   {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
2961   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}%

```

⁴ Version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter.


```

2962 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}%
2963 \adjuststc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```

2964 }}%
2965 {%

```

9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`.

```

2966 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0003>]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}

```

9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\mtc@svchapter` `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 288).

```

2967 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter
2968 \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}

```

9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xchapter` `\contentsline{xchapter}{}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 275). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of

`\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2969 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\]{%
2970   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}%
2971   {\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
2972   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
2973   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
2974   \adjustmtc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\@ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 263.

```

2975 }%

```

9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

```

\newread The \newread command must be redeclared as being \outer (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).
\newtoks We need a token register (\mtc@toks), a temporary string (\mtc@string), struts (two kinds,
\mtc@toks each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to
\mtc@string zero (\mtc@zrule) and a command discouraging page breaks (\mtc@BBR, for “bad break”).
\mtc@strut For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to
\mtc@strutbox follow the current font.
\mtc@hstrut
\mtc@hstrutbox 2976 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n}
\mtc@v 2977 \newtoks\mtc@toks
\mtc@zrule 2978 \def\mtc@string{\relax}
\mtc@BBR 2979 \newbox\mtc@strutbox
2980 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}
2981 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmode\copy\mtc@strutbox
2982   \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}
2983 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox
2984 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}
2985 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox
2986   \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}
2987 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}
2988 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}
2989 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}

```

9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a trick to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files⁵. This

⁵ It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the *document.log* file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the *.toc*, *.lof* and

Table 9.1: Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc1</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(1)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the *document.log* file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```
\if@longextensions@ (0) First, a message and a new flag:
    \tf@mtc
\openout 2990    \mtcPackageInfo[<I0002>]{minitoc}%
    \write 2991    {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\closeout 2992    \newif\if@longextensions@\@longextensions@false
    \input (1) We write “\@longextensions@true” in \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short
\jobname      extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

2993    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
2994    \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@true}
2995    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write “\@longextensions@false” in \jobname.mtc.

2996    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2997    \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@false}
2998    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
    be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

2999    \input{\jobname.mtc1}

(4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from \jobname.mtc1, but false if we read from
    \jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

3000    \if@longextensions@
3001    \mtcPackageInfo[<I0012>]{minitoc}%
3002    {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used\@gobble}
3003    \mtcPackageInfo[<I0031>]{minitoc}%
3004    {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
```

.lot files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TeX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the *document.log* file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectioning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

```

3005     \MessageBreak
3006     \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names\@gobble}%
3007   \else
3008     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0019>]{minitoc}%
3009     {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
3010     \MessageBreak
3011     ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
3012     \MessageBreak
3013     \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
3014   \fi

```

(5) We erase the contents of the two files (because `\jobname.mtc` is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 260).

```

3015   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
3016   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3017   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
3018   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L^AT_EX

`\@inputcheck` This code detects old versions of the L^AT_EX kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L^AT_EX commands, `\@inputcheck` and `\reset@font`. If you get one of these messages, your are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L^AT_EX installation, which is rusting since... many years!



```

3019 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
3020   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0021>]{minitoc}%
3021   {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
3022   \MessageBreak
3023   Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
3024 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
3025   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0022>]{minitoc}%
3026   {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
3027   \MessageBreak
3028   Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
3029   \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```

9.25 Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

`\@undottedtocline` The (internal) macro `\@undottedtocline` is a modified version of the standard command `\dottedtocline`. It will be used in customization macros.

`\ifundottedmtc`

`\undottedmtcfalse`

```

3030 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
3031 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3032   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3033     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
3034     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3035      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3036      \interlinepenalty\@M
3037      \leavevmode
3038      \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
3039     \hskip -\leftskip
3040     #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
3041     \null\par}%
3042 \fi}

```

9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [331, 332, 334] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```

3043 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
3044 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
3045   \cftpagenumberson{section}
3046   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
3047   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
3048   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
3049   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
3050 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
3051   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
3052   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3053   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3054   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3055   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in sectocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
3056 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
3057   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
3058   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
3059   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
3060   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
3061 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
3062   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}

```

```

3063 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3064 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3065 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers

```

3066 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
3067 \cftpagenumberson{chapter}
3068 \cftpagenumberson{section}
3069 \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
3070 \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
3071 \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
3072 \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
3073 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
3074 \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
3075 \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
3076 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3077 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3078 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3079 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers

```

\slfpagenumbers 3080 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 3081 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 3082 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 3083 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
3084 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
3085 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

```

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers

```

\sltpagenumbers 3086 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 3087 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 3088 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 3089 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
3090 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
3091 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```

3092 \else

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3093 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 3094 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3095 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3096 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
3097 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
3098 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mlfpagenumbers Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3099 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 3100 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3101 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3102 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
3103 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
3104 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 3105 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3106 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3107 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3108 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
3109 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
3110 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
3111 \fi

```

```

\ptcpagenumbers Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 3112 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 3113 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3114 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 3115 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 3116 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 3117 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 3118 \stcpagenumbers
3119 \slfpagenumbers
3120 \sltpagenumbers

```

9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has three “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature and a “thispagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each parttoc. Usually such features contains only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

A “thispagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “thispagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “thispagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter    If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 3121 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 3122   \let\beforeparttoc\empty
                3123   \let\beforepartlof\empty
                3124   \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```

3125   {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
3126    \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
3127    \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

```

\beforeinitoc Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 3128 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
                3129 \let\beforeminilof\empty
                3130 \let\beforeminilot\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 3131 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
                3132 \let\beforesectlof\empty
                3133 \let\beforesectlot\empty

```


`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof 3134 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 3135   \let\afterparttoc\empty
               3136   \let\afterpartlof\empty
               3137   \let\afterpartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```

3138   {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
3139    \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
3140    \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\afterminitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\afterminilof
\afterminilot 3141 \let\afterminitoc\empty
               3142 \let\afterminilof\empty
               3143 \let\afterminilot\empty

```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot 3144 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
               3145 \let\aftersectlof\empty
               3146 \let\aftersectlot\empty

```

`\thispagestyle` By default, all the “thispagestyle” features (at part level) use the `empty` page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If `\chapter` is not defined, there is no default “thispagestyle” features at the part level.

```

\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofstyle
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageminitocstyle 3147 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 3148   \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 3149   \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 3150   \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofstyle 3151 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 3152   \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
               3153   \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}}
               3154   \def\thispageminitocstyle{\empty}
               3155   \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
               3156   \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
               3157   \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
               3158   \def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
               3159   \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.66.8 on page 369, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

9.28 Fake tables of contents

`\faketableofcontents` If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the `.toc` file, without inserting it into your document. This `\faketableofcontents` command is a stripped off version of the standard command `\tableofcontents`. We define in the same way the analog commands `\fakelistoffigures` and `\fakelistoftables`, using in fact just a stripped version `\fake@starttoc` of `\starttoc`. But it is nice to reset to zero the `ptc`, `mtc`, and `stc` counters now, if they are defined⁶.

```

3160 \def\faketableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
3161   \ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
3162   \ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
3163   \ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
3164   }
3165 \def\fakelistoffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
3166 \def\fakelistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
3167 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup
3168   \makeatletter
3169   \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
3170             \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
3171             \jobname.#1\relax
3172   \fi
3173   \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the necessary new counters: `\c@lofdepth` `minilofdepth` and `minilofdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

3174 \AtBeginDocument{%
3175   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3176     {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
3177   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
3178     {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
3179   }

```

⁶ Remember the infamous “`stc0`” bug.

9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

```
\mtc@markboth First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
\@mkboth
3180 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
3181 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

\addst@rred We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: \part*, \chapter* and \section*. The section-level is different depending on the presence of the \chapter command. Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the .toc file, with the right depth to print it (see \l@star... later, in section 9.64 on page 351).

```
\c@ptc
\c@mtc
\c@stc 3182 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
3183   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
3184   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
3185     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
3186       \stepcounter{ptc}%
3187     \fi
3188   }%
3189   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
3190     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
3191       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3192     \fi
3193   }%
3194   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
3195     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
3196     %%      \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
3197       \stepcounter{stc}%
3198     \fi
3199   }%
3200 }%
```

```
\addstarredsection If \chapter is not defined, we just define \addstarredsection:
\chapter
\addst@rred 3201 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
3202 \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
3203 }%
```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

3204 {%

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
@if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\adjustmtc command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\decrementmtc mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\incrementmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\themtc
\columnwidth
\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 3205 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\slt@rule 3206 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\mtcindent 3207 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0003>]{minitoc}%
3208 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete
3209 \MessageBreak
3210 command}%
3211 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
3212 \newcounter{mtc}
3213 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3214 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
3215 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3216 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
3217 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
3218 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
3219 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}
3220 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
3221 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
3222 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
3223 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
3224 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
3225 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
3226 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
3227 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

```

\mtcfont  We define these commands with full NFSS [213] descriptions. These definitions are effective
\mtcSfont if \chapter is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the \mtcsetfont
\mtcSSfont macro (section 9.66.2 on page 354) and the \mtcsetttitlefont macro later (section 9.66.3 on
\mtcSSSfont page 358).
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 3228 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 3229 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 3230 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 3231 \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 3232 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 3233 \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
          3234 \let\mlffont\mtcfont
          3235 \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
          3236 \let\mltfont\mtcfont
          3237 \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
          3238 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

\coffeeont And \coffeeont is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [219].

```
3239 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}
```

9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

\df@mtitc The commands \miniXXX and \dominiXXX accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a \dominiXXX command is global and memorized in \df@mtitc, \do@mtitc, \df@mtilf or \df@mtilt; the choice made in a \miniXXX command is local and stored in \do@mtitc, \do@mtilf or \do@mtilt. See the \minitoc@ macro later (section 9.35.1 on the next page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti  Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 3240 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 3241 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 3242 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
          3243 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
          3244 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti   Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 3245 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 3246 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 3247 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 3248 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt 3249 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
          3250 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

9.34 The mtc@verse environment

```

mtc@verse Each minitoc is placed inside a mtc@verse environment. This environment is analog to
\iftightmtc the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \mtc@verse and
\ifktightmtc \endmtc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then
\ call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent,
\list \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of the
\itemsep lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of
\itemindent the lines). Both margins are set to \mtcindent. \endmtc@verse terminates the list and
\listparindent discourages a page break.
\topsep
\parsep 3251 \def\mtc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
\mtcindent 3252 \list{}\itemsep\z@
          3253 \itemindent \z@
          3254 \listparindent \itemindent
          3255 \partopsep\z@
          3256 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
          3257 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
          3258 \topsep=1ex
          3259 \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\leftmargin}%
          3260 \item[]
          3261 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

9.35.1 The \minitoc command

```

\minitoc The \minitoc command must be used after \chapter if you need a minitoc (no automatic
\chapter minitoc).
```

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3262 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{ \minitoc@}]{\minitoc@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 397).

```
3263 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
3264 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\@tocfile`, which is `.mtc` (long extensions) or `.M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
3265 \if@longextensions@
3266   \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
3267 \else
3268   \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
3269 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

```
3270   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3271   \if@mtc@FE
3272     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
3273     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3274     \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
3275   \else
```

`\thispageminitocstyle` We call `\thispageminitocstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
3276      \thispageminitocstyle
3277 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```

`\beforeminitoc` We call `\beforeminitoc`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mtcfont`.

```
\c@mti
\l@mti 3278      \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 3279      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3280      \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3281      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
\mtctitle 3282      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3283      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 3284      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 3285      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
3286      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\mtc@rule 3287      \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
\columnwidth 3288      \raggedright
tabular 3289      \parskip=\z@%
3290      \reset@font\mtcfont%
3291      \parindent=\z@%
3292      \noprogrambreak[4]%
3293      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\noprogrambreak[4]%
3294      \par\noindent %
3295      \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
3296      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3297      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3298      \end{tabular}%
3299      \else
3300      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3301      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3302      \end{tabular}%
3303      \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 3304      \noprogrambreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\
3305      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3306      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3307      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3308      \begin{mtc@verse}%
```


`\c@tocdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minitocdepth` (`\c@minitocdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minitocdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3309      \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3310      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mtc@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mtc@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 3311 \begingroup
3312   \makeatletter
3313   \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
3314   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3315   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3316   \mtc@setform%
3317   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3318   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
3319   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3320   \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminitoc`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminitoc 3321   \end{mtc@verse}%
3322   \kernafterminitoc
3323   \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3324   \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3325   \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi
```

`\mtc@bottom@rule` And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:

```
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 3326 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3327   \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3328   \vskip -2.5ex
3329   \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}
```

9.35.2 The `\minilof` command

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command is very similar to the `\minitoc` command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).
`\chapter`

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3330 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{ \minilof@}]{ \minilof@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 397).

```
3331 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
3332 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlf (long extensions) or .F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
3333 \if@longextensions@%
3334   \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
3335 \else
3336   \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
3337 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```

3338      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3339      \if@mtc@FE
3340      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
3341          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3342      \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
3343      \else

```

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```

3344      \thispageminilofstyle
3345      %      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```

\l@mti 3346      \beforeminilof
\r@mti 3347      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3348      \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3349      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 3350      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3351      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 3352      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 3353      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 3354      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3355      \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3356      \raggedright
3357      \parskip=\z@
3358      \reset@font\mlffont
3359      \parindent=\z@
3360      \nopagebreak[4]%
3361      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3362      \par\noindent
3363      \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
3364      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3365      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3366      \end{tabular}%
3367      \else
3368      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3369      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\\hline
3370      \end{tabular}%
3371      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

`\mtcindent`

```
mtc@verse 3372      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
          3373      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
          3374      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          3375      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
          3376      \begin{mtc@verse}%
```

`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3377      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3378      {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
3379      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3380      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3381 \begin{group
          3382   \makeatletter
          3383   \@ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
          3384   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
          3385   \@ifswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
          3386   \mlf@setform
          3387   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          3388   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace*{-.5\baselineskip}
          3389   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
          3390   \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

`samepage`

```
\afterminilof 3391      \end{mtc@verse}%
          3392      \kernafterminilof
          3393      \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
          3394      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
          3395      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi%
```

9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic minilot).
`\chapter`

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3396 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{ \minilot@}]{ \minilot@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 397).

```
3397 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3398 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlt (long extensions) or .T (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilot.

```
3399 \if@longextensions@%
3400   \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
3401 \else
3402   \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
3403 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```

3404     \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3405     \if@mtc@FE
3406     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
3407         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3408     \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
3409     \else

```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```

3410     \thispageminilotstyle
3411 %     \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

`samepage`

`\do@mtitc`

`\e@mti`

`\n@mti`

`\c@mti`

```

\l@mti 3412     \beforeminilot
\r@mti 3413     \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3414     \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3415     \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 3416     \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3417     \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 3418     \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 3419     \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 3420     \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3421     \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3422     \raggedright
3423     \parskip=\z@%
3424     \reset@font\mltfont%
3425     \parindent=\z@%
3426     \nopagebreak[4]%
3427     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3428     \par\noindent
3429     \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
3430     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3431     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
3432     \end{tabular}%
3433     \else
3434     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3435     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\\hline
3436     \end{tabular}%
3437     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

`\mtcindent`

```
mtc@verse 3438      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
          3439      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
          3440      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          3441      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
          3442      \begin{mtc@verse}%
```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilotdepth` (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\\` `lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3443      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3444      {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3445       \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3446      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlt@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 3447 \begin{group
          3448   \makeatletter
          3449   \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
          3450   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
          3451   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
          3452   \mlt@setform
          3453   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          3454   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
          3455   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
          3456   \global\@nobreakfalse\end{group}
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\\`) is
`\\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilot 3457      \end{mtc@verse}%
          3458      \kernafterminilot
          3459      \nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
          3460      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
          3461      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi%
```

9.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

```

\l@xchapter First, we define \l@xchapter which is like \l@chapter, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its
\@dottedtocline printing (except if you cheat):
\l@chapter
\chapter 3462 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
3463 \def\xchapter{xchapter}

\@chapter Then we patch \@chapter (the non-starred branch of \chapter) to add pseudo-chapter
\sv@chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the \dominiXXX commands
\addcontentsline to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).
\ignorespaces
3464 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
3465 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[#1]{#2}\relax%
3466 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
3467 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
3468 \ignorespaces}

\mtc@schapter We also patch \@schapter (the starred branch of \chapter) to add marks in the TOC
\@schapter to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the \dominiXXX commands to take slices
\addtocontents from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as \relax, they should not perturbate other
\chapterbegin packages.
\chapterend
3469 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
3470 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
3471 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
3472 \let\chapterbegin\relax
3473 \let\chapterend\relax

```

9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

```

\addstarredsection If the command \chapter is undefined, we define the command \addstarredsection
\addstarredchapter (only if \section is defined). If the command \chapter is defined, we define the com-
\addstarredpart mand \addstarredchapter. If the command \part is defined, we define the command
\chapter \addstarredpart. We use the utility command \addst@rred defined in section 9.31 on
\section page 275.
\part
\addst@rred 3474 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3475 {\@ifundefined{section}%
3476 {}{\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
3477 {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
3478 \@ifundefined{part}%
3479 {}{\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}

```


9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro `\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

3480 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3481   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3482     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3483     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3484      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3485      \interlinepenalty\@M
3486      \leavevmode
3487      \@tempdima #3\relax
3488      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3489      {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak
3490      \nobreak\null
3491      \par}%
3492   \fi}

```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:
`\coffeeont`

```

3493 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
3494   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3495     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3496     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3497      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3498      \interlinepenalty\@M
3499      \leavevmode
3500      \@tempdima #3\relax
3501      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3502      {\#4}\nobreak
3503      \hfill
3504      \nobreak\null
3505      \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
3506      \par}%
3507   \fi}

```

9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,
`\minilot@` if true, replace locally `\@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `\@Undottedtoclinep`.
`\@dottedtocline` Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section`
`\@Undottedtoclinep` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.
`\sv@minitoc@`
`\sv@minilof@` 3508 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%`
`\sv@minilot@`

```

3509 \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
3510 \def\minitoc@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3511 \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%
3512 \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
3513 \def\minilof@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3514 \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%
3515 \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
3516 \def\minilot@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3517 \sv@minilot@[#1]}}

```

\sv@parttoc@ For the part level:

```

\sv@partlof@
\sv@partlot@ 3518 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 3519 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@
\parttoc@ 3520 \def\parttoc@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
\partlof@ 3521 \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}%
\partlot@ 3522 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@
3523 \def\partlof@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3524 \sv@partlof@[#1]}}%
3525 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@
3526 \def\partlot@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3527 \sv@partlot@[#1]}}

```

\sv@secttoc@ For the section level:

```

\sv@sectlof@
\sv@sectlot@ 3528 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 3529 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%
\secttoc@ 3530 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@
\sectlof@ 3531 \def\secttoc@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
\sectlot@ 3532 \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}%
3533 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@
3534 \def\sectlof@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3535 \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}%
3536 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
3537 \def\sectlot@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtocline\fi
3538 \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}}

```

9.40 The \dominitoc command and its siblings

\dominitoc The three commands \dominitoc, \dominilof and \dominilot are, of course, very similar. They take the \jobname.toc file (resp. the \jobname.lof and \jobname.lot files) produced by the previous L^AT_EX run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the \jobname.mtc<N> files (resp. the \chapbegin \jobname.mlf<N> and \jobname.mlt<N> files), using specific lines in the \jobname.toc (resp. \jobname.lof and \jobname.lot) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like \contentsline{chapter}..., \contentsline{xchapter}...,

`\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

`\dominitoc` As `\dominitoc` has an optional argument, whose default value is “1” (left), it calls `\dominitoc@` with a argument delimited by brackets.

`\dominitoc@`

`@@dominitoc`

`\ifdominitoc@used@` The macros are `\dominitoc` (user interface), which calls `\dominitoc@[1]` (or with the optional argument of `\dominitoc`). Then `\dominitoc@[1]` processes its argument and calls `@@dominitoc`. `@@dominitoc` calls `\dominitoc` (passing `\jobname` as argument) then close the minitoc file written. `\dominitoc` reset to zero the counter of mini-tables, calls `\MTC@next#1.toc` (where `#1` is the value of `\jobname`), then reset again to zero the counter of mini-tables. Each call to `\dominitoc@` (i.e., to `\dominitoc`) sets the flag `\dominitoc@used@true`. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have correctly called `\minitoc` *after* `\dominitoc` and that both or neither have been called). See section 9.78.2.2 on page 397. The code is similar for `\dominilof` and `\dominilot`.

`\dominitoc` The `\dominitoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and create the minitocs

`\dominitoc` files, with the adequate extension.

`\MTC@next`

`\@ifnextchar` 3539 `\def\dominitoc#1{%`
3540 `\makeatletter`
3541 `\setcounter{mtc}{0}`
3542 `\MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}`
3543 `\def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\dominitoc@]{\dominitoc@[1]}`

`\dominilof` The `\dominilof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and create the minilofs

`\dominilof` files, with the adequate extension.

`\MLF@next`

`\@ifnextchar` 3544 `\def\dominilof#1{%`
3545 `\makeatletter`
3546 `\setcounter{mtc}{0}`
3547 `\MLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}`
3548 `\def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\dominilof@]{\dominilof@[1]}`

`\dominilot` The `\dominilot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and create the minilots

`\dominilot` files, with the adequate extension.

`\MLT@next`

`\@ifnextchar` 3549 `\def\dominilot#1{%`
3550 `\makeatletter`
3551 `\setcounter{mtc}{0}`
3552 `\MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}`
3553 `\def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\dominilot@]{\dominilot@[1]}`

```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtitc 3554 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
\@mti 3555 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3556 \if@dominitoc@used@
\c@mti 3557 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3558 {The \string\dominitoc \space command
\r@mti 3559 \MessageBreak
\@dominitoc 3560 has been invoked more than once
3561 \MessageBreak}
3562 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3563 \fi
3564 \fi
3565 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
3566 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\@mti%
3567 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
3568 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
3569 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
3570 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
3571 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3572 \@dominitoc}

```

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilf 3573 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
\@mti 3574 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3575 \if@dominilof@used@
\c@mti 3576 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3577 {The \string\dominilof \space command
\r@mti 3578 \MessageBreak
\@dominilof 3579 has been invoked more than once
3580 \MessageBreak}
3581 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3582 \fi
3583 \fi
3584 \global\@dominilof@used@true
3585 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\@mti%
3586 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
3587 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
3588 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
3589 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
3590 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3591 \@dominilof}

```

```

\if@dominilot@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilt 3592 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\e@mti 3593 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3594 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 3595 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3596 {The \string\dominilot \space command
\r@mti 3597 \MessageBreak
@@dominilot 3598 has been invoked more than once
3599 \MessageBreak}
3600 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3601 \fi
3602 \fi
3603 \global\@dominilot@used@true
3604 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
3605 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
3606 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
3607 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
3608 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
3609 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3610 \@dominilot}

@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file
@@dominilof descriptor.
@@dominilot
\tf@mtc 3611 \def@@dominitoc{ \@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3612 \def@@dominilof{ \@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3613 \def@@dominilot{ \@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros ⁷:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 3614 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3615 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
3616 \MTC@loop{#1}%
3617 }

```

⁷ This code is derived from the `xr` package [97], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission. Some modifications were made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of `hyperref`, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the `hyperlink` argument in the contents lines.

```

\MTC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 3618 \def\MTC@toc{%
              3619 \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
              3620 }

```

```

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\arabic           esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
\chapter          but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 3621 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
          3622 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
          3623 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
          3624 \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\themtc             it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname
\tf@mtc 3625 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 3626 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 3627 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
          3628 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
          3629 \else
          3630 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
          3631 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
          3632 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
          3633 \fi
          3634 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          3635 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
          3636 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register \mtc@toks is used as a verbatim
memory.

```

```

3637 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with
\section               the standard sectionning commands, below \chapter:
\subsection
\subsubsection 3638 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
\paragraph 3639 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 3640 \fi
          3641 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
          3642 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
          3643 \fi

```

```

3644 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
3645 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3646 \fi
3647 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
3648 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3649 \fi
3650 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
3651 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3652 \fi

```

\coffee A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for \coffee:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline

```

3653 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
3654 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
3655 \fi

```

\starchapter If it is \starchapter (for a starred chapter), we increment the mtc counter, build a new
\stepcounter minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.
\if@longextensions@

```

\mtcname 3656 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\themtc 3657 \stepcounter{mtc}%
\tf@mtc 3658 \if@longextensions@
\closeout 3659 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 3660 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
3661 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
3662 \else
3663 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
3664 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
3665 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
3666 \fi
3667 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3668 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
3669 \fi

```

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 3670 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 3671 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 3672 \fi
3673 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
3674 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3675 \fi
3676 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
3677 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3678 \fi
3679 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
3680 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%

```

```

3681 \fi
3682 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
3683 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3684 \fi
3685 }

```

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to process the first one:
 \MTC@next
 \MTC@list

```

3686 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

```

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.
 \openin
 \@inputcheck

```

\MTC@toc 3687 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 3688 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3689 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0010>]{minitoc}%
3690 {No file #1.
3691 \MessageBreak
3692 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
3693 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3694 \else
3695 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0024>]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
3696 \expandafter\MTC@read
3697 \fi
3698 }

```

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
 \read
 \@inputcheck 3699 \def\MTC@read{%
 \MTC@line 3700 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

\MTC@test The make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
 \MTC@line
 \MTC@ 3701 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@%
 3702 }%

`\MTC@test` The `\MTC@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit chapters⁸.

`\MTC@contentsline`

```

\@input      Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\MTC@list    the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\contentsline the next file in the list.
\mtc@string
\@input      3703 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{%
\MTC@list    3704 \ifx#1\contentsline
\chapterend  3705 \let\mtc@string\string
\closeout    3706 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\tf@mtc      3707 \let\mtc@string\relax
\openout     3708 \else\ifx#1\@input
\chapterbegin 3709 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
\addtocounter 3710 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MTC@toc      3711 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
\MTC@read     3712 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
              3713 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
              3714 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
              3715 \fi\fi\fi\fi
              3716 \ifeof\@inputcheck
              3717 \expandafter\MTC@toc
              3718 \else
              3719 \expandafter\MTC@read
              3720 \fi
              3721 }%
```

9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLF@list`

`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```

3722 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3723 \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
3724 \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

⁸ The macro `\MTC@test` has been patched to call `\MTC@contentsline` with four parameters instead of three (thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS). The same remark applies to similar macros.

```

\MLF@lof    Checks if the list is empty:
\MLF@list
\MLF@explist 3725 \def\MLF@lof{%
              3726   \ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}

```

\MLF@contentsline The macro \MLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If \xchapter is found, the counter mtc is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

```

3727 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3728   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3729   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3730     \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

\if@longextensions@ The name of the minilof file is built from \jobname and a long or short extension:

```

\themtc
\mlfname 3731   \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 3732     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3733       {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
\openout 3734     \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
              3735   \else
              3736     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
              3737     {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
              3738     \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
              3739   \fi
              3740   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              3741   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
              3742   \fi

```

\figure If we found a \figure entry, we copy it into the minilof file:
\subfigure

```

\mtc@toks 3743   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3744     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
              3745     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
              3746   \fi
              3747   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
              3748     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
              3749     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
              3750   \fi
              3751 }

```

\MLF@explist The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the first one:

```

\MLF@next
\MLF@list
3752 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

```

\MLF@loop And now, we scan the .lof file:
\openin
\@inputcheck 3753 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLF@lof 3754 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLF@read 3755 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0008>]{minitoc}%
3756 {No file #1.
3757 \MessageBreak
3758 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
3759 \expandafter\MLF@lof
3760 \else
3761 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0034>]{minitoc}%
3762 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
3763 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

```

```

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3764 \def\MLF@read{%
3765 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

```

```

\MLF@line The ..... make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:
\MLF@test
\MLF@ 3766 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line.....\MLF@%
3767 }%

```

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 3768 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{%
\chapterend 3769 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3770 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3771 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3772 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3773 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3774 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 3775 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 3776 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3777 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3778 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3779 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3780 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3781 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
3782 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

`\MLT@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLT@list`

`\MLT@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
3783 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3784   \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
3785   \MLT@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLT@lot` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLT@list`

```
\MLT@explist 3786 \def\MLT@lot{%
3787   \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}
```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the `mtc` counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

`\arabic`

`\xchapter`

```
3788 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3789   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3790   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3791     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

`\themtc`

```
\mltname 3792   \if@longextensions@
\closeout 3793     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3794     {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc\@gobble}%
\openout 3795     \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
3796     \else
3797     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
3798     {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc\@gobble}%
3799     \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
3800   \fi
3801   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3802   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
3803   \fi
```

```

\table If we found a \table entry, we copy it into the minilot file:
\subtable
\mtc@toks 3804 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3805 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3806 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
3807 \fi
3808 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
3809 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3810 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
3811 \fi
3812 }

\MLT@explist The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLT@next to process the
\MLT@next first one:
\MLT@list
3813 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}

\MLT@loop And now, we scan the .lot file:
\openin
\@inputcheck 3814 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLT@lot 3815 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLT@read 3816 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0009>]{minitoc}%
3817 {No file #1.
3818 \MessageBreak
3819 MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
3820 \expandafter\MLT@lot
3821 \else
3822 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0037>]{minitoc}%
3823 {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
3824 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3825 \def\MLT@read{%
3826 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

\MLT@line The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
\MLT@ 3827 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@%
3828 }%

```

```

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
          chapters.

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string   the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 3829 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{%
\chapterend 3830 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3831 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3832 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3833 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3834 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3835 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 3836 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 3837 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3838 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3839 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3840 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3841 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3842 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
3843 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a `\ifundefined{chapter}` alternative).

```
3844 }%
```

9.43 Macro to write a contents line

```

\mtc@dot The \MTC@WriteContentsline macro makes the definition of \MTC@contentsline shorter.
\MTC@WriteContentsline An extra \edef level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):
\mtc@param
\write The arguments of \MTC@WriteContentsline are:
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont #1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
\mtc@string #2: font shorthand = : \csname #2font\endcsname;
\contentsline #3: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
\mtc@toks #4: the #4 argument of \MTC@contentsline (hyperlink).

```

```

3845 \def\mtc@dot{.}
3846 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3847 \def\mtc@param{#4}%
3848 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%

```

```

3849 {\string\reset@font
3850 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3851 \string\mtc@string
3852 \string\contentsline{#1}%
3853 {\the\mtc@toks}%
3854 {\string\reset@font
3855 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3856 \space #3%
3857 }%
3858 \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
3859 \else
3860   {#4}%
3861 \fi
3862 }%
3863 }%
3864 }

```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:

```

\write
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont
\coffee@font
\mtc@string
\mtc@toks

```

#1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
 #2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.

```

3865 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3866   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3867     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee@font \string\mtc@string
3868     {\the\mtc@toks}%
3869     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee@font \space #3%
3870     }%
3871   }%
3872 }%
3873 }

```

9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth

```

```

3874 \AtBeginDocument{%
3875   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3876   {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
3877   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3878   {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
3879 }

```

9.45 Part level commands

```

\xpart If \part is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the parttocs and
\theptc related commands (\theptc, \Thepart, \adjustptc, \decrementptc, \incrementptc),
\Thepart the obsolete command \firstpartis, and the depth counter parttocdepth.
\adjustptc
\decrementptc 3880 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
\incrementptc 3881 {%
\firstpartis 3882 \def\xpart{xpart}
\firstpartis 3883 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
\if@firstpartis@used@ 3884 \def\firstpartis#1%
\newcounter 3885 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0004>]{minitoc}%
\setcounter 3886 {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete
3887 \MessageBreak
3888 command}%
3889 \@firstpartis@used@true}
3890 \newcounter{ptc}
3891 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
3892 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
3893 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
3894 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
3895 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}
3896 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
3897 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

\ptc@rule But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is
\columnwidth \chapter defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of \ptc@rule is empty except
if \chapter is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and
partlots for books. You should redeclare \ptc@rule if you want these rules.

3898 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3899 {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
3900 {\let\ptc@rule\relax}

\ptcindent And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

3901 \newlength\ptcindent
3902 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}

```


9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

```

\ptcfont
\ptcSfont
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if \chapter is defined
\ptcPfont (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):
\ptcSPfont
\plffont 3903 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\plfSfont 3904 \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\pltfont 3905 \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\pltSfont 3906 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\ptifont 3907 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
3908 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
3909 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
3910 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
3911 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
3912 \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
3913 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
3914 \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3915 }%

```

```

\ptcfont If \chapter is defined, the fonts are larger and \ptcCfont must be defined:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 3916 {%
\ptcSSfont 3917 \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSSSfont 3918 \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
\ptcPfont 3919 \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
\ptcSPfont 3920 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plffont 3921 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\plfSfont 3922 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
\pltfont 3923 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
\pltSfont 3924 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
\ptifont 3925 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
3926 \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
3927 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
3928 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3929 }

```

9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

```

\parttoc We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables
\partlof (\parttoc, \partlof and \partlot). This formatting is different if \chapter is defined or
\partlot undefined.

```

`\c@pti` If `\chapter` is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or
`\l@pti` empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
`\r@pti`

```
\e@pti 3930 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 3931 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3932 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
3933 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
3934 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3935 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3936 }%
```

`\e@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more
`\n@pti` complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```
3937 {%
3938 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3939 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3940 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@afterheading 3941 \@topnewpage[\@makephead@l{#1}]}%
\ptifont 3942 \else
\@makephead@l 3943 \@makephead@l{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3944 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 3945 \fi}
3946 \def\@makephead@l#1{%
3947 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
3948 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright
3949 \ptifont
3950 #1\par
3951 \nobreak
3952 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3953 }}
```

`\r@pti` For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3954 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makephead@r 3955 \@topnewpage[\@makephead@r{#1}]}%
\@afterheading 3956 \else
\ptifont 3957 \@makephead@r{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3958 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 3959 \fi}
3960 \def\@makephead@r#1{%
3961 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
3962 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft
3963 \ptifont
3964 #1\par
```

```

3965     \nobreak
3966     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3967   }}

```

\c@pti For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3968 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@c 3969   \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]%
\@afterheading 3970   \else
\ptifont 3971   \@makehead@c{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3972   \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 3973   \fi}
3974 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
3975   \vspace*\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
3976   {\parindent \z@ \centering
3977   \ptifont
3978   #1\par
3979   \nobreak
3980   \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3981   }}%
3982 }

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:

```

\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 3983 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 3984 \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\df@ptilf 3985 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\do@ptilt 3986 \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilt 3987 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti
3988 \let\df@ptilt\l@pti

```

9.48 The ptc@verse environment

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent, \centercr, \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to \ptcindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\listparindent
\topsep 3989 \def\ptc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
\parsep 3990 \list{}\itemsep\z@
\parskip 3991 \itemindent \z@
\partopsep
\ptcindent
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc

```

```

3992      \listparindent \itemindent
3993      \partopsep\z@
3994      \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
3995      \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
3996      \topsep=1ex
3997      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\leftmargin}%
3998  \item[]}
3999 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should be placed after a `\part` command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the formatting is different and depends on the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First, `\parttoc@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4000 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\parttoc@}{\parttoc@d}}

```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 4001 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
4002 \global\@parttoc@used@true
4003 \if@longextensions@
4004   \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
4005 \else
4006   \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
4007 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
  \@tocfile 4008      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
              4009      \if@mtc@FE
              4010      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
              4011          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
              4012      \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
              4013      \else

```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```

4014      \beforeparttoc

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```

  \@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle 4015      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 4016      \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
  \ptctitle 4017      \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
              4018      \thispageparttocstyle
              4019      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}%
              4020      }%

```

`\do@ptitc` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

  \e@pti
  \n@pti
  \c@pti 4021      \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \l@pti 4022      \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\e@pti
  \r@pti 4023      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\n@pti
  \df@pti 4024      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4025      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\l@pti
  \ptctitle 4026      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\r@pti
  \if@mtc@FE 4027      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\df@ptitc
  samepage 4028      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
              4029      \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```

  \parskip
  \ptcfont
              4030      \raggedright
              4031      \parskip=\z@%
              4032      \reset@font\ptcfont%
              4033      \parindent=\z@%
              4034      \nolinebreak[4]%
              4035      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nolinebreak[4]%
              4036      \par\noindent
              4037      \nolinebreak[4]%

```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptitc 4038      \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v 4039      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 4040      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\hline 4041      \end{tabular}%
4042      \else
4043      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4044      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
4045      \end{tabular}%
4046      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
4047      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4048      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4049      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4050      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

\mtc@BBR
4051      \begin{ptc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
4052      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\@tocfile
\mtc@strut 4053 \begingroup
ptc@verse 4054 \makeatletter
4055 \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
4056 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4057 \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
4058 {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
4059 \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}{}
4060 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4061 \ptc@setform
4062 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4063 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4064 \leavevmode\mtc@strut

```

```

4065 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4066 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterparttoc`.

```

samepage
\afterparttoc 4067 \kernafterparttoc
4068 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4069 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4070 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4071 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

9.49.2 The `\partlof` command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, `\partlof@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4072 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\partlof@]{\partlof@d}}

```

`\partlof@` The `\partlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlof@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 4073 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
4074 \global\@partlof@used@true
4075 \if@longextensions@%
4076 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
4077 \else
4078 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
4079 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 4080 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4081 \if@mtc@FE
4082 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
4083 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4084 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
4085 \else

```

`\beforepartlof` If the `partlof` file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
4086      \beforepartlof
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the `partlof` title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispagepartlofstyle 4087      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\MakeUppercase 4088 {\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 4089      \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
4090      \thispagepartlofstyle
4091      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
4092      }%
```

`\do@ptilf` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the `partlof` title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

\@pti
\@npti
\@c@pti 4093      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 4094      \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\@e@pti
\@r@pti 4095      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\@n@pti
\@df@pti 4096      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4097      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\@l@pti
\plftitle 4098      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4099      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\@df@ptilf
samepage 4100      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4101      \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\@e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the `parttoc`, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\plffont
4102      \raggedright
4103      \parskip=\z@%
4104      \reset@font\plffont%
```

`\plf@rule` The `parttoc` title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the `partlof`.

```

\ptifont
\do@ptilf 4105      \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 4106      \nopagebreak[4]%
\plftitle 4107      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4108      \par\noindent
4109      \ifx\plf@rule\relax
4110      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4111      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
```



```

4112      \end{tabular}%
4113      \else
4114      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4115      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\ \hline
4116      \mtc@hstrut\\
4117      \end{tabular}%
4118      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
`\mtc@BBR`
`\ptcindent`

```

4119      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4120      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4121      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4122      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

4123      \begin{ptc@verse}%
4124      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4125      {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
4126      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
4127      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plf@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat`
`\@dottedtocline`
`\@undottedtocline` are activated via `\plf@setform`. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\plf@setform
\@tocfile 4128 \begin{group}
\mtc@strut 4129 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 4130 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
4131 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
4132 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4133 \plf@setform
4134 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4135 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4136 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4137 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4138 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\plf@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.

`\mtc@zrule`

`samepage`

```

\afterpartlof 4139      \kernafterpartlof
                4140      \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
                4141      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                4142      \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
                4143      \afterpartlof\fi}

```

9.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4144 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\partlot@}{\partlot@d}}

```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

`\if@partlot@used@`

`\if@longextensions@`

`\@tocfile`

`\Thepart`

```

4145 %
4146 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
4147 \global\@partlot@used@true
4148 \if@longextensions@%
4149   \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
4150 \else
4151   \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
4152 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 4153      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
            4154      \if@mtc@FE
            4155      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
            4156      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
            4157      \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
            4158      \else

```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```

4159      \beforepartlot

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```

\mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 4160 \ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\MakeUppercase 4161 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 4162 \global\let\mkboth\markboth
4163 \thispagepartlotstyle
4164 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
4165 }%
```

`\do@ptilt` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlot title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

\mkboth
\do@ptilt 4166 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 4167 \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\r@pti 4168 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\df@pti 4169 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\df@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4170 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\plttitle 4171 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4172 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@pti
samepage 4173 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4174 \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\l@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot, then we set the font:

```

\pltfont
4175 \raggedright
4176 \parskip=\z@%
4177 \reset@font\pltfont%
4178 \parindent=\z@%
4179 \nopagebreak[4]%
4180 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4181 \par\noindent
```

`\plt@rule` The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlot.

```

\pltfont
\do@ptilt 4182 \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 4183 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 4184 \reset@font\pltfont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 4185 \end{tabular}%
4186 \else
4187 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4188 \reset@font\pltfont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
4189 \mtc@hstrut\\
4190 \end{tabular}%
4191 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:
`\ptcindent`

```

4192      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4193      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4194      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4195      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is
`\mtc@BBR` forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

4196      \begin{ptc@verse}%
4197      \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4198      {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
4199      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4200      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its
`\@dottedtocline` undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat`
`\@undottedtocline` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\plt@setform
\@tocfile 4201 \begin{group}
\mtc@strut 4202 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 4203 \ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
4204 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4205 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4206 \plt@setform
4207 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4208 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4209 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4210 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4211 \end{ptc@verse}%
```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter`
`\mtc@zrule` is not defined), and `\afterpartlot`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.

```

samepage
\afterpartlot 4212 \kernafterpartlot
4213 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4214 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4215 \par\ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4216 \afterpartlot\fi
```

9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

`\@dottedtocline` The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to `\l@section`, only the arguments have been altered:

```

\l@xpart
\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter 4217 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect    4218 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
          4219 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
          4220 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
          4221 \def\psect{psect}

```

9.51 Patching the `\part` command, continued

`\sv@part` We patch both branches of the `\part` command: `\@part` (unstarred `\part`) and `\@spart` (`\part*`). We add the incrementation of the `ptc` counter to both branches. In the unstarred branch, we add `xpart` entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we add a `\partbegin` line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real (`\relax`).

```

\sv@spart
\mtc@svpart
\@part
\addtocontents
\sv@spart
\ptc@spart
\@spart 4222 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 4223 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 4224 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend   4225 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
          4226 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
          4227 \stepcounter{ptc}}
          4228 \let\sv@spart\@spart
          4229 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
          4230 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
          4231 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
          4232 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
          4233 \let\partend\relax
          4234 \let\partbegin\relax

```

9.52 The `\doparttoc` command and its siblings

`\doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command works like the `\dominitoc` command, `\dopartlof` like `\dominiloof` and `\dopartlot` like `\dominilot`.

`\@doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.ptc`(N)
`\PTC@next` files (`.ptc` becomes `.P` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4235 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
4236   \makeatletter
4237   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4238   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlof` The `\dopartlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.plf`(N)
`\PLF@next` files (`.plf` becomes `.G` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4239 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
4240   \makeatletter
4241   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4242   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlot` The `\dopartlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.plt`(N)
`\PLT@next` files (`.plt` becomes `.U` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4243 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
4244   \makeatletter
4245   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4246   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\doparttoc` We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dopartlof`
`\dopartlot` 4247 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
`\@ifnextchar` 4248 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
4249 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}

`\doparttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\doparttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\if@doparttoc@used@`
`\@mtc@hints@given@true` 4250 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
`\df@ptitc` 4251 \if@mtc@hints@
`\e@pti` 4252 \if@doparttoc@used@
`\n@pti` 4253 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
`\c@pti` 4254 {The \string\doparttoc \space command
`\l@pti` 4255 \MessageBreak
`\r@pti` 4256 has been invoked more than once
4257 \MessageBreak}
4258 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4259 \fi
4260 \fi
4261 \global\@doparttoc@used@true
4262 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%

```

4263 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
4264 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
4265 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
4266 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
4267 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4268 \@@doparttoc}

```

\dopartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.

```

\dopartlof@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4269 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
\df@ptilf 4270 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4271 \if@dopartlof@used@
\n@pti 4272 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4273 {The \string\dopartlof \space command
\l@pti 4274 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4275 has been invoked more than once
4276 \MessageBreak}
4277 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4278 \fi
4279 \fi
4280 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
4281 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\@pti%
4282 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
4283 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
4284 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
4285 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
4286 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4287 \@@dopartlof}

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

```

\dopartlot@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 4288 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 4289 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4290 \if@dopartlot@used@
\n@pti 4291 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4292 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\l@pti 4293 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4294 has been invoked more than once
4295 \MessageBreak}
4296 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4297 \fi
4298 \fi
4299 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
4300 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\@pti%
4301 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
4302 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
4303 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
4304 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%

```

```

4305 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4306 \@@dopartlot}

```

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
 \@@dopartlof file descriptor.

```

\@@dopartlot
  \tf@mtc 4307 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4308 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4309 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```

\PTC@list
\PTC@loop 4310 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          4311 \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
          4312 \PTC@loop{#1}}

```

\PTC@toc Check if the list is empty:

```

\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 4313 \def\PTC@toc{%
          4314 \ifx\PTC@list@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

```

\part
\theptc
\tf@mtc
\ptcname 4315 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4316 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
          4317 \stepcounter{ptc}%
          4318 \if@longextensions%
          4319 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
          4320 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc@gobble}%
          4321 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
          4322 \else
          4323 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
          4324 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc@gobble}%
          4325 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
          4326 \fi
          4327 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          4328 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
          4329 \fi
          4330 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
          4331 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```


`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
`\ptcname` it:

```

4332 \if@longextensions@%
4333 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4334 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4335 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4336 \else
4337 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4338 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
4339 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4340 \fi
4341 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4342 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4343 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```

4344 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters,
`\chapter` sections, etc.:

```

\pchapter
\section 4345 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 4346 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 4347 \fi
\subsubsection 4348 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
\paragraph 4349 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 4350 \fi
4351 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4352 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4353 \fi
4354 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
4355 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
4356 \fi
4357 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4358 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4359 \fi
4360 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4361 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4362 \fi
4363 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4364 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4365 \fi
4366 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4367 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4368 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectionning commands:

```

\starchapter
\starsection 4369 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 4370 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubsubsection 4371 \fi
\starparagraph 4372 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starsubparagraph 4373 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4374 \fi
4375 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
4376 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4377 \fi
4378 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4379 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4380 \fi
4381 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4382 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4383 \fi
4384 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4385 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4386 \fi
4387 }
```

`\PTC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\PTC@next` to process the first one:

`\PTC@next`

`\PTC@list`

```
4388 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}
```

`\PTC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, `\PTC@toc` process the next entry in the list.

`\PTC@read`

```

4389 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4390 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4391 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0013>]{minitoc}%
4392 {No file #1
4393 \MessageBreak
4394 PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4395 \expandafter\PTC@toc
4396 \else
4397 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0025>]{minitoc}%
4398 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
4399 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

`\PTC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

`\PTC@line`

```

4400 \def\PTC@read{%
4401 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

\PTC@test The make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:

\PTC@line

```
4402 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line. . . . \PTC@%
4403 }%
```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
 \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
 \PTC@list the next file in the list.

\PTC@toc

\PTC@read 4404 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{%

\partend 4405 \ifx#1\contentsline

4406 \let\mtc@string\string

4407 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%

4408 \let\mtc@string\relax

4409 \else\ifx#1\@input

4410 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%

4411 \else\ifx#1\partend

4412 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

4413 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc

4414 \else\ifx#1\partbegin

4415 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%

4416 \fi\fi\fi\fi

4417 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc

4418 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

\PLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\PLF@list

\PLF@loop 4419 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%

4420 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%

4421 \PLF@loop{#1}}

\PLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

\PLF@list

\PLF@explist 4422 \def\PLF@lof{%

4423 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}

```

\PLF@contentsline The macro \PLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects inter-
  \part          esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc        created.
  \tf@mtc
  \plfname 4424 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 4425 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
  4426 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
  \plfname it:

```

```

4427 \if@longextensions@%
4428 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4429 {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4430 \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4431 \else
4432 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4433 {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
4434 \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
4435 \fi
4436 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4437 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
4438 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline.

```

```

\figure Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subfigure
\mtc@toks 4439 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4440 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
  4441 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
  4442 \fi
  4443 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
  4444 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
  4445 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
  4446 \fi
  4447 }

```

```

\PLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next to
  \PLF@next process the first one:
  \PLF@list
  4448 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

\PLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \PLF@lof process the next entry in the list.

```
\PLF@read
4449 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4450   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4451     \mtcPackageWarning[<W0011>]{minitoc}%
4452     {No file #1
4453       \MessageBreak
4454       PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4455   \expandafter\PLF@lof
4456 \else
4457   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0035>]{minitoc}%
4458   {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
4459   \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}
```

\PLF@read Read the next entry of the .lof file.

```
\PLF@line
4460 \def\PLF@read{%
4461   \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line
```

\PLF@test The make sure that \PLF@test has enough arguments:

```
\PLF@line
4462   \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line.....\PLF@%
4463   }%
```

\PLF@test The \PLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
 \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
 \PLF@list the next file in the list.
 \PLF@lof

```
\PLF@read 4464 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{%
\partend 4465   \ifx#1\contentsline
4466     \let\mtc@string\string
4467     \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4468     \let\mtc@string\relax
4469   \else\ifx#1\@input
4470     \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
4471   \else\ifx#1\partend
4472     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4473     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=jobname.mtc
4474   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4475     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4476   \fi\fi\fi\fi
4477   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
4478   \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%
```

9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
`\PLT@list`
`\PLT@loop` 4479 `\def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%`
 4480 `\edef\PLT@list{#2}%`
 4481 `\PLT@loop{#1}}`

`\PLT@lot` Check if the list is empty:
`\PLT@list`
`\PLT@explist` 4482 `\def\PLT@lot{%`
 4483 `\ifx\PLT@list@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}`

`\PLT@contentsline` The macro `\PLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.
`\theptc`
`\tf@mtc`
`\plname` 4484 `\def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%`
`\PLT@WriteContentsLine` 4485 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part`
 4486 `\stepcounter{ptc}%`

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:
`\plname`

```
4487 \if@longextensions@
4488   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4489   {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
4490   \def\plname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
4491 \else
4492   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4493   {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
4494   \def\plname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
4495 \fi
4496 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4497 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plname
4498 \fi
```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

`\table` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
`\subtable`
`\mtc@toks` 4499 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table`
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` 4500 `\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%`

```

4501     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
4502   \fi
4503   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
4504     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4505     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
4506   \fi
4507 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:

\PLT@next

\PLT@list

```

4508 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}

```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

\PLT@lot

\PLT@read

```

4509 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4510   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4511     \mtcPackageWarning[<W0012>]{minitoc}%
4512     {No file #1
4513     \MessageBreak
4514     PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4515     \expandafter\PLT@lot
4516   \else
4517     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0038>]{minitoc}%
4518     {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
4519     \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}

```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```

4520 \def\PLT@read{%
4521   \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line

```

\PLT@test The make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```

4522   \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line. . . . \PLT@%
4523 }%

```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\PLT@list the next file in the list.
\PLT@lot
\PLT@read 4524 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{%
\partend 4525 \ifx#1\contentsline
4526 \let\mtc@string\string
4527 \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4528 \let\mtc@string\relax
4529 \else\ifx#1\@input
4530 \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
4531 \else\ifx#1\partend
4532 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4533 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4534 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4535 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4536 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4537 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
4538 \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 304):

```
4539 }%
```

9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create new counters for the depths
\c@lofdepth of the corresponding mini-tables: sectlofdepth and sectlotdepth. These counters are
\c@lotdepth initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument
\newcounter block:
\setcounter
4540 \AtBeginDocument{%
4541 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4542 {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
4543 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4544 {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
4545 }

```

9.54 Section-level commands

```

\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ The section-level commands are defined only if \chapter is not defined, hence in article-like
\if@mtc@section@def@ document classes, and only if \section is defined:

```

```
4546 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
```



```

4547 \if@mtc@section@def@

\firstsectionis We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
\adjuststc stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
\decrementstc depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
\incrementstc the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
\stc@rule sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
\stcindent
\columnwidth 4548 \def\firstsectionis#1%
4549 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0005>]{minitoc}%
4550 {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete
4551 \MessageBreak
4552 command}%
4553 \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4554 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4555 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4556 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4557 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4558 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
4559 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4560 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4561 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 4562 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 4563 \let\stcSSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 4564 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 4565 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 4566 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 4567 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 4568 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
4569 \let\sltSfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
4570 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

9.56 Internal macros for title positioning

Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of `\dosecttoc` and `\secttoc` commands (and siblings):

```

\l@sti   Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a vertical correction for empty titles, from
\c@sti   Frank MITTELBACH):
\r@sti
\l@sti
\l@sti   4571 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\l@sti   4572 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\l@sti   4573 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
\l@sti   4574 \def\l@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\l@sti   4575 \def\r@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

\l@sti   By default, titles are flushleft.
\l@sti
\l@sti   4576 \let\l@sti\l@sti
\l@sti   4577 \let\l@sti\l@sti
\l@sti   4578 \let\l@sti\l@sti
\l@sti   4579 \let\l@sti\l@sti
\l@sti   4580 \let\l@sti\l@sti
\l@sti   4581 \let\l@sti\l@sti

```

9.57 The stc@verse environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `ifktightmtc` `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored.

```

4582 \def\stc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
4583   \list{}\itemsep\z@
4584   \itemindent \z@
4585   \listparindent \itemindent
4586   \partopsep \z@
4587   \iftightmtc \parsep \z@ \fi
4588   \ifktightmtc \parskip \z@ \fi
4589   \topsep 1ex %% 20060731 was \z@
4590   \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\leftmargin}%
4591   \item[]}
4592 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

9.58.1 The `\secttoc` command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4593 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[\secttoc@]{\secttoc@d}}}
```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `secttoc` file):

```
\@tocfile
\thetc 4594 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
4595 \global\@secttoc@used@true
4596 \if@longextensions@%
4597 \def\@tocfile{stc\thetc}%
4598 \else
4599 \def\@tocfile{S\thetc}%
4600 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the `secttoc` file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```
\@tocfile
4601 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4602 \if@mtc@FE
4603 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
4604 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4605 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
4606 \else
```

`\beforesecttoc` If the `secttoc` file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
4607 \beforesecttoc
4608 \thispagesecttocstyle
```

`\do@sttc` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```
\n@sti
\c@sti 4609 % \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\l@sti 4610 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\r@sti 4611 \if #1e\let\do@sttc\e@sti
\df@sti 4612 \else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\n@sti
\mtc@CkStr
\stctitle
\if@mtc@FE
samepage
```

```

4613      \else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sti
4614      \else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sti
4615      \else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sti
4616      \else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc
4617      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4618      \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc,
`\parskip` then we set the font:
`\stcfont`

```

4619      \raggedright
4620      \parskip=\z@%
4621      \reset@font\stcfont%
4622      \parindent=\z@%
4623      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\columnwidth` the secttoc.

```

\stifont
\do@sttc 4624      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4625      \par\noindent
\stctitle 4626      \nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4627      \ifx\stc@rule\relax
4628      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4629      \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
4630      \end{tabular}%
4631      \else
4632      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4633      \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
4634      \end{tabular}%
4635      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:

```

\stcindent
4636      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4637      \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4638      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4639      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally)
`\c@tocdepth` to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\c@secttocdepth
\mtc@BBR 4640      \begin{stc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
4641      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\stc@pgno  If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \stc@setform. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile stc@verse environment is terminated.
\stc@setform
  \@tocfile 4642 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4643 \makeatletter
  stc@verse 4644 \stc@setform%
            4645 \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
            4646 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}\fi
            4647 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
            4648 \stc@setform%
            4649 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
            4650 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
            4651 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
            4652 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
            4653 \end{stc@verse}%

\stc@rule  The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
  samepage
\aftersecttoc 4654 \kernaftersecttoc
              4655 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\fi
              4656 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
              4657 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi%

```

9.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4658 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[\sectlof@]{\sectlof@[d]}}
```

\sectlof@ The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
  \thetoc 4659 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
          4660 \global\@sectlof@used@true
          4661 \if@longextensions@%
          4662   \def\@tocfile{slf\thetoc}%
          4663 \else
          4664   \def\@tocfile{H\thetoc}%
          4665 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:
`\@tocfile`

```

4666      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4667      \if@mtc@FE
4668      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
4669          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4670      \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
4671      \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesectlofsty` code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4672      \thispagesectlofsty
4673 %      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
4674      \beforesectlof

```

`\do@stilf` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\do@stilf
\l@sti
\c@sti
\l@sti
\r@sti
\df@sti
\mtc@CkStr
\slftitle
\if@mtc@FE
samepage
4675      \relax\begin{samepage}%
4676      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
4677      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
4678      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
4679      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
4680      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
4681      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
4682      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4683      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,
`\parskip` then we set the font:

```

\slffont
4684      \raggedright
4685      \parskip=\z@%
4686      \reset@font\slffont%
4687      \parindent=\z@%
4688      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\stifont` the sectlof.

```

\columnwidth
\do@stilf
\mtc@v
\slftitle
\hline
4689      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4690      \par\noindent

```

```

4691      \ifx\slf@rule\relax
4692      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4693      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
4694      \end{tabular}%
4695      \else
4696      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4697      \mtc@hstrut
4698      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
4699      \end{tabular}%
4700      \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
 \mtc@BBR
 \stcindent

```

4701      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4702      \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4703      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4704      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
 \c@sectlofdepth
 \mtc@BBR

```

4705      \begin{stc@verse}%
4706      \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4707      {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
4708      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
4709      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile stc@verse environment is terminated.

```

\slf@setform
  \@tocfile 4710 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4711 \makeatletter
stc@verse 4712 \ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
4713 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4714 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4715 \slf@setform%
4716 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4717 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4718 \end{stc@verse}%

```

`\stc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
`\mtc@zrule` `\aftersectlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.
`samepage`
`\aftersectlof` 4719 `\kernaftersectlof`
4720 `\nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\`
4721 `\vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%`
4722 `\par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%`

9.58.3 The `\sectlot` command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlot (no automatic
`\sectlot@` sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects
`\@ifnextchar` the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then,
`\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

4723 `\def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar{\sectlot@}\sectlot@d}}`

`\sectlot@` The `\sectlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlot@used@` (for a
`\if@sectlot@used@` consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot
`\if@longextensions@` file):
`\@tocfile`
`\thestc` 4724 `\def\sectlot@[#1]{%`
4725 `\global\@sectlot@used@true`
4726 `\if@longextensions@%`
4727 `\def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%`
4728 `\else`
4729 `\def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%`
4730 `\fi`

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:
`\@tocfile`

4731 `\mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}`
4732 `\if@mtc@FE`
4733 `\mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%`
4734 `{\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}`
4735 `\@mtc@empty@sectlot@true`
4736 `\else`

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesectlotstyle` code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

4737 `\thispagesectlotstyle`
4738 `%% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%`
4739 `\beforesectlot`


```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
\@e@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
\@n@sti
\@c@sti 4740 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@sti 4741 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\@e@sti
\@r@sti 4742 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\@n@sti
\@df@sti 4743 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\@c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4744 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\@l@sti
\slttitle 4745 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\@r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4746 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\@df@stilt
\if@mtc@FE 4747 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 4748 \mtc@CkStr{\slttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\@e@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot,
\parskip then we set the font:
\sltfont
4749 \raggedright
4750 \parskip=\z@%
4751 \reset@font\sltfont%
4752 \parindent=\z@%
4753 \nopagebreak[4]%

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\stifont the sectlot.
\columnwidth
\do@stilt 4754 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4755 \par\noindent
\slttitle 4756 \ifx\stc@rule\relax
\hline 4757 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4758 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\
4759 \end{tabular}%
4760 \else
4761 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4762 \mtc@hstrut
4763 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\
4764 \end{tabular}%
4765 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
4766 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4767 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4768 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4769 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the `sectlot`. The `toc` depth is forced (locally) to `sectlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

`\c@tocdepth`

`\c@sectlotdepth`

```
\mtc@BBR 4770 \begin{stc@verse}%
4771 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4772 {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
4773 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4774 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\slt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slt@setform`. Then the `sectlot` file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

`\@dottedtocline`

`\@undottedtocline`

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`

```
\slt@setform
\@tocfile 4775 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4776 \makeatletter
stc@verse 4777 \ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
4778 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4779 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
4780 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4781 \slt@setform%
4782 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4783 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4784 \end{stc@verse}%
```

`\stc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and

`\mtc@zrule` `\aftersectlot`.

`samepage`

`\aftersectlot`

```
4785 \kernaftersectlof
4786 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4787 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4788 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi%
```

9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

`\l@xsect` We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and `\l@xsection` LOF and LOT files). The depth of `xsect` is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat).

`\@dottedtocline`

`\l@schapter`

```
\xsect 4789 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\xsection 4790 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\schapter 4791 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4792 \def\xsect{xsect}
4793 \def\xsection{xsection}
4794 \def\schapter{schapter}
```

9.60 Patching the `\section` command (continued)

`\@sect` We patch the both branches of the `\section` command: `\@sect` for the unstarred version and `\addcontentsline` `\@ssect` for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (`\@sect`), we add a `xsect` contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test `\ifnum #2=1` restricts the action to the section level macros (because `\@sect` is also used by `\subsection` and below, which have no mini-tables).

```

4795 \let\sv@sect\@sect
4796 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4797   \ifnum #2=1\relax
4798     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4799     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4800 \fi
4801 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}

```

`\section` If it is a section (unstarred or starred via `\starsection`), we add a `xsect` entry in the LOF
`\starsection` and in the LOT.
`\addcontentsline`

```

4802 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
4803   \expandafter
4804   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
4805     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4806     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4807 \fi
4808   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
4809     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4810     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4811 \fi

```

`\@svsec` And the remainder of the section header formatting:
`\refstepcounter`
`\@tempskipa` 4812 `\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
`\@hangfrom` 4813 `\let\@svsec\@empty`
`\addcontentsline` 4814 `\else`
`\numberline` 4815 `\refstepcounter{#1}%`
`\@svsechd` 4816 `\edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%`
`\@xsect` 4817 `\fi`
4818 `\@tempskipa #5\relax`
4819 `\ifdim \@tempskipa>z@`
4820 `\begingroup #6\relax`
4821 `\@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%`
4822 `{\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%`
4823 `\endgroup`
4824 `\csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline`
4825 `{toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
4826 `\else`
4827 `\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%`

```

4828          \fi
4829          #7}%
4830 \else
4831   \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
4832   \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
4833   {#7}\addcontentsline
4834   {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4835           \else
4836           \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
4837           \fi
4838   #7}}%
4839 \fi
4840 \@xsect{#5}}

```

\@sect Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands \sectbegin \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 4841 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4842 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4843   \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4844   \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4845   \fi
4846   \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
4847 \let\sectend\relax
4848 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

\dosecttoc The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc(N) files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).

\STC@next

```

4849 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
4850   \makeatletter
4851   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4852   \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

\dosectlof The \dosectlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .slf(N) files (.slf becomes .H on MS-DOS).

\SLF@next

```

4853 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
4854   \makeatletter
4855   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4856   \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.slt`(*N*) files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosectlot`
`\PLT@next`

```
4857 \def\dosectlot#1{%
4858   \makeatletter
4859   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4860   \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` 4861 `\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}`
`\@ifnextchar` 4862 `\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}`
4863 `\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}`

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 4864 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 4865 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 4866   \if@dosecttoc@used@
\n@sti 4867   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 4868   {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
\l@sti 4869   \MessageBreak
\r@sti 4870   has been invoked more than once
4871   \MessageBreak}
4872   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4873   \fi
4874 \fi
4875 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
4876 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@sti%
4877 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\n@sti%
4878 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\c@sti%
4879 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\l@sti%
4880 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\r@sti%
4881 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4882 @@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4883 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 4884 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 4885   \if@dosectlof@used@
\n@sti 4886   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 4887   {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\l@sti 4888   \MessageBreak
\r@sti 4889   has been invoked more than once
4890   \MessageBreak}
```

```

4891 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4892 \fi
4893 \fi
4894 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
4895 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
4896 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
4897 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
4898 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
4899 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
4900 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4901 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
 \if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

\if@dosectlot@used@ 4902 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\df@stilt 4903 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 4904 \if@dosectlot@used@
\@sti 4905 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@sti 4906 {The \string\dosectlot \space command
\@sti 4907 \MessageBreak
\@sti 4908 has been invoked more than once
\@sti 4909 \MessageBreak}
4910 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4911 \fi
4912 \fi
4913 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
4914 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
4915 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
4916 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
4917 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
4918 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
4919 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4920 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
 \@@dosectlof file descriptor.
 \@@dosectlot

```

\tf@mtc 4921 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4922 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4923 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 4924 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4925 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
4926 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\STC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\STC@list
\STC@explist 4927 \def\STC@toc{%
              4928   \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4929 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\stcname 4930   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4931   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
              4932     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname it:

4933   \if@longextensions@%
4934     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4935     {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4936     \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4937   \else
4938     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4939     {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
4940     \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
4941   \fi
4942   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4943   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
4944   \fi

\mtc@toks    Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4945   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\coffee 4946   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsection 4947   \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\subsubsection 4948   \fi
\paragraph 4949   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
\subparagraph 4950   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
              4951   \fi
              4952   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
              4953     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
              4954   \fi
              4955   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
              4956     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
              4957   \fi
              4958   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
              4959     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
              4960   \fi

```

`\starsection` A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:

```

\stepcounter
  \thetc 4961 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \arabic 4962 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@longextensions@ 4963 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
  \stcname 4964 \if@longextensions@
  \closeout 4965 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
  \openout 4966 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  4967 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  4968 \else
  4969 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
  4970 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetc}%
  4971 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetc}%
  4972 \fi
  4973 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  4974 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
  4975 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 4976 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \starparagraph 4977 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 4978 \fi
  4979 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  4980 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
  4981 \fi
  4982 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  4983 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
  4984 \fi
  4985 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
  4986 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  4987 \fi
  4988 }

```

`\STC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\STC@next` to process the first one.

```

\STC@next
\STC@list
4989 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

`\STC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
4990 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4991 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4992 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0016>]{minitoc}%
4993 {No file #1
4994 \MessageBreak
4995 SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%

```



```

4996 \expandafter\STC@toc
4997 \else
4998 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0026>]{minitoc}%
4999 {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
5000 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```

\STC@line
5001 \def\STC@read{%
5002 \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line

```

\STC@test The make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

```

\STC@line
5003 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line. . . . \STC@%
5004 }%

```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\STC@list 5005 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{%
\STC@toc 5006 \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 5007 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5008 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 5009 \let\mtc@string\relax
5010 \else\ifx#1\@input
5011 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
5012 \else\ifx#1\sectend
5013 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5014 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5015 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5016 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5017 \fi\fi\fi\fi
5018 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
5019 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%

```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```

\SLF@list
\SLF@loop 5020 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
5021 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
5022 \SLF@loop{#1}}

```

```

\SLF@lof    Check if the list is empty:
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist 5023 \def\SLF@lof{%
              5024   \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 5025 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\slfname 5026   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 5027   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
              5028     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\slfname it:

              5029   \if@longextensions@%
              5030     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
              5031     {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
              5032     \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
              5033   \else
              5034     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
              5035     {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
              5036     \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
              5037   \fi
              5038   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              5039   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
              5040   \fi

\mtc@toks    Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\figure 5041   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subfigure 5042   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
              5043     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
              5044   \fi
              5045   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
              5046     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
              5047   \fi
              5048 }

\SLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to
\SLF@next    process the first one.
\SLF@list
              5049 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

\SLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \SLF@lof process the next entry in the list.
 \SLF@read

```
5050 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5051 \ifeof\@inputcheck
5052 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0014>]{minitoc}%
5053 {No file #1
5054 \MessageBreak
5055 SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
5056 \expandafter\SLF@lof
5057 \else
5058 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0036>]{minitoc}%
5059 {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
5060 \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}
```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:

\SLF@test

```
\SLF@line 5061 \def\SLF@read{%
5062 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
5063 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@%
5064 }%
```

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit
 \SLF@contentsline sections;

\mtc@string

```
\SLF@list 5065 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{%
\SLF@lof 5066 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 5067 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5068 \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 5069 \let\mtc@string\relax
5070 \else\ifx#1\@input
5071 \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
5072 \else\ifx#1\sectend
5073 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5074 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5075 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5076 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5077 \fi\fi\fi\fi
5078 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
5079 \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%
```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLT@list

```
\SLT@loop 5080 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
5081 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
5082 \SLT@loop{#1}}
```

```

\SLT@lot    Check if the list is empty:
\SLT@list
\SLT@explist 5083 \def\SLT@lot{%
              5084   \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestic
\tf@mtc 5085 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\sltname 5086   \gdef\thestic{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 5087   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
              5088   \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname it:

              5089   \if@longextensions@%
              5090     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
              5091     {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestic}%
              5092     \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestic}%
              5093   \else
              5094     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
              5095     {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestic}%
              5096     \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestic}%
              5097   \fi
              5098   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              5099   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
              5100   \fi

\mtc@toks    Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\table 5101   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subtable 5102   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
              5103   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
              5104   \fi
              5105   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
              5106   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
              5107   \fi
              5108 }

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next    process the first one.
\SLT@list
              5109 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
 \SLT@read

```

5110 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5111 \ifeof\@inputcheck
5112 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0015>]{minitoc}%
5113 {No file #1
5114 \MessageBreak
5115 SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
5116 \expandafter\SLT@lot
5117 \else
5118 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0039>]{minitoc}%
5119 {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
5120 \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read The make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:

\SLT@test

```

\SLT@line 5121 \def\SLT@read{%
5122 \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
5123 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@%
5124 }%

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
 \SLT@contentsline sections;

\mtc@string

```

\SLT@list 5125 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{%
\SLT@lot 5126 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 5127 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5128 \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 5129 \let\mtc@string\relax
5130 \else\ifx#1\@input
5131 \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
5132 \else\ifx#1\sectend
5133 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5134 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5135 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5136 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5137 \fi\fi\fi\fi
5138 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
5139 \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```
5140 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
5141 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
```

9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```
\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 5142 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\{\mtcprepare@\}\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 5143 \def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
  \jobname 5144 \@ifundefined{part}}}%
  \doparttoc 5145 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}}%
  \dopartlof 5146 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}}%
  \dopartlot 5147 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}}%
  \dominitoc 5148 }%
  \dominilof 5149 \@ifundefined{chapter}}}%
  \dominilot 5150 \@ifundefined{section}}}%
  \dosecttoc 5151 {%
  \dosectlof 5152 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}}%
  \dosectlot 5153 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}}%
  \dosectlot 5154 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}}%
\mtcPackageInfo 5155 }%
5156 }}%
5157 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}}%
5158 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}}%
5159 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}}%
5160 }%
5161 \if@mtc@hints@
5162 \@mtc@hints@given@true
5163 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0048>]{minitoc(hints)}%
5164 {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
5165 \MessageBreak
5166 hints about the preparation commands,
5167 \MessageBreak
5168 because it invokes ALL the preparation
5169 \MessageBreak
5170 commands allowed by the document class,
5171 \MessageBreak
5172 without any previous check\@gobble}%
5173 \fi
5174 }
```

9.64 Necessary \l@... commands

\l@listof Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
 \l@startpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:
 \l@starchapter
 \l@starsection 5175 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
 \l@starsubsection 5176 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
 \l@starsubsubsection 5177 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@startpart\l@part}
 \l@starparagraph 5178 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
 \l@starsubparagraph 5179 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
 5180 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
 5181 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
 5182 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
 5183 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values

\noptcrule We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the vari-
 \nomtrule ous kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding
 \nostcrule horizontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules.
 \ptcrule
 \mtcrule 5184 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
 \stcrule 5185 \def\nomtrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
 \noplfrule 5186 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
 \nomlfrule 5187 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \noslfrule 5188 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \plfrule 5189 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \mlfrule 5190 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 \slfrule 5191 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 \nopltrule 5192 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 \nomltrule
 \nosltrule 5193 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
 \pltrule 5194 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
 \mltrule 5195 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
 \sltrule 5196 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 5197 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \columnwidth 5198 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 5199 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 5200 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 5201 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 5202 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
 5203 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
 5204 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
 5205 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 5206 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 5207 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}

```

5208 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5209 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5210 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

9.66 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands⁹ have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

9.66.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via `\@nameuse` the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (`typetable`) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```

5211 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
5212 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
5213 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
5214 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
5215 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
5216 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
5217 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
5218 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
5219 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}

```

`\@namedef` Then another family (`typetitle`) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```

5220 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
5221 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
5222 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
5223 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}

```

⁹ The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.


```

5224 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
5225 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
5226 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
5227 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
5228 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}

```

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms¹⁰ and meaning false or true¹¹ :

```

5229 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
5230 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
5231 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
5232 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
5233 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
5234 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
5235 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
5236 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
5237 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
5238 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
5239 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
5240 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
5241 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
5242 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
5243 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
5244 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
5245 %
5246 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{no}\def\mtc@YN@on{no}
5247 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@ON{no}
5248 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{no}\def\mtc@YN@yes{no}
5249 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{no}\def\mtc@YN@YES{no}
5250 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@y{no}
5251 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@Y{no}
5252 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{no}\def\mtc@YN@true{no}
5253 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{no}
5254 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{no}\def\mtc@YN@t{no}
5255 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{no}\def\mtc@YN@T{no}
5256 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{no}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{no}
5257 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{no}
5258 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{no}\def\mtc@YN@v{no}
5259 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{no}\def\mtc@YN@V{no}
5260 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{no}
5261 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{no}\def\mtc@YN@oui{no}
5262 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{no}\def\mtc@YN@O{no}
5263 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{no}\def\mtc@YN@o{no}
5264 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{no}
5265 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{no}

```

¹⁰This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter\csname ... \endcsname`.

¹¹0 and o are the letter O, Ø is the zero digit.

9.66.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectionning level keywords (note that `part` is not a member of this family (`sectlevel`), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, `part` being the highest sectionning level); “*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

5266 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
5267 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
5268 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
5269 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
5270 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
5271 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
5272 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
5273 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{} \def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{}
5274 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{} \def\mtc@sectlevel@table{}
5275 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{S}
5276 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{S}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like `subsection` (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [213] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5277 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
5278 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The
`\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`.
`\@nameuse`

```

5279 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5280 \@mtc@setfont@true
5281 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5282   \mtc@setfont@false
5283   \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}

```

```

5284 \mtcPackageError[<E0013>]{minitoc}%
5285     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5286     \MessageBreak
5287     (#1).
5288     \MessageBreak
5289     It should be a mini-table type
5290     \MessageBreak
5291     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5292     {Correct the source code.
5293     \MessageBreak
5294     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5295 \else
5296     \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5297 \fi

```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph keyword, we get SP.

```

5298 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5299 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5300     \@mtc@setfont@false
5301     \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5302     \mtcPackageError[<E0014>]{minitoc}%
5303     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5304     \MessageBreak
5305     (#2).
5306     \MessageBreak
5307     It should be a sectionning level
5308     \MessageBreak
5309     (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5310     {Correct the source code.
5311     \MessageBreak
5312     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5313 \else
5314     \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5315 \fi

```

`\mtc@tmp@name` Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
`\mtc@mta@abbrev`
`\mtc@level@abbrev` 5316 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

Example: if #1 is `minitoc` and #2 is `subsection`, we get `mtcSSfont`, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a `minitoc` (the backslash is missing, but we will use a `\csname ... \endcsname` pair to apply the constructed command).

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the mini-table), so we must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (*quarks*) with @mtcqk at the end of their names).

```

5317 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{\parttoc@mtcqk}
5318 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{\minitoc@mtcqk}
5319 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{\secttoc@mtcqk}
5320 \def\partlof@mtcqk{\partlof@mtcqk}
5321 \def\minilof@mtcqk{\minilof@mtcqk}
5322 \def\sectlof@mtcqk{\sectlof@mtcqk}
5323 \def\partlot@mtcqk{\partlot@mtcqk}
5324 \def\minilot@mtcqk{\minilot@mtcqk}
5325 \def\sectlot@mtcqk{\sectlot@mtcqk}
5326 \def\part@mtcqk{\part@mtcqk}
5327 \def\chapter@mtcqk{\chapter@mtcqk}
5328 \def\section@mtcqk{\section@mtcqk}
5329 \def\subsection@mtcqk{\subsection@mtcqk}
5330 \def\subsubsection@mtcqk{\subsubsection@mtcqk}
5331 \def\paragraph@mtcqk{\paragraph@mtcqk}
5332 \def\subparagraph@mtcqk{\subparagraph@mtcqk}
5333 \def\figure@mtcqk{\figure@mtcqk}
5334 \def\table@mtcqk{\table@mtcqk}
5335 \def\subfigure@mtcqk{\subfigure@mtcqk}
5336 \def\subtable@mtcqk{\subtable@mtcqk}
5337 \@mtc@setfont@true
5338 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax
5339   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5340   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5341   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5342   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5343 \fi
5344 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlof@mtcqk\relax
5345   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5346   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5347 \fi
5348 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlot@mtcqk\relax
5349   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5350   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5351 \fi
5352 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minitoc@mtcqk\relax
5353   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5354   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5355   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5356   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5357   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5358   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5359 \fi
5360 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minilof@mtcqk\relax
5361   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5362   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5363   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5364   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5365 \fi
5366 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minilot@mtcqk\relax

```

```

5367 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5368 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5369 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5370 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5371 \fi
5372 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
5373 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5374 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5375 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5376 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5377 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5378 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5379 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5380 \fi
5381 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
5382 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5383 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5384 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5385 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5386 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5387 \fi
5388 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
5389 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5390 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5391 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5392 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5393 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5394 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed
\mtc@tmp@name macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log
\mtc@mta@abbrev that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*); if the
\mtc@level@abbrev combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.
\mtc@toks

```

5395 \if@mtc@setfont@
5396 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
5397 \mtc@toks{#3}
5398 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0015>]{minitoc}%
5399 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
5400 \MessageBreak
5401 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5402 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{#3}
5403 \else
5404 \mtcPackageError[<E0024>]{minitoc}%
5405 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
5406 \MessageBreak
5407 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5408 {Correct the source code.
5409 \MessageBreak
5410 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5411 \fi}

```

9.66.3 The `\mtcsettitlefont` command

`\mtcsettitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like *minitoc*. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [213] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5412 \newif\if@mtc@settitlefont@\@mtc@settitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
5413 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the *typetitle* family, then the result is stored into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:
`\if@mtc@settitlefont@`
`\@nameuse`

```
5414 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5415 \@mtc@settitlefont@true
5416 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
5417   \@mtc@settitlefont@false
5418   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5419   \mtcPackageError[<E0022>]{minitoc}%
5420     {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
5421     \MessageBreak
5422     (#1).
5423     \MessageBreak
5424     It should be a mini-table type
5425     \MessageBreak
5426     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5427   {Correct the source code.
5428   \MessageBreak
5429   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5430 \else
5431   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5432 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:

```

\mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5433 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@toks 5434 \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
5435 \mtc@toks{#2}
5436 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0018>]{minitoc}%
5437 {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
5438 \MessageBreak
5439 "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
5440 \MessageBreak
5441 "\the\mtc@toks"}
5442 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{#2}
5443 \else
5444 \mtcPackageError[<E0034>]{minitoc}%
5445 {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
5446 \MessageBreak
5447 an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5448 {Correct the source code.
5449 \MessageBreak
5450 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5451 \fi
5452 }
```

9.66.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5453 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
5454 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

```

\mtc@mtati@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family. The result is stored in
\if@mtc@settitle@ \mtc@mtati@abbrev:
\@nameuse
5455 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
```

```

5456 \@mtc@settitle@true
5457 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5458   \@mtc@settitle@false
5459   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5460   \mtcPackageError[<E0021>]{minitoc}%
5461     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
5462     \MessageBreak
5463     (#1).
5464     \MessageBreak
5465     It should be a mini-table type
5466     \MessageBreak
5467     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5468   {Correct the source code.
5469   \MessageBreak
5470   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5471 \else
5472   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5473 \fi

```

\if@mtc@settitle@ And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

```

\mtc@tmpti@name
\mtc@mtati@abbrev 5474 \if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@toks 5475   \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}
5476   \mtc@toks{#2}
5477   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0017>]{minitoc}%
5478   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
5479   \MessageBreak
5480   "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
5481   \MessageBreak
5482   "\the\mtc@toks"}
5483   \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{#2}
5484 \else
5485   \mtcPackageError[<E0033>]{minitoc}%
5486   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
5487   \MessageBreak
5488   an illegal type of table (#1)}}%
5489   {Correct the source code.
5490   \MessageBreak
5491   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5492 \fi
5493 }

```

9.66.5 The \mtcsetformat command

\@namedef We define first the keywords (family formatparam) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

5494 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
5495 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}

```



```

5496 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
5497 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
5498 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
5499 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
5500 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
5501 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```

5502 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

```

\@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcpnumwidth
\mtcpnumwidth 5503 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 5504 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 5505 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 5506 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 5507 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 5508 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 5509 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 5510 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
5511 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

\@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtcclofrmarg 5512 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrmarg 5513 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 5514 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlfclotrmarg 5515 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slfclotrmarg 5516 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 5517 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltclotrmarg 5518 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrmarg 5519 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
5520 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 5521 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 5522 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 5523 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 5524 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 5525 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 5526 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 5527 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 5528 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
5529 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
5530 }
```

`\mtcsetformat` The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the `mtc@verse`-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by `\mtcsetformat`.

`\ptc@setform` The `\ptc@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5531 \def\ptc@setform{%
5532 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
5533 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
5534 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
5535 }
```

`\mtc@setform` The `\mtc@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5536 \def\mtc@setform{%
5537 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
5538 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
5539 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
5540 }
```

`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5541 \def\stc@setform{%
5542 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
5543 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
5544 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
5545 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5546 \def\plf@setform{%
5547 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5548 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5549 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5550 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5551 \def\mlf@setform{%
5552 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
5553 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
5554 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
5555 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5556 \def\slf@setform{%
5557 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
5558 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
5559 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
5560 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5561 \def\plt@setform{%
5562 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
5563 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
5564 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
5565 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5566 \def\mlt@setform{%
5567 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5568 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5569 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5570 }
```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5571 \def\slt@setform{%
5572 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5573 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5574 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5575 }
```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, which has the following syntax:
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```
5576 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
5577 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```
5578 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5579 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5580 \@mtc@setformat@true
5581 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5582   \@mtc@setformat@false
5583   \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5584   \mtcPackageError[<E0015>]{minitoc}%
5585     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
5586      \MessageBreak
5587      (#1).
5588      \MessageBreak
5589      It should be a mini-table type
5590      \MessageBreak
5591      (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5592   {Correct the source code.
5593    \MessageBreak
5594    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5595 \else
5596   \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5597 \fi
```

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

```
5598 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5599   \@mtc@setformat@false
5600   \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5601   \mtcPackageError[<E0016>]{minitoc}%
5602     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5603      \MessageBreak
5604      (#2).
5605      \MessageBreak
5606      It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5607      \MessageBreak
5608      pagenumwidth, tocrighmargin, dotinterval}%
5609   {Correct the source code.
5610    \MessageBreak
5611    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5612 \else
5613   \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}
5614 \fi
```

```

\if@mtc@setformat@ The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value:
  \mtc@tmpfm@name
  \mtc@mtf@abbrev 5615 \if@mtc@setformat@
\mtc@fparam@abbrev 5616 \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}
                    5617 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0016>]{minitoc}%
                    5618 {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
                    5619 \MessageBreak
                    5620 "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\string#3"}
                    5621 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{#3}
                    5622 \else
                    5623 \mtcPackageError[<E0025>]{minitoc}%
                    5624 {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
                    5625 \MessageBreak
                    5626 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
                    5627 {Correct the source code.
                    5628 \MessageBreak
                    5629 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
                    5630 \fi
                    5631 }

```

9.66.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ We define some flags:
  \if@mtc@spn@ok@
                    5632 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
                    5633 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@

```

```

\mtcsetpagenumbers We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
  \@ifundefined \mtcsetpagenumbers@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro
\mtcsetpagenumbers@ only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

```

5634 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
5635   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5636   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5637   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}
5638   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}

```

```

5639     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
5640     \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5641     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}}
5642     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}}
5643     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
5644     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5645     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}}
5646     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}}
5647     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
5648     \else
5649     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
5650     \fi
5651 }

```

\mtcsetpagenumber@ Then the \mtcsetpagenumbers@ internal macro, with two arguments:

```

5652 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%

```

\mtc@mttpn@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family, and store the result in
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@mttpn@abbrev:

```

5653 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5654 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
5655 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
5656 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5657   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5658   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5659   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5660   \mtcPackageError[<E0017>]{minitoc}%
5661     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
5662     \MessageBreak
5663     argument (#1)}%
5664     {It should be a mini-table type
5665     \MessageBreak
5666     (parttoc...sectlot)
5667     \MessageBreak
5668     Correct the source code.
5669     \MessageBreak
5670     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5671 \else
5672   \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5673 \fi

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5674 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 5675 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
5676   \@mtc@spn@ok@false

```

```

5677 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5678 \def\mtc@mtt@abbrev{X}
5679 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5680 \def\mtc@mtt@abbrev{X}
5681 \mtcPackageError[<E0018>]{minitoc}%
5682   {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
5683   \MessageBreak
5684   argument (#2)}%
5685   {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
5686   \MessageBreak
5687   Correct the source code.
5688   \MessageBreak
5689   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5690 \else
5691   \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5692   \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
5693   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5694   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mtt@abbrev pagenumbers}
5695   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5696     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0022>]{minitoc}%
5697     {Page numbers are inhibited
5698     \MessageBreak
5699     for the #1s}
5700   \else
5701     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0021>]{minitoc}%
5702     {Page numbers are activated
5703     \MessageBreak for the #1s}
5704   \fi
5705   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5706 \fi
5707 }

```

9.66.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```

\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
\if@mtc@sru@ok@
5708 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
5709 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@

```

`\mtcsetrules` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetrules@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

5710 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
5711   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5712   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5713   {\mtcsetrules@parttoc}{#2}
5714   \mtcsetrules@partlof}{#2}
5715   \mtcsetrules@partlot}{#2}}
5716 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5717 {\mtcsetrules@minitoc}{#2}
5718 \mtcsetrules@minilof}{#2}
5719 \mtcsetrules@minilot}{#2}}
5720 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5721 {\mtcsetrules@secttoc}{#2}
5722 \mtcsetrules@sectlof}{#2}
5723 \mtcsetrules@sectlot}{#2}}
5724 \else
5725 \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
5726 \fi
5727 }
```

`\mtcsetrules@` Then the `\mtcsetrules@` internal macro, which has two arguments:

```

5728 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in a macro `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:
`\if@mtc@setrules@`
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev`

```

\@nameuse 5729 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5730 \@mtc@setrules@true
5731 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
5732 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5733   \@mtc@setrules@false
5734   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5735   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5736   \mtcPackageError[<E0019>]{minitoc}%
5737   {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
5738    \MessageBreak
5739    (#1)}%
5740   {It should be a mini-table type
5741    \MessageBreak
5742    (parttoc...sectlot)
5743    \MessageBreak
5744    Correct the source code.
5745    \MessageBreak
5746    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5747 \else
5748   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
```


5749 \fi

```

\if@mtc@sru@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in a macro
\mtc@rusw@abbrev \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttru@abbrev
if@setrules@false 5750 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 5751 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 5752 \mtc@sru@ok@false
5753 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5754 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5755 \@mtc@setrules@false
5756 \mtcPackageError[<E0020>]{minitoc}%
5757 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
5758 \MessageBreak
5759 (#2)}%
5760 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
5761 \MessageBreak
5762 Correct the source code.
5763 \MessageBreak
5764 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5765 \else
5766 \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5767 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
5768 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5769 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
5770 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5771 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0008>]{minitoc}%
5772 {Horizontal rules are inhibited
5773 \MessageBreak
5774 for the #1s}
5775 \else
5776 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0007>]{minitoc}%
5777 {Horizontal rules are activated
5778 \MessageBreak
5779 for the #1s}
5780 \fi
5781 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5782 \fi
5783 }

```

9.66.8 The \mtcsetfeature command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “thispage” is used.

A family (ltypetable) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```
5784 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
```

```

5785 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
5786 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
5787 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
5788 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
5789 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
5790 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
5791 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
5792 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

5793 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
5794   \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
5795 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
5796   \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
5797 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
5798   \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

5799 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
5800 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
5801 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
5802   \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:
`\mtcsetfeature`

```

5803 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
5804 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`:

```

5805 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5806 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5807 \@mtc@setfeature@true
5808 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5809   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5810   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}

```

```

5811 \mtcPackageError[<E0011>]{minitoc}%
5812 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
5813 \MessageBreak
5814 (#1).
5815 \MessageBreak
5816 It should be a mini-table type
5817 \MessageBreak
5818 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5819 {Correct the source code.
5820 \MessageBreak
5821 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5822 \else
5823 \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5824 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in
\mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted
\mtc@featparam@third as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.
\@nameuse

```

5825 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5826 \@mtc@setfeature@false
5827 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5828 \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
5829 \mtcPackageError[<E0012>]{minitoc}%
5830 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
5831 \MessageBreak
5832 (#2).
5833 \MessageBreak
5834 It should be a feature param
5835 \MessageBreak
5836 (before, after, pagestyle)}}%
5837 {Correct the source code.
5838 \MessageBreak
5839 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5840 \else
5841 \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
5842 \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
5843 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces
\mtc@tmpfeat@name (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third
\mtc@featparam@abbrev respectively), then this macro is executed:
\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@third

```

5844 \if@mtc@setfeature@
5845 \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
5846 {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}
5847 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0014>]{minitoc}%
5848 {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
5849 \MessageBreak
5850 "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as

```

```

5851     \MessageBreak
5852     "\string#3"}
5853     \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{#3}
5854 \else
5855     \mtcPackageError[<E0023>]{minitoc}%
5856     {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
5857     \MessageBreak
5858     first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5859     {Correct the source code.
5860     \MessageBreak
5861     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5862 \fi}

```

9.66.9 The `\mtcsetdepth` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetttitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the `subfig` package [109]).



`\if@mtc@setdepth@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5863 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

`\mtcsetdepth` Then we define the `\mtcsetdepth` command, with two arguments:

```
5864 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtade@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family. The result is stored in
`\if@mtc@setdepth@` `\mtc@mtade@abbrev:`
`\@nameuse`

```

5865 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5866 \@mtc@setdepth@true
5867 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5868     \@mtc@setdepth@false
5869     \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5870     \mtcPackageError[<E0009>]{minitoc}%
5871     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
5872     \MessageBreak
5873     (#1).
5874     \MessageBreak
5875     It should be a mini-table type
5876     \MessageBreak

```

```

5877      (parttoc...sectlot))}%
5878      {Correct the source code.
5879      \MessageBreak
5880      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5881 \else
5882   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5883 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:
\mtc@tmpde@name
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 5884 \if@mtc@setdepth@
\mtc@toks 5885   \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
\setcounter 5886   \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
5887     {\mtcPackageError[<E0008>]{minitoc}%
5888     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
5889     \MessageBreak
5890     an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
5891     {Correct the source code.
5892     \MessageBreak
5893     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
5894   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
5895   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0013>]{minitoc}%
5896   {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
5897   \MessageBreak
5898   "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5899   \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
5900 \else
5901   \mtcPackageError[<E0010>]{minitoc}%
5902   {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
5903   {Correct the source code.
5904   \MessageBreak
5905   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5906 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

9.67 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```

5907 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false

```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
\mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
\arabic
\addtocontents
\setcounter

```

```

5908 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
5909 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
5910 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
5911 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[<E0005>]{minitoc}%
5912   {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
5913   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
5914 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
5915 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5916 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5917 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0031>]{minitoc}%
5918   {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
5919   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
5920 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5921 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth First, for the list of figures:

```

\mtc@svf@tocdepth
\arabic 5922 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\addtocontents 5923 \AtBeginDocument{%
\setcounter 5924 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
5925   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5926   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
5927     {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5928     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5929   \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5930   \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5931   \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5932   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5933   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5934   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
5935     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5936     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5937   \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5938   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5939 }}%
5940 %
5941 \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
5942 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
5943 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5944 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
5945   {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5946   {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5947 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5948 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
5949 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5950 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
5951   {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5952   {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi

```

```

5953 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
5954 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 5955 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 5956 \AtBeginDocument{%
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 5957 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 5958 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
\arabic 5959 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
\addtocontents 5960 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
\setcounter 5961 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5962 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5963 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5964 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5965 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5966 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5967 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
5968 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5969 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5970 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5971 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5972 }}%
5973 {%
5974 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
5975 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
5976 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
5977 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
5978 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
5979 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5980 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5981 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
5982 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{lotdepth}{#1}}}%
5983 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
5984 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5985 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5986 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5987 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restorelotdepth}}}}

```

9.68 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

`\@ifundefined` Depending on the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@glofix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

5988 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5989   \@ifundefined{section}%
5990     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0001>]{minitoc}%
5991      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5992       \MessageBreak
5993       Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
5994       \MessageBreak
5995       optional argument [part]}}%
5996   \@ifundefined{part}%
5997     {\mtcPackageError[<E0001>]{minitoc}%
5998      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5999      {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
6000   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0006>]{minitoc}%
6001    {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
6002     \MessageBreak
6003     with the [part] optional argument,
6004     \MessageBreak
6005     which becomes the default}}%
6006   \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
6007   }}%
6008   {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
6009 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

`\if@mtcfixglossary@` Then we define a flag (`\if@mtcfixglossary@`) and the command `\mtcfixglossary`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

`\mtcfixglossary`

`\addcontentsline`

```

6010 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \@mtcfixglossary@false
6011 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
6012   \@mtcfixglossary@false
6013   \expandafter%
6014   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6015   \expandafter%
6016   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6017   \expandafter%
6018   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6019   \if@mtcfixglossary@
6020     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
6021     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
6022     \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
6023   \else
6024     \mtcPackageError[<E0026>]{minitoc}%
6025     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
6026      \MessageBreak
6027      is wrong}%
6028     {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6029   \fi
6030 }%

```


9.69 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

`\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]`

`\@ifundefined` Depending on the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@ixfix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

6031 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6032   \@ifundefined{section}%
6033     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0002>]{minitoc}%
6034      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6035       \MessageBreak
6036       Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
6037       \MessageBreak
6038       optional argument [part]}}%
6039   \@ifundefined{part}%
6040     {\mtcPackageError[<E0002>]{minitoc}%
6041      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6042      {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
6043   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0007>]{minitoc}%
6044    {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
6045     \MessageBreak
6046     the [part] optional argument,
6047     \MessageBreak
6048     which becomes the default}}%
6049   \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
6050 }}%
6051 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
6052 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

`\if@mtcfixindex@` Then we define a flag and the command `\mtcfixindex`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
`\mtcfixindex`
`\addcontentsline`

```

6053 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
6054 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
6055   \@mtcfixindex@false
6056   \expandafter%
6057   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6058   \expandafter%
6059   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6060   \expandafter%
6061   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6062   \if@mtcfixindex@
6063     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
```

```

6064 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
6065 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
6066 \else
6067 \mtcPackageError[<E0027>]{minitoc}%
6068     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
6069     \MessageBreak
6070     is wrong}%
6071     {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6072 \fi
6073 }%

```

9.70 The \mtcselectlanguage command

`\mtcselectlanguage` This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language.mld* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag `\if@mtc@insellang@` is true while we are in this macro.

```

\@input
6074 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
6075 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
6076     \@mtc@insellang@true
6077     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6078     {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0010>]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
6079     \MessageBreak
6080     }}%
6081     {\mtcPackageError[<E0006>]{minitoc}%
6082     {#1 is not a known language,
6083     \MessageBreak
6084     #1.mld not found.
6085     \MessageBreak
6086     Command ignored}%
6087     {See the minitoc documentation.
6088     \MessageBreak
6089     Correct the source using a valid language name.
6090     \MessageBreak
6091     Press RETURN}}%
6092 \@mtc@insellang@false
6093 }

```

9.71 The \mtcloadmlo internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some *.mld* files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of *minitoc.dtx*. The *.mlo* files are generated by *filecontents* environments in the *minitoc.ins* file. But first, we verify that this *.mlo* file exists.

This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag
\if@mtc@insellang@



```

6094 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6095     \if@mtc@insellang@
6096     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6097     {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0011>]{minitoc}%
6098      {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6099       \MessageBreak}}%
6100     {\mtcPackageError[<E0007>]{minitoc}%
6101      {#1 is not a known minitoc
6102       \MessageBreak
6103       language object file (.mlo),
6104       \MessageBreak
6105       #1.mlo not found.
6106       \MessageBreak
6107       Command ignored}%
6108      {See the minitoc documentation.
6109       \MessageBreak
6110       Correct the source using a valid language name.
6111       \MessageBreak
6112       Press RETURN}}%
6113     \else
6114     \mtcPackageError[<E0032>]{minitoc}%
6115     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6116     \MessageBreak
6117     outside of a .mld file}%
6118     {It will be ignored}
6119     \@mtc@insellang@false
6120 \fi}

```

9.72 The “coffee breaks”

\addcoffeeline For the minutes package [219] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we define \addcoffeeline, \coffeeline and \l@coffee, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

\l@coffee

\@Undottedtocline

```

6121 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
6122     \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
6123 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
6124 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}

```

9.73 Initialization of counters

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.
`\@ifundefined`
`\setcounter`

```

6125 \AtBeginDocument{%
6126 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
6127 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
6128 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

9.74 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

9.74.1 Options **tight** and **loose**, **k-tight** and **k-loose**

`\DeclareOption` These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.
`\iftightmtc`
`\ifktightmtc`

```

6129 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
6130 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
6131 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
6132 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default

```

9.74.2 Options **checkfiles** and **nocheckfiles**

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.
`\if@mtc@checkfiles`

```

6133 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
6134 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}

```

9.74.3 Options **dotted** and **undotted**

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
`\ifundottedmtc`

```

6135 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
6136 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default

```

9.74.4 Option notoccite

```
\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [8].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
6137 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

9.74.5 Option shorttext

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@longextensions@
6138 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{%
6139   \@longextensions@false
6140   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0020>]{minitoc}%
6141     {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

9.75 The insection option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` This option is available only if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined. It is to be revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)¹².

```
6142 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
6143 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6144   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
6145     \mtcPackageError[<E0035>]{minitoc}%
6146       {You have used the 'insection' option in
6147         \MessageBreak
6148         a document where chapters are defined.
6149         \MessageBreak
6150         This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
6151       {Remove this option.
6152         \MessageBreak
6153         Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6154       }%
6155     {%
6156       \DeclareOption{insection}%
6157         {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
6158       }%
6159   }}}
```

¹²Please, do not dream too much!

9.76 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document.maf*. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```
6160 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
6161 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
6162 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
```

9.77 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```
\mtc@LML
\MessageBreak
6163 \def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
6164 \def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
6165 \def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
6166     \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
6167     \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}
```

`\if@mtc@misslang` Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding *.mld* file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding *.mlo* file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\mtc@setlangopt` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

`\IfFileExists`

`\DeclareOption`

```
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6168 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 6169 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
6170     \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6171     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6172     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6173     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6174     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0050>]{minitoc}%
6175     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6176     \MessageBreak
6177     The "#1" language option
6178     \MessageBreak
6179     will not be available.
6180     \MessageBreak
6181     Please install it from a recent distribution
6182     \MessageBreak
6183     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6184 }%
6185 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
6186     \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
```

```

6187     {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
6188     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6189     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
6190     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0051>]{minitoc}%
6191     {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
6192     \MessageBreak
6193     The "#1" language option
6194     \MessageBreak
6195     will not be available.
6196     \MessageBreak
6197     Please install it from a recent distribution
6198     \MessageBreak
6199     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6200 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}%
6201     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6202     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6203     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0050>]{minitoc}%
6204     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6205     \MessageBreak
6206     The "#1" language option will not be available.
6207     \MessageBreak
6208     Please install it from a recent distribution
6209     \MessageBreak
6210     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6211     }%
6212 }%
6213 }%

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption 6214 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 6215 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6216 {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6217 {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6218 \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6219 \mtcPackageError[<E0038>]{minitoc}%
6220 {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
6221 \MessageBreak
6222 A mandatory minitoc language object file,
6223 \MessageBreak
6224 #1.mld, is not found.
6225 \MessageBreak
6226 We will try to continue with
6227 \MessageBreak
6228 current/default values}%
6229 {See the minitoc documentation.
6230 \MessageBreak
6231 Please fix your minitoc installation.
6232 \MessageBreak
6233 Press <return> to continue}%

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):

```

\ptctitle
\plftitle 6234 \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
\plttitle 6235 \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
\mtctitle 6236 \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
\mlftitle 6237 \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
\mlttitle 6238 \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
\stctitle 6239 \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
\slftitle 6240 \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
\slttitle 6241 \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
6242 \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
6243 }%

```

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document:

```

\if@mtc@misslang
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 6244 \AtEndDocument{%
  \MessageBreak 6245 \if@mtc@misslang
\mtc@listmisslanguages 6246 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0093>]{minitoc}%
  \@gobblethree 6247 {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
  6248 \MessageBreak
  6249 in your installation.
  6250 \MessageBreak
  6251 Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
  6252 \MessageBreak
  6253 in the \string\jobname.log file.
  6254 \MessageBreak
  6255 Please install the missing files from
  6256 \MessageBreak
  6257 a recent distribution
  6258 \MessageBreak
  6259 or from the CTAN archives}%
  6260 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0094>]{minitoc}%
  6261 {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
  6262 \MessageBreak
  6263 \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%
  6264 \fi
  6265 }%

```

\DeclareOption Each language option reads the corresponding *language.mld* file via the specialized macro \mtc@setlangopt, after verification by \mtc@setlangopt or \mtc@setlangopto (when a .mlo file is required), by \mtc@setlangoptm when the language is mandatory. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a *language.mld* file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as *american.mld* loads *english.mld*).

```

6266 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
6267 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
6268 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
6269 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%

```



```

6270 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
6271 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
6272 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
6273 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
6274 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
6275 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
6276 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
6277 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
6278 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
6279 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
6280 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
6281 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
6282 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
6283 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
6284 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
6285 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
6286 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
6287 \mtc@setlangopt{bi the}%
6288 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
6289 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
6290 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
6291 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
6292 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
6293 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
6294 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
6295 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
6296 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
6297 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
6298 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
6299 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
6300 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
6301 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%      % .mlo
6302 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%    % .mlo
6303 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
6304 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
6305 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%
6306 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
6307 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
6308 \mtc@setlangoptm{english}%      % mandatory
6309 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
6310 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
6311 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
6312 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
6313 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
6314 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
6315 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
6316 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
6317 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%      % .mlo
6318 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%      % .mlo
6319 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
6320 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
6321 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
6322 \mtc@setlangopt{francais}%
6323 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%

```

```

6324 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
6325 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
6326 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
6327 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
6328 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
6329 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
6330 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%
6331 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
6332 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
6333 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
6334 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
6335 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
6336 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
6337 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
6338 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul1}%           % .mlo
6339 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul2}%           % .mlo
6340 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul3}%           % .mlo
6341 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul4}%           % .mlo
6342 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul-u8}%         % .mlo
6343 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja1}%           % .mlo
6344 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja2}%           % .mlo
6345 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja-u8}%         % .mlo
6346 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%
6347 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
6348 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
6349 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
6350 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
6351 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
6352 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
6353 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
6354 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
6355 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
6356 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
6357 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
6358 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese}%         % .mlo
6359 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese2}%         % .mlo
6360 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese3}%         % .mlo
6361 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese4}%         % .mlo
6362 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese5}%         % .mlo
6363 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese6}%         % .mlo
6364 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
6365 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
6366 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
6367 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
6368 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
6369 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
6370 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
6371 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
6372 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
6373 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
6374 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
6375 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
6376 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
6377 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%

```

```

6378 \mtc@setlangopto{malayalam-omega}%      % .mlo
6379 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
6380 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
6381 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
6382 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
6383 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
6384 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
6385 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
6386 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
6387 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
6388 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
6389 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
6390 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
6391 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
6392 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
6393 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
6394 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
6395 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
6396 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
6397 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
6398 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
6399 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
6400 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
6401 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
6402 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
6403 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
6404 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
6405 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
6406 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
6407 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
6408 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca}%           % .mlo
6409 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca1}%          % .mlo
6410 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lh}%            % .mlo
6411 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyralt}%      % .mlo
6412 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrkoi}%      % .mlo
6413 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrwin}%      % .mlo
6414 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
6415 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
6416 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
6417 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
6418 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
6419 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
6420 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
6421 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
6422 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
6423 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
6424 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
6425 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
6426 \mtc@setlangopto{thai}%                  % .mlo
6427 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
6428 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
6429 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
6430 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
6431 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%

```

```

6432 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
6433 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%
6434 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
6435 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
6436 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
6437 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
6438 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
6439 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
6440 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
6441 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
6442 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%

```

9.78 The hints option

`\DeclareOption` We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:
`\if@mtc@hints@`

```

6443 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
6444 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}

```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` The hints option is made of three parts: the first, `\mtc@hints@begindoc`, is executed via `\AtBeginDocument` and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and examines some flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the `document.log` file and/or warnings on the screen and in the `document.log` file. Note that the hints option does not signal errors, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the \LaTeX run.

9.78.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for a `\AtBeginDocument` block):
`\mtc@hints@begindoc`

```

\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6445 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6446 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6447 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6448 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
6449 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
6450 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6451 {==> You requested the hints option

```

```

6452 \MessageBreak
6453 Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%

```

9.78.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [92]), and emit a warning,
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6454 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
6455   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6456     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0025>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6457     {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
6458       \MessageBreak
6459       It is incompatible
6460       \MessageBreak
6461       with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.78.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the appendix package [326]:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

6462 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
6463   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6464   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6465   {--- The appendix package is loaded.
6466     \MessageBreak
6467     See the minitoc package documentation
6468     \MessageBreak
6469     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.78.1.3 Hint about the tocibind package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocibind package [327]:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

6470 \@ifpackageloaded{tocibind}%
6471   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6472     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6473     {--- The tocibind package is loaded.
6474       \MessageBreak
6475       See the minitoc package documentation
6476       \MessageBreak
6477       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.78.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [191, 252, 281]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6478 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
6479   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6480     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6481     {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
6482       \MessageBreak
6483       See the minitoc package documentation
6484       \MessageBreak
6485       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6486 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
6487   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6488     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6489     {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
6490       \MessageBreak
6491       See the minitoc package documentation
6492       \MessageBreak
6493       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6494 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
6495   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6496     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6497     {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
6498       \MessageBreak
6499       See the minitoc package documentation
6500       \MessageBreak
6501       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.78.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the tocloft package [324]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6502 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
6503   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6504     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6505     {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
6506       \MessageBreak
6507       See the minitoc package documentation
6508       \MessageBreak
6509       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.78.1.6 Hint about the titletoc package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the titletoc package [39], and emit a warning, because this package is
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6510 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6511     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6512      \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6513       {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6514        \MessageBreak
6515         It is incompatible
6516        \MessageBreak
6517         with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.78.1.7 Hint about the placeins package

\@ifpackageloaded We test if the placeins package [9] is loaded and, if yes, we check that the right options are selected:
\if@mtc@ss@insection@

```

\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6518 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6519     {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6520      \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
6521      {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6522       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0031>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6523        {--- The placeins package is loaded
6524         \MessageBreak
6525          without the section option,
6526         \MessageBreak
6527          but minitoc used the insection option
6528         \MessageBreak
6529          which implies it. Try to inverse the
6530         \MessageBreak
6531          loading order and use consistent options.
6532         \MessageBreak
6533          You may have got a message
6534         \MessageBreak
6535         ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6536        }%
6537      \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6538      {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6539       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0084>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6540        {--- The placeins package is loaded
6541         \MessageBreak
6542          with the above option,
6543         \MessageBreak
6544          but minitoc used the insection option
6545         \MessageBreak
6546          which is incompatible with it.
6547         \MessageBreak
6548          Try to remove the above option
6549         \MessageBreak
6550          and use consistent options}%
6551        }{}%
6552      \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
6553      {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6554       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0085>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

6555      {--- The placeins package is loaded
6556      \MessageBreak
6557      with the below option,
6558      \MessageBreak
6559      but minitoc used the insection option
6560      \MessageBreak
6561      which is incompatible with it.
6562      \MessageBreak
6563      Try to remove the below option
6564      \MessageBreak
6565      and use consistent options}%
6566  }{}%
6567  \fi
6568  \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
6569  \@mtc@hints@given@true
6570  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0032>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6571  {--- The placeins package loaded is
6572  \MessageBreak
6573  too old. You should use a version
6574  \MessageBreak
6575  dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
6576  }%
6577  }{}%

```

9.78.1.8 Hint about the memoir class

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [331, 332, 334] is loaded:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

6578 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
6579  {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6580  \mtcPackageInfo[<I0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6581  {--- The memoir class is loaded.
6582  \MessageBreak
6583  See the minitoc package documentation
6584  \MessageBreak
6585  for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
6586  }{}%

```

9.78.1.9 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6587 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
6588  {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6589  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0026>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6590  {--- The amsart class is loaded.

```




```

6591      \MessageBreak
6592      It is incompatible
6593      \MessageBreak
6594      with the minitoc package}}}%
6595 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
6596   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6597    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0027>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6598     {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
6599     \MessageBreak
6600     It is incompatible
6601     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.78.1.10 Hint about the amsbook class

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
6602 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
6603   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6604    \mtcPackageInfo[<I0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6605     {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
6606     \MessageBreak
6607     See the minitoc package documentation
6608     \MessageBreak
6609     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6610   }}}%

```

9.78.1.11 Hint about the abstract package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the abstract package [325], then its options:
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6611 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
6612   {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
6613    \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
6614     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6615      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6616       {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
6617       \MessageBreak
6618       loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
6619       \MessageBreak
6620       You need to look at the
6621       \MessageBreak
6622       documentation to adjust.
6623       \MessageBreak}
6624     }}}%

```

9.78.1.12 Hint about the jura class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is *incompatible* with
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` minitoc:



```
6625 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6626     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6627     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0029>]{minitoc(hints)}}%
6628         {--- The jura class is loaded.
6629         \MessageBreak
6630         It is incompatible
6631         \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%
```

9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been
`\chapter` altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing a
`\section` `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when
`\AtBeginDocument` it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For
`\mtc@hints@part` each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its
`\mtc@hints@chapter` unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [277] may interfere,
`\mtc@hints@section` hence the formal precautions in the messages.

9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of `\part`

`\if@mtc@hints@w@` We check the alteration of `\part`, `\@part` and `\@spart`:
`\@ifundefined`
`\part` 6632 `\@mtc@hints@w@false`
`\mtc@hints@part` 6633 `\@ifundefined{part}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax`
`\@part` 6634 `\else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}`
`\mtc@hints@@part` 6635 `\@ifundefined{part}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@@part\relax`
`\@spart` 6636 `\else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}`
`\mtc@hints@@spart` 6637 `\@ifundefined{part}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` 6638 `\else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}`
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` 6639 `\if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%`
6640 `\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0030>]{minitoc(hints)}}%`
6641 `{--- The \string\part\space command is altered`
6642 `\MessageBreak`
6643 `after minitoc}`
6644 `\if@mtc@hyper@used@`
6645 `\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}}%`
6646 `{--- It may be the consequence`
6647 `\MessageBreak`
6648 `of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}`
6649 `\fi`
6650 `\fi`

9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of \chapter

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\@ifundefined
  \chapter 6651 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 6652 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 6653   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 6654 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 6655   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 6656 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6657   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6658 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6659   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0028>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6660     {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
6661       \MessageBreak
6662       after minitoc}
6663   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6664     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6665     {--- It may be the consequence
6666       \MessageBreak
6667       of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6668   \fi
6669 \fi

```

9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of \section

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\@ifundefined
  \section 6670 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 6671 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 6672   {\@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@sect 6673   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 6674   \@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@ssect 6675   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6676   \@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6677   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
6678 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6679   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0039>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6680     {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
6681       \MessageBreak
6682       after minitoc}
6683   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6684     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6685     {--- It may be the consequence
6686       \MessageBreak
6687       of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6688   \fi
6689   \relax\else\fi}{\fi}%

```

9.78.1.14 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]tableofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]tableofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6690 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6691 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
                  6692 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
                  6693 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 6694 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 6695 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6696 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 6697 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 6698 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6699 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
                  6700 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
                  6701 \def\listoftables%
                  6702 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents Then, their “fake” siblings:
\fake\tableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6703 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\fake\tableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 6704 \def\fake\tableofcontents%
\fake\listoffigures 6705 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6706 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fake\listoffigures
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 6707 \def\fake\listoffigures%
\fake\listoftables 6708 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6709 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fake\listoftables
                  6710 \def\fake\listoftables%
                  6711 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
                  6712 \fi

\mtc@hints@begin\doc And the \mtc@hints@begin\doc definition is finished (it begins in section 9.78.1 on page 388):
6713 }
```

9.78.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
6714 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

9.78.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

`\if@mtc@sect@floats@` We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

```
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6715 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 6716 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 6717 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 6718 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
6719 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

`\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@` If yes, we verify that the `placeins` package [9] has been loaded with the correct options or that the `insection` option of the `minitoc` package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6720 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
6721 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
6722 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0056>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6723 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
6724 \MessageBreak
6725 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
6726 \MessageBreak
6727 hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
6728 \MessageBreak
6729 option is recommended}%
6730 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
6731 \fi
6732 \fi
```

9.78.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 6733 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6734 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6735 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6736 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0062>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6737 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6738 \MessageBreak
6739 but not \string\doparttoc}
6740 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6741 \fi
6742 \fi
6743 \if@partlof@used@
6744 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
6745 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0060>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6746 {You have used \string\partlof,
6747 \MessageBreak
6748 but not \string\dopartlof}
6749 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6750 \fi
6751 \fi
6752 \if@partlot@used@
6753 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
6754 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0061>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6755 {You have used \string\partlot,
6756 \MessageBreak
6757 but not \string\dopartlot}
6758 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6759 \fi
6760 \fi
6761 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 6762 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6763 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6764 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 6765 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0059>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6766 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 6767 \MessageBreak
6768 but not \string\dominitoc}
6769 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6770 \fi
6771 \fi
6772 \if@minilof@used@
6773 \if@dominilof@used@\else
6774 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0057>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6775 {You have used \string\minilof,
6776 \MessageBreak
6777 but not \string\dominilof}
6778 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6779 \fi

```

```

6780 \fi
6781 \if@minilot@used@
6782   \if@dominilot@used@\else
6783     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0058>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6784     {You have used \string\minilot,
6785       \MessageBreak
6786       but not \string\dominilot}
6787   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6788 \fi
6789 \fi
6790 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
  \if@secttoc@used@
    \if@dosecttoc@used@ 6791 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6792 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 6793   \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6794   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0065>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 6795     {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6796       \MessageBreak
6797       but not \string\dosecttoc}
6798   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6799 \fi
6800 \fi
6801 \if@sectlof@used@
6802   \if@dosectlof@used@\else
6803     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0063>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6804     {You have used \string\sectlof,
6805       \MessageBreak
6806       but not \string\dosectlof}
6807   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6808 \fi
6809 \fi
6810 \if@sectlot@used@
6811   \if@dosectlot@used@\else
6812     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0064>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6813     {You have used \string\sectlot,
6814       \MessageBreak
6815       but not \string\dosectlot}
6816 \fi
6817 \fi
6818 \fi

```

9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6819 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6820 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6821 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 6822 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0075>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6823 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 6824 \MessageBreak
6825 but not \string\parttoc}
6826 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6827 \fi
6828 \fi
6829 \if@dopartlof@used@
6830 \if@partlof@used@\else
6831 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0076>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6832 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
6833 \MessageBreak
6834 but not \string\partlof}
6835 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6836 \fi
6837 \fi
6838 \if@dopartlot@used@
6839 \if@partlot@used@\else
6840 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0077>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6841 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
6842 \MessageBreak
6843 but not \string\partlot}
6844 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6845 \fi
6846 \fi
6847 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 6848 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6849 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 6850 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 6851 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0078>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 6852 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
\if@minilot@used@ 6853 \MessageBreak
6854 but not \string\minitoc}
6855 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6856 \fi
6857 \fi
6858 \if@dominilof@used@
6859 \if@minilof@used@\else
6860 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0079>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6861 {You have used \string\dominilof,
6862 \MessageBreak
6863 but not \string\minilof}
6864 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6865 \fi

```



```

6866 \fi
6867 \if@dominilot@used@
6868 \if@minilot@used@\else
6869 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0080>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6870 {You have used \string\dominilot,
6871 \MessageBreak
6872 but not \string\minilot}
6873 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6874 \fi
6875 \fi
6876 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@ 6877 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6878 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6879 \if@secttoc@used@\else
\if@sectlof@used@ 6880 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0081>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6881 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
\if@sectlot@used@ 6882 \MessageBreak
6883 but not \string\secttoc}
6884 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6885 \fi
6886 \fi
6887 \if@dosectlof@used@
6888 \if@sectlof@used@\else
6889 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0082>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6890 {You have used \string\dosectlof,
6891 \MessageBreak
6892 but not \string\sectlof}
6893 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6894 \fi
6895 \fi
6896 \if@dosectlot@used@
6897 \if@sectlot@used@\else
6898 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0083>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6899 {You have used \string\dosectlot,
6900 \MessageBreak
6901 but not \string\sectlot}
6902 \fi
6903 \fi
6904 \fi
6905 \fi

```

9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); and similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6906 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6907 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6908 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6909 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0071>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6910 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6911 \MessageBreak
6912 \string\tableofcontents
6913 \MessageBreak
6914 nor \string\aketableofcontents}
6915 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6916 \fi
6917 \fi
6918 \if@partlof@used@
6919 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6920 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0069>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6921 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
6922 \MessageBreak
6923 \string\listoffigures
6924 \MessageBreak
6925 nor \string\akelistoffigures}
6926 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6927 \fi
6928 \fi
6929 \if@partlot@used@
6930 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6931 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0070>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6932 {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
6933 \MessageBreak
6934 \string\listoftables
6935 \MessageBreak
6936 nor \string\akelistoftables}
6937 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6938 \fi
6939 \fi
6940 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@minitoc@used@ 6941 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6942 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6943 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6944 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0068>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6945 {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6946 \MessageBreak
6947 \string\tableofcontents
6948 \MessageBreak
6949 nor \string\aketableofcontents}
6950 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6951 \fi
6952 \fi

```

```

6953 \if@minilof@used@
6954   \if@mtc@lof@used@ \else
6955     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0066>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6956     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
6957       \MessageBreak
6958       \string\listoffigures
6959       \MessageBreak
6960       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
6961   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6962   \fi
6963 \fi
6964 \if@minilot@used@
6965   \if@mtc@lot@used@ \else
6966     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0067>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6967     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
6968       \MessageBreak
6969       \string\listoftables
6970       \MessageBreak
6971       nor \string\fake\listoftables}
6972   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6973   \fi
6974 \fi
6975 \fi

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@secttoc@used@ 6976 \if@mtc@section@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6977 \if@secttoc@used@
\if@sectlof@used@ 6978   \if@mtc@toc@used@ \else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6979     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0074>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@sectlot@used@ 6980     {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6981       \MessageBreak
6982       \string\tableofcontents
6983       \MessageBreak
6984       nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
6985   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6986   \fi
6987 \fi
6988 \if@sectlof@used@
6989   \if@mtc@lof@used@ \else
6990     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0072>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6991     {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
6992       \MessageBreak
6993       \string\listoffigures
6994       \MessageBreak
6995       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
6996   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6997   \fi
6998 \fi
6999 \if@sectlot@used@
7000   \if@mtc@lot@used@ \else
7001     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0073>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

7002      {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
7003      \MessageBreak
7004      \string\listoftables
7005      \MessageBreak
7006      nor \string\fake\listoftables}
7007    \@mtc@hints@given@true
7008    \fi
7009  \fi
7010 \fi

```

9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
  \if@longextensions@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
    \if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
      \value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 13, either redesign the document.
  \if@mtc@chapter@def@
  \if@mtc@section@def@
7011 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
7012 \if@longextensions@
7013 \else
7014   \if@mtc@part@def@
7015     \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax
7016       \@mtc@hints@given@true
7017       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0054>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7018       {You have used short extensions
7019       \MessageBreak
7020       and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
7021     \fi
7022   \fi
7023   \if@mtc@chapter@def@
7024     \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax
7025       \@mtc@hints@given@true
7026       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0053>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7027       {You have used short extensions
7028       \MessageBreak
7029       and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
7030     \fi
7031   \else
7032     \if@mtc@section@def@
7033       \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax
7034         \@mtc@hints@given@true
7035         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0055>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7036         {You have used short extensions
7037         \MessageBreak
7038         and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
7039       \fi
7040     \fi
7041   \fi

```

¹³On the long term, a good investment.

```

7042 \fi}
7043 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.1 on page 256.

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7044 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@else
7045   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
7046     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0037>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7047     {The sectsty package should be
7048       \MessageBreak
7049       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7050     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7051   \fi
7052 \fi

```

9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.2 on page 256.

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7053 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@else
7054   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
7055     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0038>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7056     {The varsects package should be
7057       \MessageBreak
7058       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7059     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7060   \fi
7061 \fi

```

9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.3 on page 257.

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7062 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@else
7063   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
7064     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0086>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7065     {The fncychap package should be
7066       \MessageBreak
7067       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}

```

```

7068     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7069 \fi
7070 \fi

```

9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.4 on page 257.

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7071 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@else
7072 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
7073     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0092>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7074     {The hangcaption package should be
7075     \MessageBreak
7076     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7077     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7078 \fi
7079 \fi

```

9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.5 on page 257.

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7080 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@else
7081 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
7082     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0087>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7083     {The quotchap package should be
7084     \MessageBreak
7085     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7086     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7087 \fi
7088 \fi

```

9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.6 on page 257.

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7089 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@else
7090 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
7091     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0088>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7092     {The romannum package should be
7093     \MessageBreak

```

```

7094         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7095     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7096 \fi
7097 \fi

```

9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the `sfheaders` package

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if `sfheaders` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.7 on page 258.
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7098 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@else
7099     \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
7100         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0089>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7101         {The sfheaders package should be
7102         \MessageBreak
7103         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7104     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7105 \fi
7106 \fi

```

9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the `alnumsec` package

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if `alnumsec` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.8 on page 258.
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7107 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@else
7108     \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
7109         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0090>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7110         {The alnumsec package should be
7111         \MessageBreak
7112         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7113     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7114 \fi
7115 \fi

```

9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the `captcont` package

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if `captcont` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.9 on page 258.
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7116 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@else
7117     \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
7118         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0091>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7119         {The captcont package should be

```

```

7120      \MessageBreak
7121      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7122      \@mtc@hints@given@true
7123  \fi
7124 \fi

```

9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.10 on page 258.
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7125 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \else
7126   \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
7127     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0033>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7128     {The caption package should be
7129       \MessageBreak
7130       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7131     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7132   \fi
7133 \fi

```

9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.11 on page 259.
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7134 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \else
7135   \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
7136     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0034>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7137     {The caption2 package should be
7138       \MessageBreak
7139       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7140     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7141   \fi
7142 \fi

```

9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.12 on page 259.
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7143 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \else
7144   \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
7145     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0035>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```



```

7146     {The ccaption package should be
7147       \MessageBreak
7148       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7149     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7150   \fi
7151 \fi

```

9.78.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ section 9.9.13 on page 259.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7152 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \else
7153   \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
7154     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0036>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7155     {The mcaption package should be
7156       \MessageBreak
7157       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7158     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7159   \fi
7160 \fi

```

9.78.2.19 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ For parttocs:

```

7161 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
7162   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7163   {You have attempted to insert
7164     \MessageBreak
7165     empty parttocs}
7166   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7167 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ For partlofs:

```

7168 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
7169   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7170   {You have attempted to insert
7171     \MessageBreak
7172     empty partlofs}
7173   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7174 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

```

7175 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
7176   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7177   {You have attempted to insert
7178   \MessageBreak
7179   empty partlots}
7180   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7181 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` For minitocs:

```

7182 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
7183   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7184   {You have attempted to insert
7185   \MessageBreak
7186   empty minitocs}
7187   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7188 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilofs@` For minilofs:

```

7189 \if@mtc@empty@minilofs@
7190   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7191   {You have attempted to insert
7192   \MessageBreak
7193   empty minilofs}
7194   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7195 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilots@` For minilots:

```

7196 \if@mtc@empty@minilots@
7197   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7198   {You have attempted to insert
7199   \MessageBreak
7200   empty minilots}
7201   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7202 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@` For secttocs:

```

7203 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
7204   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7205   {You have attempted to insert
7206   \MessageBreak

```

```

7207     empty secttocs}
7208     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7209 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ For sectlofs:

```

7210 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
7211     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7212     {You have attempted to insert
7213     \MessageBreak
7214     empty sectlofs}
7215     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7216 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ For sectlots:

```

7217 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
7218     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7219     {You have attempted to insert
7220     \MessageBreak
7221     empty sectlots}
7222     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7223 \fi

```

9.78.2.20 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

\if@firstpartis@used@ Obsolete macro \firstpartis:

```

7224 \if@firstpartis@used@
7225     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0051>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7226     {You have invoked an obsolete
7227     \MessageBreak
7228     command: \string\firstpartis}
7229     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7230 \fi

```

\if@firstchapteris@used@ Obsolete macro \firstchapteris:

```

7231 \if@firstchapteris@used@
7232     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0050>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7233     {You have invoked an obsolete

```

```

7234 \MessageBreak
7235 command: \string\firstchapteris}
7236 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7237 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

```

7238 \if@firstsectionis@used@
7239 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0052>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7240 {You have invoked an obsolete
7241 \MessageBreak
7242 command: \string\firstsectionis}
7243 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7244 \fi

```

9.78.2.21 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the `hints` option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the `document.log` file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

```

7245 \if@mtc@hints@given@
7246 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0024>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7247 {Some hints have been written
7248 \MessageBreak
7249 in the \jobname.log file}
7250 \else
7251 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0019>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7252 {No hints have been written
7253 \MessageBreak
7254 in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
7255 \fi
7256 }

```

9.79 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, `english`:
`\ExecuteOptions`

```

7257 \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
7258 {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```

```

\mtcPackageError Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
\providecommand
  \ptctitle 7259      {\mtcPackageError[<E0036>]{minitoc}%
  \plftitle 7260      {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
  \plttitle 7261      \MessageBreak
  \mtctitle 7262      The minitoc language object file (.mld),
  \mlftitle 7263      \MessageBreak
  \mlttitle 7264      english.mld is not found.
  \stctitle 7265      \MessageBreak
  \slftitle 7266      We will try to continue with default values}%
  \slttitle 7267      {See the minitoc documentation.
  7268      \MessageBreak
  7269      Please fix your minitoc installation.
  7270      \MessageBreak
  7271      Press <return> to continue}%
  7272      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  7273      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  7274      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  7275      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  7276      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  7277      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  7278      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  7279      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  7280      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  7281      }%

```

\ProcessOptions* Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7282 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

9.79.1 Processing the insection option

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@ For the insection option, we load the placeins package [9] with its options verbose and
  \RequirePackage section, after the flafter package (described in [210] and [242, page 286]); the correct loading
  \@ifpackageloaded is verified:
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
  7283 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
  7284   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
  7285   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
  7286   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
  7287   {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
  7288 \fi

```

9.79.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [8]:
`\RequirePackage`

```
7289 \if@mtc@notoccite@
7290   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
7291 \fi
```

9.79.3 Processing the listfiles option

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file
`\tf@mtc` *document.maf*. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions),
`\if@longextensions@` then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the exist-
`\mtc@maf@long` ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes *docu-*
`\mtc@maf@short` *ment.mtc* in the list (but *not* the *document.maf*¹⁴ file). We must also check the existence of
`\mtc@addtomaf` `\jobname.mtc1` if long extensions are used.
`\IfFileExists`

```
\jobname 7292 \def\mtc@maf{%
7293   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0009>]{minitoc}%
7294   {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
7295   \MessageBreak
7296   Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
7297   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
7298   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
7299   \if@longextensions@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
7300   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
7301 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
7302   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
7303 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
7304   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7305   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7306     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
7307     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
7308     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
7309     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7310   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc1}}{%
7311     \loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7312       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
7313       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
7314       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
7315       \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7316   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7317     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
7318     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
7319     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
7320     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}
7321 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
```

¹⁴Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it must not be in the list.

```

7322      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7323 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7324      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
7325      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
7326      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
7327      \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7328 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7329      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
7330      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
7331      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
7332      \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7333 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7334      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
7335      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
7336      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
7337      \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` If this option is active, we call `\mtc@maf` in a `\AtEndDocument` block.

```

\AtEndDocument
\mtc@maf 7338 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}\else\fi

```

9.79.4 Processing the hints option

`\if@mtc@hints@` For the hints option, we set its first part in a `\AtBeginDocument` block and its third (last) part in a `\AtEndDocument` block:

```

\AtBeginDocument
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtEndDocument 7339 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 7340 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
7341 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
7342 \fi

```

9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the hints option executed in the preamble):

`\@ifundefined` For the `\part` command:

```

\mtc@hints@part
\part 7343 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 7344 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 7345 \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@@spart
\@spart

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter 7346 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 7347 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
\@chapter 7348 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
\@schapter

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
\section 7349 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@@sect 7350 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
\@sect 7351 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@ssect
\@ssect

```

9.80 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

\mtc@classck It may happen that you use a preparation command (like \dominitoc) or an insertion command (like \dominitoc) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like article). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in a \AtBeginDocument block.

```

7352 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
7353   \mtcPackageError[<E0037>]{minitoc}%
7354     {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
7355       \MessageBreak
7356       with the document class}%
7357     {Correct the source code.
7358       \MessageBreak
7359       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
7360 }

```

A \AtBeginDocument bloc:

```

\AtBeginDocument

7361 \AtBeginDocument{%

\providecommand Part-level preparation commands:
\doparttoc
\dopartlof 7362 \providecommand{\doparttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doparttoc}}%
\dopartlot 7363 \providecommand{\dopartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dopartlof}}%
7364 \providecommand{\dopartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dopartlot}}%

```



```

\dominitoc Chapter-level preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 7365 \providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominitoc}}%
7366 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
7367 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%

\dosecttoc Section-level preparation commands:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 7368 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
7369 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
7370 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot 7371 % \ifcase\LANG\relax
7372 % Part-level insertion commands:
7373 % \or\relax
7374 % Commandes d'insertion au niveau partie:
7375 % \fi
7376 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
7377 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
7378 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%

\minitoc Chapter-level insertion commands:
\minilof
\minilot 7379 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
7380 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
7381 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%

\secttoc Section-level insertion commands:
\sectlof
\sectlot 7382 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
7383 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
7384 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
7385 }

```

And the package is terminated.

```
7386 </minitoc>
```

9.81 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

`\jobname` This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set `\jobname`
`\input` to `fminitoc` in place of `minitoc`. As `minitoc.ins` generates the `minitoc.lan` and
`fminitoc.lan` files which set a language number `\LANG`, and `minitoc.dtx` reads then the
`\jobname.lan` file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)
in `minitoc.dtx`, the language being selected by `\ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...`
`\fi` constructs. The `\relax` primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```
7387 <fminitoc>
7388 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}%
7389           [2007/03/22 minitoc v53 french documentation start file]
7390 \input{minitoc.dtx}
7391 </fminitoc>
```

Chapter 10

Commented code of the mtcoff package

Contents

10.1	Why mtcoff?	420
10.2	Identification of the package	420
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	421
10.4	Faking simple commands	423
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	423
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	424
10.7	Disabling the font commands	425
10.8	Disabling the \mtcset... commands	426
10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands	426
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	427
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage command	427
10.12	Disabling the \mtcloadmlo command	427
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	427
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	428
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	428
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	429
10.17	Caution for some commands	429
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	431
10.19	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments	431
10.20	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands	431
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command	432
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command	432
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands	432

10.1 Why mtcoff?

The minitoc package [124, 125] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, mtcoff (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the minitoc package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the minitoc package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of minitoc. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of \LaTeX ¹; we need the mtcmess package
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7392 <*mtcoff>
7393 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7394 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2006/06/27 v30 The mtcoff package]
7395 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

¹ This checking is not really useful for the mtcoff package itself, but it is good to check that your version of \LaTeX is not too old to support minitoc.

10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

`\count@` As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using `\count@`
`\dimen@` or `\dimen@`. For `\mtcskipamount`, we must use its default definition, `\bigskipamount`.
`\c@minitocdepth`
`\mtcindent` 7396 `\let\c@minitocdepth\count@`
`\mtcskipamount` 7397 `\let\mtcindent\dimen@`
`\bigskipamount` 7398 `\let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount`
`\c@parttocdepth` 7399 `\let\c@parttocdepth\count@`
`\mtcindent` 7400 `\let\ptcindent\dimen@`
`\c@secttocdepth` 7401 `\let\c@secttocdepth\count@`
`\stcindent` 7402 `\let\stcindent\dimen@`

`\c@mtc` The basic mini-table counters are provided by `\count@`:
`\c@ptc`
`\c@stc` 7403 `\let\c@mtc\count@`
7404 `\let\c@ptc\count@`
7405 `\let\c@stc\count@`

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:
`\mtcgapafterheads`
7406 `\def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}`
7407 `\def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}`

`\@ifundefined` We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before
`\kernafterparttoc` the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros
`\kernafterpartlof` is used.
`\kernafterpartlot`
`\kernaftersecttoc` 7408 `\@ifundefined{part}{\}%`
`\kernaftersectlof` 7409 `\def\kernafterparttoc{%`
`\kernaftersectlot` 7410 `\mtcoffwarn>true`
`\kernafterminitoc` 7411 `\mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%`
`\kernafterminilof` 7412 `{The macro \string\kernafterparttoc`
`\kernafterminilot` 7413 `\MessageBreak`
7414 `should not be used out of context`
7415 `\MessageBreak}%`
7416 `\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%`
7417 `\def\kernafterpartlof{%`
7418 `\mtcoffwarn>true`
7419 `\mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%`
7420 `{The macro \string\kernafterpartlof`
7421 `\MessageBreak`
7422 `should not be used out of context`
7423 `\MessageBreak}%`
7424 `\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%`
7425 `\def\kernafterpartlot{%`

```

7426     \mtcoffwarn@true
7427     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7428     {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot
7429     \MessageBreak
7430     should not be used out of context
7431     \MessageBreak}%
7432     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7433     }%
7434 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7435 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7436     {%
7437     \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7438         \mtcoffwarn@true
7439         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7440         {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7441         \MessageBreak
7442         should not be used out of context
7443         \MessageBreak}%
7444         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7445     \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7446         \mtcoffwarn@true
7447         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7448         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7449         \MessageBreak
7450         should not be used out of context
7451         \MessageBreak}%
7452         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7453     \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7454         \mtcoffwarn@true
7455         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7456         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7457         \MessageBreak
7458         should not be used out of context
7459         \MessageBreak}%
7460         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7461         }%
7462     }%
7463     {%
7464     \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7465         \mtcoffwarn@true
7466         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7467         {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7468         \MessageBreak
7469         should not be used out of context
7470         \MessageBreak}%
7471         \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7472     \def\kernafterminilof{%
7473         \mtcoffwarn@true
7474         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7475         {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7476         \MessageBreak
7477         should not be used out of context
7478         \MessageBreak}%
7479         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%

```

```

7480      \def\kernafterterminilot{%
7481          \mtcoffwarn@true
7482          \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7483          {The macro \string\kernafterterminilot
7484            \MessageBreak
7485             should not be used out of context
7486            \MessageBreak}%
7487          \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7488      }%

```

10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\mtcskip   Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableofcontents 7489 \let\mtcskip\relax
\fakeableoftables 7490 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\adjustptc 7491 \let\fakeableoftables\relax
\adjustmtc 7492 \let\fakeableoftables\relax
\adjuststc 7493 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 7494 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 7495 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 7496 \let\decrementptc\relax
\decrementstc 7497 \let\decrementmtc\relax
\incrementptc 7498 \let\decrementstc\relax
\incrementmtc 7499 \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementstc 7500 \let\incrementmtc\relax
7501 \let\incrementstc\relax

```

```

\partend   The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 7502 \let\partend\relax
\sectend 7503 \let\partbegin\relax
\sectbegin 7504 \let\chapterend\relax
7505 \let\chapterbegin\relax
7506 \let\sectend\relax
7507 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

\gobbleopt@ The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal \LaTeX macro \ifnextchar (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command \gobbleopt@.

```

7508 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}

```

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doarttoc
\doartlof 7509 \def\doarttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\doartlot 7510 \def\doartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc 7511 \def\doartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof 7512 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot 7513 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7514 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 7515 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 7516 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minitoc 7517 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilof 7518 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilot 7519 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7520 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 7521 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 7522 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 7523 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 7524 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 7525 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7526 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
7527 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

10.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
\tf@mtc      \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 7528 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 7529 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter      7530 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter     7531 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect        7532 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart      7533 \let\pchapter\relax
\part         7534 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect      7535 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect

```



```

7536 \let\xpart\relax
7537 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
7538 \let\xsect\relax

```

10.7 Disabling the font commands

`\empty` We disable the minitoc font commands (like `\mtcSSfont`) with `\empty`, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here.

```

\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 7539 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 7540 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 7541 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 7542 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 7543 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 7544 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 7545 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 7546 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 7547 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 7548 \let\pltfont\empty
          7549 \let\pltSfont\empty
          7550 \let\ptifont\empty

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 7551 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 7552 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 7553 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 7554 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 7555 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 7556 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 7557 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 7558 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 7559 \let\mltfont\empty
          7560 \let\mltSfont\empty
          7561 \let\mtifont\empty

```

```

\stcfont   Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 7562 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont   7563 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont  7564 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont    7565 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont   7566 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont    7567 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont   7568 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont    7569 \let\sltfont\empty
            7570 \let\sltSfont\empty
            7571 \let\stifont\empty

```

\coffeeFont Font for “coffee” ☕ lines:

```
7572 \let\coffeeFont\empty
```

10.8 Disabling the \mtcset... commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetfont 7573 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 7574 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 7575 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 7576 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 7577 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 7578 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 7579 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
            7580 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

10.9 Disabling the new \l@... commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectioning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 7581 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 7582 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 7583 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 7584 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
                    7585 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
                    7586 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
                    7587 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 7588 \let\firstpartis\@gobble
\firstsectionis 7589 \let\firstchapteris\@gobble
7590 \let\firstsectionis\@gobble

```

10.11 Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
7591 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble

```

10.12 Disabling the \mtcloadmlo command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcloadmlo
7592 \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

10.13 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule 7593 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 7594 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule 7595 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 7596 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule 7597 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 7598 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule 7599 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 7600 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule 7601 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 7602 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule 7603 \let\noslfrule\relax
\nopltrule 7604 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule 7605 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 7606 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule 7607 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 7608 \let\sltrule\relax

```

```
7609 \let\sltrule\relax
7610 \let\nosltrule\relax
```

10.14 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```
\ptcpagenumbers  These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers  7611 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 7612 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers  7613 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 7614 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers  7615 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 7616 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers  7617 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 7618 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers  7619 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 7620 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers  7621 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7622 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers  7623 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 7624 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers  7625 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 7626 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers  7627 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7628 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax
```

10.15 Disabling the mini-table features commands

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

```
\renewcommand{\beforeparttoc}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

```
\beforeparttoc  Commands for part level mini-tables:
\nbeforepartlof
\nbeforepartlot  7629 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
\nafterparttoc  7630 \let\nbeforepartlof\empty
\nafterpartlof  7631 \let\nbeforepartlot\empty
\nafterpartlot  7632 \let\nafterparttoc\empty
\nthispageparttocstyle 7633 \let\nafterpartlof\empty
\nthispagepartlofsty 7634 \let\nafterpartlot\empty
\nthispagepartlotstyle
```

```

7635 \let\thispageparttocstyle\empty
7636 \let\thispagepartlofsty\empty
7637 \let\thispagepartlotstyle\empty

```

```

\beforeminitoc  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 7638 \let\beforeminitoc\empty
\afterminitoc  7639 \let\beforeminilof\empty
\afterminilof  7640 \let\beforeminilot\empty
\afterminilot  7641 \let\afterminitoc\empty
\thispagemininitocstyle 7642 \let\afterminilof\empty
\thispageminilofstyle  7643 \let\afterminilot\empty
\thispageminilotstyle  7644 \let\thispagemininitocstyle\empty
\thispageminilofstyle  7645 \let\thispageminilofstyle\empty
\thispageminilotstyle  7646 \let\thispageminilotstyle\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot  7647 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc   7648 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof   7649 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot   7650 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 7651 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\thispagesectlofsty  7652 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7653 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\thispagesectlofsty  7654 \let\thispagesectlofsty\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7655 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

10.16 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@longextensions@  There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 7656 \newif\if@longextensions@ \@longextensions@true
\ifundottedmtc 7657 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
\l@listof 7658 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 7659 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
\chapter 7660 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
7661 \let\l@listof\chapter

```

10.17 Caution for some commands

```

\AtBeginDocument  Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to definitely stop using
\ifmtcoffwarn@

```



the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and a `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

7662 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
7663 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
7664   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<F0007>]{mtcoff}%
7665   {You should scan (backwards) your .log
7666   \MessageBreak
7667   file to find some commands needing
7668   \MessageBreak
7669   to be replaced if you decide to
7670   \MessageBreak
7671   DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
7672   \MessageBreak
7673   document. It is more wise to keep the
7674   \MessageBreak
7675   \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
7676   \MessageBreak
7677   and to comment out only one of them}
7678 \fi}

```

```

\mtcaddchapter Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the
\mtcaddsection line number):
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@
\mtc@ck 7679 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7680   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0004>]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 7681   {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
7682   \MessageBreak
7683   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7684   \MessageBreak}
7685 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7686 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7687 \else
7688   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
7689 \fi}
7690 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7691   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0006>]{mtcoff}%
7692   {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
7693   \MessageBreak
7694   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7695   \MessageBreak}
7696 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7697 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7698 \else
7699   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7700 \fi}
7701 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7702   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0005>]{mtcoff}%
7703   {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
7704   \MessageBreak
7705   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7706   \MessageBreak}

```

```

7707 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7708 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7709 \else
7710 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7711 \fi}

```

10.18 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 7712 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 7713 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
7714 \let\l@coffee\relax
7715 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
7716 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

10.19 Disabling the `mtchideinmain...` environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc  These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 7717 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
                  7718   {\empty}{\empty}
                  7719 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
                  7720   {\empty}{\empty}
                  7721 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
                  7722   {\empty}{\empty}

```

10.20 Inhibition of the \mtc@[save|restore]XXXdepth internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcoff package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 7723 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 7724 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
7725 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
7726 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
7727 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
7728 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixglossary` command

`\mtcfixglossary` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7729 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax]
```

10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7730 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but `mtcoff` simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

```
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection 7731 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
\addcontentsline 7732 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0002>]{mtcoff}%
7733 {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
7734 \MessageBreak
7735 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7736 \MessageBreak}
7737 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
7738 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7739 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0001>]{mtcoff}%
7740 {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
7741 \MessageBreak
7742 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7743 \MessageBreak}
7744 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
7745 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7746 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0003>]{mtcoff}%
7747 {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
7748 \MessageBreak
7749 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7750 \MessageBreak}
7751 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

And the `mtcoff` package is terminated.

```
7752 </mtcoff>
```


Chapter 11

Commented code of the mtcmess package

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 7753 <{*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 7754 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 7755 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 7756 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][[]%
7757     {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7758 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][[]%
7759     {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7760 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][[]%
7761     {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7762 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][[]%
7763     {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
7764 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

¹ By example, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

Chapter 12

Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.



```
7765 (*mtcpatchmem)
7766 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7767 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
7768   [2007/03/22 v53 Package mtcpatchmem]
7769 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
7770 \mtcPackageInfo[<M0001>]{mtcpatchmem}%
7771   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
7772 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][ ]{%
7773   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
7774   \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
7775 }
7776 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
7777 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
7778 % entry for all fields.
7779   \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
7780     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
7781     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
7782   \else
7783 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If |#1| is empty then only
7784 % one was found.
7785     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
7786     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
7787       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
7788     \else
7789       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
7790     \fi
7791   \fi
7792   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth > \m@ne \relax
7793     \if@mainmatter
7794       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

7795     \fi
7796 \fi
7797 \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
7798 \ifartopt
7799     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7800     \@afterheading
7801 \else
7802     \insertchapterspace
7803     \if@twocolumn
7804         \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
7805     \else
7806         \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7807     \fi
7808     \@afterheading
7809 \fi
7810 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
7811     \if@mainmatter
7812         \ifanappendix
7813             \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
7814                 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7815         \else
7816             \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
7817                 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7818         \fi
7819     \else
7820         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7821     \fi
7822 \else
7823     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7824 \fi
7825 \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
7826 }
7827 </mtcpatchmem>

```

Chapter 13

The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

Contents

13.1	“Acadian” language: acadian.mld	440
13.2	“Acadien” language: acadien.mld	441
13.3	“Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld	441
13.4	“Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld	442
13.5	“Albanian” language: albanian.mld	442
13.6	“American” language: american.mld	442
13.7	“Arab” language: arab.mld	443
13.8	“Arab2” language: arab2.mld	443
13.9	“Arabi” language: arabi.mld	444
13.10	“Arabic” language: arabic.mld	444
13.11	“Armenian” language: armenian.mld	444
13.12	“Australian” language: australian.mld	445
13.13	“Austrian” language: austrian.mld	445
13.14	“Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld	445
13.15	“Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld	446
13.16	“Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld	446
13.17	“Bangla” language: bangla.mld	447
13.18	“Basque” language: basque.mld	447
13.19	“Bicig” language: bicig.mld	448
13.20	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld	449
13.21	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld	449
13.22	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld	450
13.23	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld	450
13.24	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld	451
13.25	“Breton” language: breton.mld	451
13.26	“British” language: british.mld	451
13.27	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld	452
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld	452
13.29	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld	453
13.30	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld	454

13.31	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld	454
13.32	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld	454
13.33	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld	455
13.34	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld	455
13.35	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld	455
13.36	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo	456
13.37	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo	456
13.38	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld	457
13.39	“Czech” language: czech.mld	457
13.40	“Danish” language: danish.mld	458
13.41	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld	458
13.42	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld	459
13.43	“English” language: english.mld	459
13.44	“English1” language: english1.mld	460
13.45	“English2” language: english2.mld	460
13.46	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld	461
13.47	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld	461
13.48	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld	462
13.49	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld	462
13.50	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld	463
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld	463
13.52	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo	464
13.53	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo	464
13.54	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld	465
13.55	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld	465
13.56	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld	466
13.57	“Francais” language: francais.mld	466
13.58	“French” language: french.mld	467
13.59	“French1” language: french1.mld	467
13.60	“French2” language: french2.mld	468
13.61	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld	469
13.62	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld	469
13.63	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld	469
13.64	“Galician” language: galician.mld	469
13.65	“German” language: german.mld	470
13.66	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld	471
13.67	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld	471
13.68	“Greek” language: greek.mld	472
13.69	“Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld	472
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld	473
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld	474
13.72	“Guarani” language: guarani.mld	475
13.73	“Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo	476
13.74	“Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo	476
13.75	“Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo	477
13.76	“Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo	477
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo	478
13.78	“Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo	478
13.79	“Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo	479
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo	479
13.81	“Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld	480
13.82	“Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	481
13.83	“Hindi” language: hindi.mld	481

13.84	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	482
13.85	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	482
13.86	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	483
13.87	“Indon” language: indon.mld	483
13.88	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	483
13.89	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	484
13.90	“Irish” language: irish.mld	484
13.91	“Italian” language: italian.mld	485
13.92	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	485
13.93	“Japanese” language: japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	486
13.94	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	486
13.95	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	487
13.96	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	487
13.97	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo	488
13.98	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	488
13.99	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	489
13.100	“Khalka” language: khalkha.mld	489
13.101	“Latin” language: latin.mld	489
13.102	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	490
13.103	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	491
13.104	“Letton” language: letton.mld	491
13.105	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	491
13.106	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	492
13.107	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	493
13.108	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	493
13.109	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	493
13.110	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	494
13.111	“Malay” language: malay.mld	494
13.112	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	495
13.113	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	495
13.114	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	496
13.115	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	496
13.116	“Manju” language: manju.mld	497
13.117	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	497
13.118	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	497
13.119	“Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	498
13.120	“Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	499
13.121	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	499
13.122	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	500
13.123	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	500
13.124	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	500
13.125	“Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	501
13.126	“Norsk” language: norsk.mld	501
13.127	“Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	502
13.128	“Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	502
13.129	“Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	503
13.130	“Polish” language: polish.mld	503
13.131	“Polish2” language: polish2.mld	504
13.132	“Polski” language: polski.mld	504
13.133	“Portuges” language: portuges.mld	505
13.134	“Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	505
13.135	“Romanian” language: romanian.mld	506

13.136 “Romanian2” language: <code>romanian2.mld</code>	506
13.137 “Romanian3” language: <code>romanian3.mld</code>	507
13.138 “Russian” language: <code>russian.mld</code>	507
13.139 “Russian2m” language: <code>russian2m.mld</code>	508
13.140 “Russian2o” language: <code>russian2o.mld</code>	509
13.141 “Russianb” language: <code>russianb.mld</code>	510
13.142 “Russianc” language: <code>russianc.mld</code>	511
13.143 “Russian-cca” language: <code>russian-cca.mld</code> and <code>russian-cca.mlo</code>	511
13.144 “Russian-cca1” language: <code>russian-cca1.mld</code> and <code>russian-cca1.mlo</code>	512
13.145 “Russian-lh” language: <code>russian-lh.mld</code> and <code>russian-lh.mlo</code>	512
13.146 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: <code>russian-lhcyralt.mld</code> and <code>russian-lhcyralt.mlo</code>	512
13.147 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: <code>russian-lhcyrkoi.mld</code> and <code>russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo</code>	513
13.148 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: <code>russian-lhcyrwin.mld</code> and <code>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo</code>	513
13.149 “Samin” language: <code>samin.mld</code>	514
13.150 “Scottish” language: <code>scottish.mld</code>	514
13.151 “Serbian” language: <code>serbian.mld</code>	515
13.152 “Serbianc” language: <code>serbianc.mld</code>	515
13.153 “Slovak” language: <code>slovak.mld</code>	516
13.154 “Slovene” language: <code>slovene.mld</code>	517
13.155 “Spanish” language: <code>spanish.mld</code>	517
13.156 “Spanish2” language: <code>spanish2.mld</code>	518
13.157 “Spanish3” language: <code>spanish3.mld</code>	518
13.158 “Spanish4” language: <code>spanish4.mld</code>	519
13.159 “Swedish” language: <code>swedish.mld</code>	519
13.160 “Swedish2” language: <code>swedish2.mld</code>	520
13.161 “Thai” language: <code>thai.mld</code> and <code>thai.mlo</code>	520
13.162 “Turkish” language: <code>turkish.mld</code>	521
13.163 “Uighur” language: <code>uighur.mld</code>	521
13.164 “Uighur2” language: <code>uighur2.mld</code>	522
13.165 “Uighur3” language: <code>uighur3.mld</code>	522
13.166 “UKenglish” language: <code>UKenglish.mld</code>	522
13.167 “Ukraineb” language: <code>ukraineb.mld</code>	522
13.168 “Ukrainian” language: <code>ukrainian.mld</code>	523
13.169 “Uppersorbian” language: <code>uppersorbian.mld</code>	523
13.170 “USenglish” language: <code>USenglish.mld</code>	524
13.171 “Usorbian” language: <code>usorbian.mld</code>	524
13.172 “Vietnam” language: <code>vietnam.mld</code>	525
13.173 “Vietnamese” language: <code>vietnamese.mld</code>	525
13.174 “Welsh” language: <code>welsh.mld</code>	525
13.175 “Xalx” language: <code>xalx.mld</code>	526
13.176 “Xalx2” language: <code>xalx2.mld</code>	526
13.177 “Xalx3” language: <code>xalx3.mld</code>	527

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details. It is loaded either via a package option¹ in the `\usepackage` command for the `minitoc` package, either via the command:

¹ It can also be a global option for the document.

<code>\ptctitle</code>	Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):		
<code>\plftitle</code>			
<code>\plttitle</code>			
<code>\mtctitle</code>	• <code>\ptctitle</code>	• <code>\mtctitle</code>	• <code>\stctitle</code>
<code>\mlftitle</code>	• <code>\plftitle</code>	• <code>\mlftitle</code>	• <code>\slftitle</code>
<code>\mlttitle</code>	• <code>\plttitle</code>	• <code>\mlttitle</code>	• <code>\slttitle</code>
<code>\stctitle</code>			
<code>\slftitle</code>			
<code>\slttitle</code>			



The acadian language⁵ is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 467):

⁵ Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiana.


```

7828 <*acadian>
7829 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
7830 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7831 </acadian>

```

13.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

The “acadien” language⁶ is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 467):

```

7832 <*acadien>
7833 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
7834 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7835 </acadien>

```

13.3 “Afrikaan” language: `afrikaan.mld`

The titles for the “afrikaan” language⁷ come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Stoffel LOMBARD) in the `babel` package [44–46]:

```

7836 <*afrikaan>
7837 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
7838 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
7839 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
7840 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
7841 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7842 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
7843 \def\pltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7844 %%
7845 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7846 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
7847 \def\mltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7848 %%
7849 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7850 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
7851 \def\sltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7852 </afrikaan>

```

⁶ Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

⁷ Spoken in South Africa, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.42 on page 459.

13.4 “Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld

The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load afrikaan.mld (see section 13.3 on the page before):

```
7853 <*afrikaans>
7854 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
7855 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
7856 </afrikaans>
```

13.5 “Albanian” language: albanian.mld

The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the albanian.dtx file (with a contribution of Adi Zaimi) in the babel package [44, 45, 90]:

```
7857 <*albanian>
7858 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
7859 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
7860 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
7861 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com).
7862 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7863 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
7864 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
7865 %%
7866 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7867 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
7868 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
7869 %%
7870 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7871 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
7872 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
7873 </albanian>
```

13.6 “American” language: american.mld

The “american” language is just like “english”⁸, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 459):

```
7874 <*american>
7875 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
7876 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7877 </american>
```

⁸ It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

13.7 “Arab” language: arab.mld

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the Arab \TeX package [198, 199] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7878 <*arab>
7879 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
7880 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty
7881 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
7882 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
7883 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7884 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7885 \def\pltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7886 %%
7887 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7888 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7889 \def\mltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7890 %%
7891 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7892 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7893 \def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7894 </arab>

```

13.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the Arab \TeX package [198, 199] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

7895 <*arab2>
7896 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
7897 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
7898 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
7899 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
7900 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok@a@tok}%
7901 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7902 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7903 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7904 %%
7905 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7906 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7907 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7908 %%
7909 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7910 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7911 \def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7912 </arab2>

```

13.9 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the *Arabi* package [178] (by Youssef JABRI), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7913 <*arabi>
7914 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]
7915 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty.
7916 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package,
7917 %% Youssef Jabri)
7918 %% (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
7919 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7920 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7921 \def\pltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7922 %%
7923 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7924 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7925 \def\mltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7926 %%
7927 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7928 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7929 \def\sltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7930 %%
7931 </arabi>

```

13.10 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.7 on the page before):

```

7932 <*arabic>
7933 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
7934 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
7935 </arabic>

```

13.11 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the *ArmTeX* package [114] (by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7936 <*armenian>
7937 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
7938 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

7939 %% from ArmTeX
7940 %% Sergueï Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
7941 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7942 \def\plftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
7943 \def\plttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
7944 %%
7945 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7946 \def\mlftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
7947 \def\mlttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
7948 %%
7949 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7950 \def\slftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
7951 \def\slttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
7952 </armenian>

```

13.12 “Australian” language: `australian.mld`

The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 459):

```

7953 < *australian>
7954 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
7955 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7956 </australian>

```

13.13 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.65 on page 470):

```

7957 < *austrian>
7958 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
7959 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
7960 </austrian>

```

13.14 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on the following page):

```

7961 <*bahasa>
7962 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
7963 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
7964 </bahasa>

```

13.15 “Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language⁹ (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 71]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.16. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.14 on the preceding page, 13.87 on page 483, and 13.88 on page 483.

```

7965 <*bahasai>
7966 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
7967 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
7968 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
7969 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
7970 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
7971 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
7972 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
7973 %%
7974 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
7975 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
7976 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
7977 %%
7978 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
7979 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
7980 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
7981 </bahasai>

```

13.16 “Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)¹⁰ are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 72]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.14 on the page before. For other names for this language, see sections 13.111 on page 494 and 13.117 on page 497.

```

7982 <*bahasam>
7983 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]
7984 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty

```

⁹ Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant.

¹⁰ Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

```

7985 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
7986 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry and Margolis, Bob
7987 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
7988 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
7989 \def\pltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
7990 %%
7991 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
7992 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
7993 \def\mltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
7994 %%
7995 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
7996 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
7997 \def\sltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
7998 </bahasam>

```

13.17 “Bangla” language: bangla.mld

The titles for the “bangla” language¹¹ are taken from the BangTeX package [263] (by Palash Baran PAL); they need specific fonts.

```

7999 < *bangla>
8000 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
8001 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
8002 %% from BangTeX
8003 %% Needs specific fonts
8004 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}%
8005 \def\plftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8006 \def\pltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8007 %%
8008 \def\mtctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8009 \def\mlftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8010 \def\mltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8011 %%
8012 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8013 \def\slftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8014 \def\sltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8015 </bangla>

```

13.18 “Basque” language: basque.mld

The titles for the “basque” language¹² are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [44, 45, 51], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

¹¹ Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India.

¹² Spoken in the Basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.

```

8016 <*basque>
8017 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
8018 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
8019 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
8020 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
8021 %% Needs special fonts
8022 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8023 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8024 \def\plttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8025 %%
8026 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8027 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8028 \def\mlttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8029 %%
8030 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8031 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8032 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8033 </basque>

```

13.19 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

The titles for the “bicig” language¹³ are taken from the MonT_EX package [110, 113]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 497, 13.20 on the following page, and 13.21 on the next page.

```

8034 <*bicig>
8035 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
8036 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
8037 %% needs mongol fonts
8038 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8039 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8040 \def\plttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8041 %%
8042 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8043 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8044 \def\mlttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8045 %%
8046 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8047 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8048 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8049 </bicig>

```

¹³The bicig is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur. See also section 13.163 on page 521.

13.20 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language¹⁴ are taken from the MonTeX package [110, 113]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 497, 13.19 on the preceding page, and 13.21.

```

8050 <*bicig2>
8051 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
8052 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8053 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8054 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8055 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8056 %%
8057 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8058 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8059 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8060 %%
8061 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8062 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8063 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8064 </bicig2>

```

13.21 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language¹⁵ are taken from the MonTeX package [110, 113]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 497, 13.19 on the preceding page and 13.20.

```

8065 <*bicig3>
8066 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
8067 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8068 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8069 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8070 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8071 %%
8072 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8073 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8074 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8075 %%
8076 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8077 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8078 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8079 </bicig3>

```

¹⁴The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig2 is a variant. See also section 13.164 on page 522.

¹⁵The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig3 is a variant. See also section 13.165 on page 522.

13.22 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language¹⁶ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [110, 113]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 497 and 13.116 on page 497. The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to eliminate all the ambiguities of Mongolian.

```

8080 < *bithe >
8081 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
8082 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8083 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8084 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8085 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8086 %%
8087 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8088 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8089 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8090 %%
8091 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8092 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8093 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8094 < /bithe >

```

13.23 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language¹⁷ are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (for portugese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 81]:

```

8095 < *brazil >
8096 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
8097 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty, from portuges.dtx (babel)
8098 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8099 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8100 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8101 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8102 %%
8103 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8104 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8105 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8106 %%
8107 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8108 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8109 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8110 < /brazil >

```

¹⁶The *bithe* is a written form of the *manju* variant of the mongolian language.

¹⁷It is the portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. These titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations. See section 13.134 on page 505.

13.24 “Brazilian” language: `brazilian.mld`

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.23 on the page before):

```
8111 <{*brazilian}
8112 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
8113 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8114 </brazilian>
```

13.25 “Breton” language: `breton.mld`

The titles for the “breton” language ¹⁸ are taken from `breton.dtx` file (by Christian ROLLAND) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 82]:

```
8115 <{*breton}
8116 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
8117 %% Breton titles for minitoc.sty
8118 %% from breton.dtx (babel)
8119 %% Rolland, Christian
8120 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8121 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8122 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8123 %%
8124 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8125 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8126 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8127 %%
8128 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8129 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8130 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8131 </breton>
```

13.26 “British” language: `british.mld`

The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 459):

```
8132 <{*british}
8133 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
8134 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8135 </british>
```

¹⁸Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany.

13.27 “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld

The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [44, 45, 56]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.28.

```

8136 <*bulgarian>
8137 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2007/03/08]
8138 %% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
8139 %% From bulgarian.dtx (babel) (needs special cyrillic fonts)
8140 %% by Boshnakov, Georgi <georgi.boshnakov at umist.ac.uk>
8141 \def\ptctitle{%
8142   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8143 \def\plftitle{%
8144   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8145     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8146 \def\pltttitle{%
8147   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8148     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8149 %%
8150 \def\mtctitle{%
8151   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8152 \def\mlftitle{%
8153   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8154     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8155 \def\mltttitle{%
8156   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8157     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8158 %%
8159 \def\stctitle{%
8160   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8161 \def\slftitle{%
8162   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8163     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8164 \def\sltttitle{%
8165   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8166     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8167 </bulgarian>

```

13.28 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) of the `babel` package [44, 45, 73, 208]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.27.

```

8168 <*bulgarianb>
8169 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
8170 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

8171 %% From russianb.dtx
8172 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
8173 \def\ptctitle{%
8174   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8175 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
8176   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8177 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
8178   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8179 %%
8180 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8181   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8182 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
8183   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8184 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
8185   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8186 %%
8187 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8188   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8189 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
8190   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8191 \def\slttitle{% Tablici
8192   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8193 </bulgarianb>

```

13.29 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

The titles for the “buryat” language¹⁹ are taken from the MonTeX package [110, 113]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.118 on page 497.

```

8194 <{*buryat}
8195 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
8196 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty
8197 %% Needs special fonts
8198 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8199 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8200 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8201 %%
8202 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8203 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8204 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8205 %%
8206 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8207 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8208 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8209 </buryat>

```

¹⁹Spoken in some regions of Mongolia, in the Buryat republic, near Lake Baikal.

13.30 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.29 on the preceding page) are taken from the MonTeX package [110, 113]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.118 on page 497.

```

8210 <*buryat2>
8211 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
8212 %% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
8213 %% Needs special fonts
8214 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8215 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8216 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8217 %%
8218 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8219 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8220 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8221 %%
8222 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8223 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8224 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8225 </buryat2>

```

13.31 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld

The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 459):



```

8226 <*canadian>
8227 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8228 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8229 </canadian>

```

13.32 “Canadien” language: canadien.mld

The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file french.mld (see section 13.58 on page 467):



```

8230 <*canadien>
8231 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
8232 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8233 </canadien>

```

13.33 “Castillan” language: castillan.mld

The “castillan” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the spanish.mld file (see section 13.155 on page 517):

```
8234 \*castillan)
8235 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
8236 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8237 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8238 \end{castillan}
```

13.34 “Castillian” language: castillian.mld

“Castillian” is just the english name for “castillan”, so we just load the spanish.mld file (see section 13.155 on page 517):

```
8239 \*castillian)
8240 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
8241 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8242 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8243 \end{castillian}
```

13.35 “Catalan” language: catalan.mld

The titles for the “catalan” language²⁰ are taken from the catalan.dtx file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the babel package [44, 45, 53]:

```
8244 \*catalan)
8245 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
8246 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty from catalan.dtx (babel) (Badenes, Gonçal)
8247 \def\ptctitle{\'Index}%
8248 \def\plftitle{\'Index de figures}%
8249 \def\plttitle{\'Index de taules}%
8250 %%
8251 \def\mtctitle{\'Index}%
8252 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8253 \def\mlttitle{Taules}%
8254 %%
8255 \def\stctitle{\'Index}%
8256 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8257 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
8258 \end{catalan}
```

²⁰Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona.

13.36 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.37.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```

8259 <*chinese1>
8260 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8261 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
8262 %%   for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8263 %%   created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8264 %%
8265 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8266 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
8267 %%
8268 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
8269 </chinese1>

```

13.37 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo

The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.36.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese2.mlo.

```

8270 <*chinese2>
8271 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8272 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
8273 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8274 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8275 %%
8276 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8277 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
8278 %%
8279 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
8280 </chinese2>

```


13.38 “Croatian” language: `croatian.mld`

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file (by Alan PAIĆ) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 78]:

```

8281 <*croatian>
8282 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8283 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
8284 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)
8285 %% Pai\{c}, Alan
8286 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8287 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
8288 \def\plttitle{Tablice}%
8289 %%
8290 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8291 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
8292 \def\mlttitle{Tablice}%
8293 %%
8294 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8295 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
8296 \def\slttitle{Tablice}%
8297 </croatian>

```

13.39 “Czech” language: `czech.mld`

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Milos LOKAJICEK) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 76]:

```

8298 <*czech>
8299 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2006/01/13]
8300 %% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
8301 %% from czech.dtx (babel)
8302 %% Lokajicek, Milos
8303 %% Warning: defines \w as a ring accent
8304 \def#w1{\accent'27 #1}
8305 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
8306 \def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
8307 \def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8308 %%
8309 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
8310 \def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
8311 \def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8312 %%
8313 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
8314 \def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
8315 \def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8316 </czech>

```

13.40 “Danish” language: danish.mld

The titles for the “danish” language are taken from the danish.dtx file (by Henning LARSEN) in the babel package [44, 45, 74]:

```

8317 (*danish)
8318 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
8319 %% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
8320 %% from danish.dtx (babel)
8321 %% Larsen, Henning
8322 \def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8323 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
8324 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
8325 %%
8326 \def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8327 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
8328 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
8329 %%
8330 \def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8331 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
8332 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
8333 </danish>

```

13.41 “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the devanagari.sty file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [265] (Devanāgarī). See also section 13.83 on page 481. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.

```

8334 (*devanagari)
8335 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]
8336 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles for minitoc.sty from devanagari.sty by
8337 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. and Wagner, Zden\v{e}k and
8338 %% Smith, John and Carmody, Kevin and Mahoney, Richard and Wujastyk, Dominik
8339 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8340 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8341 \def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8342 %%
8343 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8344 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8345 \def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8346 %%
8347 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8348 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8349 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8350 </devanagari>

```

13.42 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language are taken from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [44–46]:

```

8351 <*dutch>
8352 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
8353 % Dutch titles for minitoc.sty
8354 %% from dutch.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8355 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8356 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8357 \def\pltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8358 %%
8359 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8360 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8361 \def\mltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8362 %%
8363 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8364 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8365 \def\slttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8366 </dutch>

```

13.43 “English” language: english.mld

The titles for the “english” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 47]. *The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*



See also sections 13.6 on page 442, 13.12 on page 445, 13.26 on page 451, 13.31 on page 454, 13.122 on page 500, 13.166 on page 522, and 13.170 on page 524.

```

8367 <*english>
8368 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
8369 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8370 %% from english.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8371 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
8372 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
8373 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables}%
8374 %%
8375 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8376 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8377 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8378 %%
8379 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8380 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8381 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8382 </english>

```

13.44 “English1” language: english1.mld

The titles for the “english1” language come from the english.dtx file (written by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [44, 45, 47], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

8383 (*english1)
8384 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
8385 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8386 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8387 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
8388 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8389   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
8390   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8391 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8392   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
8393   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8394 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8395   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
8396   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8397 %%
8398 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8399 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8400 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8401 %%
8402 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8403 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8404 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8405 \end{english1}

```

13.45 “English2” language: english2.mld

The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the english.dtx file (written by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [44, 45, 47], with some adaptations for the titles at the part level.

```

8406 (*english2)
8407 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
8408 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8409 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8410 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
8411 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8412 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
8413 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
8414 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
8415 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
8416 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
8417 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or

```

```

8418 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
8419 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
8420 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8421 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8422 \def\plttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8423 %%
8424 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8425 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8426 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
8427 %%
8428 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8429 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8430 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8431 </english2>

```

13.46 “Esperant” language: `esperant.mld`

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 83]. The esperanto (artificial) language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF²¹ (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```

8432 <*esperant>
8433 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]
8434 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty
8435 %% from esperanto.dtx (babel)
8436 %% Ruiz-Altaba, Marti and Knappen. Jörg
8437 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8438 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8439 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8440 %%
8441 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
8442 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8443 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8444 %%
8445 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
8446 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8447 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8448 </esperant>

```

13.47 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.46):

²¹ See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.

```

8449 <*esperanto>
8450 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
8451 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8452 </esperanto>

```

13.48 “Estonian” language: estonian.mld

The titles for the “estonian” language are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the babel package [44, 45, 84]:

```

8453 <*estonian>
8454 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8455 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty
8456 %% from estonian.dtx (babel)
8457 %% Saar, Enn
8458 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8459 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
8460 \def\plttitle{Tabelid}%
8461 %%
8462 \def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
8463 \def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
8464 \def\mlttitle{Tabelid}%
8465 %%
8466 \def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
8467 \def\slftitle{Joonised}%
8468 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
8469 </estonian>

```

13.49 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the `ethiop` package [35] (written by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the next page.

```

8470 <*ethiopia>
8471 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
8472 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
8473 %% Needs special fonts
8474 \def\ptctitle{yezate}%
8475 \def\plftitle{%
8476   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8477   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8478 \def\plttitle{%
8479   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8480   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%

```

```

8481 %%
8482 \def\mtctitle{yezate}%
8483 \def\mlftitle{%
8484     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8485     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8486 \def\mltttitle{%
8487     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8488     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8489 %%
8490 \def\stctitle{yezate}%
8491 \def\slftitle{%
8492     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8493     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8494 \def\sltttitle{%
8495     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8496     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8497 </ethiopia>

```

13.50 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.49 on the preceding page). See also section 13.49 on the page before.

```

8498 <*ethiopian>
8499 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8500 %% Needs ethopian special fonts
8501 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
8502 </ethiopian>

```

13.51 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [35] (by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.49 on the preceding page.

```

8503 <*ethiopian2>
8504 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
8505 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
8506 %% Needs special fonts
8507 \def\ptctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
8508 \def\plftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d
8509     ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8510 \def\pltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
8511     ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%

```

```

8512 %%
8513 \def\mtctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8514 \def\mlftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8515   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8516 \def\mltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1230^1228^12e5
8517   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8518 %%
8519 \def\stctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8520 \def\slftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8521   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8522 \def\sltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1230^1228^12e5
8523   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8524 </ethiopian2>

```

13.52 “Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX [129] system²², by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.53.

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

```

8525 <farsi1>
8526 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
8527 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8528 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8529 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8530 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8531 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8532 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
8533 </farsi1>

```

13.53 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system [129]²², by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.52.

The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

²²By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>


```

8534 <farsi2>
8535 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
8536 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8537 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8538 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8539 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8540 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8541 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8542 </farsi2>

```

13.54 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the farsi.ldf file in the *Arabi* system[178], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

8543 <farsi3>
8544 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]
8545 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system
8546 %% by Youssef Jabri.
8547 \def\ptctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8548 \def\plftitle{\FR{lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8549 \def\pltttitle{\FR{lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8550 %%
8551 \def\mtctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8552 \def\mlftitle{\FR{lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8553 \def\mltttitle{\FR{lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8554 %%
8555 \def\stctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8556 \def\slftitle{\FR{lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8557 \def\sltttitle{\FR{lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8558 </farsi3>

```

13.55 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the finnish.dtx file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the babel package [44, 45, 69]. See also section 13.56 on the next page.

```

8559 <finnish>
8560 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
8561 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
8562 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8563 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8564 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8565 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%

```

```

8566 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8567 %%
8568 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8569 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
8570 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8571 %%
8572 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8573 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
8574 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8575 </finnish>

```

13.56 “Finnish2” language: `finnish2.mld`

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 69]. See also section 13.55 on the preceding page.

```

8576 <(*finnish2)
8577 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]
8578 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
8579 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8580 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8581 \def\ptctitle{Sis\allys}%
8582 \def\plfttitle{Kuvat}%
8583 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8584 %%
8585 \def\mtctitle{Sis\allys}%
8586 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
8587 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8588 %%
8589 \def\stctitle{Sis\allys}%
8590 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
8591 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8592 </finnish2>

```

13.57 “Francais” language: `francais.mld`

The “francais”²³ language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58 on the next page):

```

8593 <(*francais)
8594 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]
8595 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8596 </francais>

```

²³The right spelling is “français”, but I did not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

13.58 “French” language: french.mld

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the babel package [44, 45, 64]. See also sections 13.1 on page 440, 13.2 on page 441, 13.32 on page 454, 13.57 on the page before, 13.61 on page 469, 13.62 on page 469, and 13.63 on page 469.

```

8597 <(*french)
8598 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]
8599 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
8600 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
8601 %% Flipo, Daniel
8602 \def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
8603 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
8604 \def\pltttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
8605 %%
8606 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8607 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8608 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8609 %%
8610 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8611 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8612 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8613 </french>

```

13.59 “French1” language: french1.mld

The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx (by Daniel FLIPO) file in the babel package [44, 45, 64], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

8614 <(*french1)
8615 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
8616 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
8617 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
8618 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8619 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8620   Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8621   \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8622 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8623   Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8624   \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8625 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8626   Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8627   \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8628 %%
8629 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8630 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8631 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%

```

```

8632 %%
8633 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8634 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8635 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
8636 \french1

```

13.60 “French2” language: french2.mld

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel Flipo) in the babel package [44, 45, 64], with some adaptations for the part-level titles²⁴. See also section 9.5.7 on page 254, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the mtc-2nd.tex example file in section 4.2 on page 88.

```

8637 \french2
8638 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]
8639 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
8640 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
8641 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8642 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8643 \or premi\ere partie\or
8644 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\eme\fi} partie\or
8645 troisi\eme partie\or quatri\eme partie\or cinq\eme partie\or
8646 sixi\eme partie\or septi\eme partie\or huiti\eme partie\or
8647 neuvi\eme partie\or dixi\eme partie\or onzi\eme partie\or
8648 douzi\eme partie\or treizi\eme partie\or quatorzi\eme partie\or
8649 quinzi\eme partie\or seizi\eme partie\or dix-septi\eme partie\or
8650 dix-huiti\eme partie\or dix-neuvi\eme partie\or
8651 vingti\eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}
8652 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8653 Sommaire \else
8654 Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
8655 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8656 Liste des figures\else
8657 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
8658 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8659 Liste des tableaux\else
8660 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
8661 %%
8662 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8663 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8664 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8665 %%
8666 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8667 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8668 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
8669 \french2

```

²⁴This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

13.61 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 467.

```
8670 <frenchb>
8671 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
8672 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8673 </frenchb>
```

13.62 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 467.

```
8674 <frenchle>
8675 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
8676 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8677 </frenchle>
```

13.63 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 467.

```
8678 <frenchpro>
8679 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
8680 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8681 </frenchpro>
```

13.64 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language²⁵ are taken from the galician.dtx file, derived from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier BEZOS) (by Manuel CARRIBA and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA) in the babel package [44, 45, 59, 60]:

```
8682 <galician>
8683 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/02/01]
```

²⁵Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

```

8684%% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
8685%% from galician.dtx (babel)
8686%% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
8687%% Javier A. Múgica de Rivera (jmugica@digi21.net)
8688\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8689\def\ptctitle{\`Indice}%
8690\else
8691\def\ptctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
8692\fi
8693\def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
8694\def\plttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
8695%%
8696\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8697\def\mtctitle{\`Indice}%
8698\else
8699\def\mtctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
8700\fi
8701\def\mlftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
8702\def\mlttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
8703%%
8704\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8705\def\stctitle{\`Indice}%
8706\else
8707\def\stctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
8708\fi
8709\def\slftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
8710\def\slttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
8711</galician>

```

13.65 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [44, 45]. See also the section 13.13 on page 445.

```

8712<*german>
8713\ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
8714%% German titles for minitoc.sty
8715\def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8716\def\plftitle{Figuren}%
8717\def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8718%%
8719\def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8720\def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
8721\def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
8722%%
8723\def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8724\def\slftitle{Figuren}%
8725\def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8726</german>

```

13.66 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “`germanb`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 79]:

```

8727 <*germanb>
8728 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
8729 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
8730 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
8731 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Raichle, Bernd
8732 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8733 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8734 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8735 %%
8736 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8737 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8738 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8739 %%
8740 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8741 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8742 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8743 </germanb>

```

13.67 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “`germanb2`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language, with short titles. See also section 13.66. The titles are taken from the file `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [44, 45]:

```

8744 <*germanb2>
8745 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
8746 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
8747 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
8748 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
8749 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8750 %%
8751 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
8752 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
8753 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8754 %%
8755 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8756 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8757 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8758 </germanb2>

```

13.68 “Greek” language: greek.mld

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek) are taken from the greek.dtx file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the babel package [44, 45, 87]. Greek fonts are required.

```

8759 <*greek>
8760 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
8761 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
8762 %% from greek.dtx (babel)
8763 %% Syropoulos, Apostolos
8764 %% Needs greek fonts.
8765 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8766 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8767 \def\plttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8768 %%
8769 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8770 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8771 \def\mlttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8772 %%
8773 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8774 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8775 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8776 </greek>

```

13.69 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

The titles for the “greek-mono” language²⁶ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [194]:

```

8777 <*greek – mono>
8778 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
8779 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8780 %% Needs Omega
8781 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
8782 %%
8783 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8784 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^03cc^^^^03bc%
8785 ^^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}}%
8786 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8787 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8788 ^^^^^03c2 ^^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^03ac^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8789 ^^^^^03bd}}}%
8790 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8791 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8792 ^^^^^03c2 ^^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^03ac^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}}%
8793 %%

```

²⁶Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.


```

8794 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8795 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8796 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8797 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8798 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8799 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8800 ^03bd}}%
8801 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8802 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8803 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8804 %
8805 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8806 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8807 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8808 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8809 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8810 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8811 ^03bd}}%
8812 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8813 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8814 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8815 </greek – mono>

```

13.70 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language²⁷ are taken from the file `omega-greek.1df` (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [194]:

```

8816 <*greek – polydemo>
8817 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
8818 %% from omega-greek.1df (Antomega project)
8819 %% Needs Omega
8820 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
8821 %%
8822 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8823 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8824 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8825 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8826 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8827 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8828 ^03bd}}%
8829 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
8830 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8831 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8832 %
8833 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8834 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8835 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%

```

²⁷Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```

8836 \def\mlfttitle{\localgreek%
8837 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8838 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8839 ^03bd}}%
8840 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8841 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8842 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8843 %%
8844 \def\stcttitle{\localgreek%
8845 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8846 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8847 \def\slfttitle{\localgreek%
8848 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8849 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8850 ^03bd}}%
8851 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8852 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8853 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8854 </greek – polydemo>

```

13.71 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language²⁸ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [194]:

```

8855 <*greek – polykatha>
8856 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
8857 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8858 %% Needs Omega
8859 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
8860 %%
8861 \def\ptcttitle{\localgreek%
8862 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8863 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8864 \def\plfttitle{\localgreek%
8865 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8866 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8867 ^03bd}}%
8868 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
8869 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8870 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8871 %%
8872 \def\mtcttitle{\localgreek%
8873 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8874 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%

```

²⁸Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAI, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

8875 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8876 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8877 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8878 ^03bd}}%
8879 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8880 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8881 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8882 %%
8883 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8884 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8885 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8886 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8887 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8888 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8889 ^03bd}}%
8890 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8891 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8892 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8893 </greek – polykatha>

```

13.72 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [38]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

8894 <*guarani>
8895 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
8896 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
8897 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
8898 %%
8899 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
8900 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8901 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8902 %%
8903 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice general}%
8904 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8905 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8906 %%
8907 \def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
8908 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8909 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8910 </guarani>

```

13.73 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [310]. See [159, page 150] and [266].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74, 13.75 on the next page, 13.76 on the following page, 13.77 on page 478, 13.78 on page 478, 13.79 on page 479, and 13.80 on page 479.

The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```

8911 <(*hangul1)
8912 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8913 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
8914 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8915 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8916 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
8917 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8918 %%
8919 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
8920 </hangul1>

```

13.74 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73, 13.75 on the following page, 13.76 on the next page, 13.77 on page 478, 13.78 on page 478, 13.79 on page 479, and 13.80 on page 479.

The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul2.mlo.

```

8921 <(*hangul2)
8922 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8923 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
8924 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8925 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8926 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
8927 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8928 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8929 %%

```

```
8930 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
8931 </hangul2>
```

13.75 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the preceding page, 13.74 on the page before, 13.76, 13.77 on the next page, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on page 479, and 13.80 on page 479.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```
8932 (*hangul3)
8933 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
8934 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
8935 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8936 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8937 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2
8938 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8939 %%
8940 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
8941 </hangul3>
```

13.76 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the page before, 13.74 on the preceding page, 13.75, 13.77 on the following page, 13.78 on the next page, 13.79 on page 479, and 13.80 on page 479.

The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```
8942 (*hangul4)
8943 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
8944 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
8945 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8946 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
```

```

8947%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2,
8948%% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8949%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8950%%
8951\mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
8952</hangul4>

```

13.77 “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the H_LA_TE_X system [190, in korean] by Un KOAUNGH. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.73 on page 476, 13.74 on page 476, 13.75 on the preceding page, 13.76 on the page before, 13.78, 13.79 on the next page, and 13.80 on the following page. See [159, page 150] and [266].

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```

8953<{*hangul-u8}>
8954\ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
8955%% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX package
8956%% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8957%% Hangul captions for Lambda
8958%%
8959\mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
8960</hangul-u8>

```

13.78 “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 476, 13.74 on page 476, 13.75 on the page before, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.77, 13.79 on the following page, and 13.80 on the next page.

The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```

8961<{*hanja1}>
8962\ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8963%% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package

```

```

8964%% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8965%% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8966%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8967%% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8968%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8969%%
8970\mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
8971</hanja1>

```

13.79 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 476, 13.74 on page 476, 13.75 on page 477, 13.76 on page 477, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.78 on the page before, and 13.80.

The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.

```

8972(*hanja2)
8973\ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8974%% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
8975%% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8976%% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
8977%% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
8978%% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8979%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8980%%
8981\mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
8982</hanja2>

```

13.80 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the H_AT_EX system [190, in korean] by Un KOAUNGH. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.73 on page 476, 13.74 on page 476, 13.75 on page 477, 13.76 on page 477, 13.77 on the page before, 13.78 on the preceding page, and 13.79. See [159, page 150] and [266].

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja-u8.mlo`.

```

8983 <*hanja-u8>
8984 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
8985 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
8986 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8987 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
8988 %%
8989 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
8990 </hanja-u8>

```

13.81 “Hebrew” language: `hebrew.mld`

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [198, 199] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 13.82 on the following page.

```

8991 <*hebrew>
8992 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
8993 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty
8994 %% Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
8995 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
8996             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8997 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
8998             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8999 \def\plttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9000             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9001 %%
9002 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9003             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9004 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9005             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9006 \def\mlttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9007             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9008 %%
9009 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9010             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9011 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9012             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9013 \def\slttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9014             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9015 </hebrew>

```


13.82 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris LAVVA and Rama PORRAT) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 75], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.81 on the page before.

```

9016 <*hebrew2>
9017 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]
9018 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package.
9019 %% Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
9020 %% Need hebrew fonts.
9021 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9022   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
9023   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9024 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9025   \hebrese\hebshe\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9026   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrese\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9027 \def\plttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9028   \hebrese\hebshe\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9029   \hebtet\hebbe\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9030 %%
9031 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9032   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
9033   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9034 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9035   \hebrese\hebshe\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9036   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrese\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9037 \def\mlttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9038   \hebrese\hebshe\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9039   \hebtet\hebbe\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9040 %%
9041 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9042   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
9043   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9044 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9045   \hebrese\hebshe\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9046   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrese\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9047 \def\slttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9048   \hebrese\hebshe\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9049   \hebtet\hebbe\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9050 </hebrew2>

```

13.83 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load `devanagari.mld` (see section 13.41 on page 458):

```

9051 <(*hindi)
9052 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]
9053 \mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
9054 </hindi>

```

13.84 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [265] (Devanāgarī) after conversion. See also section 13.41 on page 458. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.

```

9055 <(*hindi – modern)
9056 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]
9057 %% Hindi modern titles for minitoc.sty
9058 %% from captions.dn in ‘Devanagari for TeX’ by
9059 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. and Wagner, Zden\v{e}k and
9060 %% Smith, John and Carmody, Kevin and Mahoney, Richard and
9061 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
9062 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9063 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9064 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9065 %%
9066 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9067 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9068 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9069 %%
9070 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9071 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9072 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9073 </hindi – modern>

```

13.85 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.108 on page 493.

```

9074 <(*hungarian)
9075 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9076 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
9077 </hungarian>

```

13.86 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the icelandic.dtx file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the babel package [44, 45, 52]:

```

9078 <*icelandic>
9079 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]
9080 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty
9081 %% from icelandic.dtx (babel)
9082 %% Árnason, Einar
9083 %% need inputenc with 8-bits encoding
9084 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9085 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9086 \def\plttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9087 %%
9088 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9089 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9090 \def\mlttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9091 %%
9092 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9093 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9094 \def\slttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9095 </icelandic>

```

13.87 “Indon” language: indon.mld

The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.15 on page 446):

```

9096 <*indon>
9097 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
9098 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9099 </indon>

```

13.88 “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld

The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.15 on page 446):

```

9100 <*indonesian>
9101 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9102 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9103 </indonesian>

```

13.89 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 70]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages²⁹.

```

9104 <*interlingua>
9105 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
9106 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty from interlingua.dtx (babel)
9107 %% Kleiweg, Peter
9108 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
9109 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9110 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
9111 %%
9112 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
9113 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
9114 \def\mltttitle{Tabellas}%
9115 %%
9116 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
9117 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
9118 \def\slttitle{Tabellas}%
9119 </interlingua>

```

13.90 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 48]:

```

9120 <*irish>
9121 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
9122 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty from irish.dtx (babel)
9123 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
9124 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9125 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9126 \def\pltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9127 %%
9128 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9129 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9130 \def\mltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9131 %%
9132 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9133 \def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9134 \def\slttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9135 </irish>

```

²⁹The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it. You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>.

13.91 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 62]. See also section 13.92.

```

9136 (*italian)
9137 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9138 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty from italian.dtx (babel)
9139 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9140 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9141 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
9142 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9143 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9144 %%
9145 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
9146 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9147 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9148 %%
9149 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
9150 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9151 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9152 \end{italian}

```

13.92 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.91.

```

9153 (*italian2)
9154 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9155 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant, from italian.dtx (babel)
9156 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9157 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9158 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
9159 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9160 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9161 %%
9162 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
9163 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9164 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9165 %%
9166 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
9167 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9168 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9169 \end{italian2}

```

13.93 “Japanese” language: `japanese.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

They are several variants for the japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the “japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³⁰. See also sections 13.94, 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on the next page, 13.97 on page 488, and 13.98 on page 488. The titles for the “japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```

9170 <*japanese>
9171 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9172 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
9173 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9174 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9175 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9176 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9177 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
9178 </japanese>

```

13.94 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.mld` and `japanese2.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese2” language (japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93, 13.95 on the next page, 13.96 on the following page, 13.97 on page 488, and 13.98 on page 488. The titles for the “japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

```

9179 <*japanese2>
9180 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9181 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
9182 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9183 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9184 %%
9185 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9186 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9187 %% encoding: EUC
9188 %%
9189 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
9190 </japanese2>

```

³⁰ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.95 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld` and `japanese3.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the page before, 13.94 on the preceding page, 13.96, 13.97 on the following page, and 13.98 on the next page. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```

9191 <*japanese3>
9192 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
9193 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9194 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9195 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9196 %%
9197 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9198 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
9199 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9200 %%
9201 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9202 </japanese3>

```

13.96 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld` and `japanese4.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the preceding page, 13.94 on the page before, 13.95, 13.97 on the next page, and 13.97 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```

9203 <*japanese4>
9204 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
9205 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
9206 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9207 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9208 %%
9209 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9210 %% Japanese captions
9211 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
9212 %%
9213 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9214 </japanese4>

```

13.97 “Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file SJIS.cpx of the CJK system [216, 217] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on page 486, 13.94 on page 486, 13.95 on the page before, 13.96 on the preceding page, and 13.98. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese5.mlo.

```

9215 <*japanese5>
9216 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
9217 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9218 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9219 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9220 %%
9221 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9222 %% Japanese captions
9223 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9224 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9225 %%
9226 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9227 </japanese5>

```

13.98 “Japanese6” language: japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³¹. See also sections 13.93 on page 486, 13.94 on page 486, 13.95 on the preceding page, 13.96 on the page before, and 13.97. The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese6.mlo.

```

9228 <*japanese6>
9229 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]
9230 %% Japanese6 titles for minitoc.sty
9231 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9232 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9233 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9234 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9235 \mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9236 </japanese6>

```

³¹ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.99 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state of India. The titles are taken from the `kanlel.sty` package file from the KannadaT_EX project [336]³² by C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. Specific fonts are required.

```

9237 <(*kannada)
9238 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2007/02/22]
9239 %% from kanlel.sty of Kannadatex
9240 %% (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in yogacs@users.sarovar.org)
9241 %% (K. K. Subramaniam subbukk@users.sarovar.org)
9242 %%
9243 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}
9244 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
9245 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
9246 %%
9247 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}
9248 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
9249 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
9250 %%
9251 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}
9252 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
9253 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
9254 </kannada>

```

13.100 “Khalkha” language: `khalkha.mld`

“khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load `xalx.mld` (see sections 13.175 on page 526, 13.176 on page 526, and 13.177 on page 527):

```

9255 <(*khalkha)
9256 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
9257 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9258 </khalkha>

```

13.101 “Latin” language: `latin.mld`

The titles for the “latin” language are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 54]. See also section 13.102 on the following page.

³²<http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

```

9259 <*\latin>
9260 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
9261 %% Latin titles for minitoc.sty
9262 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9263 %% Beccari, Claudio
9264 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9265 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9266 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9267 %%
9268 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9269 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9270 \def\mlttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9271 %%
9272 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9273 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9274 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9275 </\latin>

```

13.102 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [44, 45, 54], but abbreviated. See also section 13.101 on the page before.

```

9276 <*\latin2>
9277 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9278 %% Latin titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
9279 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9280 %% Beccari, Claudio
9281 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9282 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9283 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9284 %%
9285 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9286 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9287 \def\mlttitle{Tabulae}%
9288 %%
9289 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9290 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9291 \def\slttitle{Tabulae}%
9292 </\latin2>

```

13.103 “Latvian” language: `latvian.mld`

The titles for the “latvian” language³³ come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [194]. See also section 13.104.

```

9293 \(*latvian)
9294 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
9295 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project)
9296 %% Needs Omega
9297 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9298 %%
9299 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturis}}%
9300 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^0113lu saraksts}}%
9301 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9302 %%
9303 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturis}}%
9304 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^0113lu saraksts}}%
9305 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9306 %%
9307 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturis}}%
9308 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^0113lu saraksts}}%
9309 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9310 \(/latvian)

```

13.104 “Letton” language: `letton.mld`

The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.103.

```

9311 \(*letton)
9312 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
9313 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
9314 \(/letton)

```

13.105 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file³⁴ (by Sigitas TOLUŠIS) for the babel package [44, 45]:

³³Note that “latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

³⁴Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip>.

```

9315 <{*lithuanian}
9316 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9317 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty
9318 %% from lithuanian.ldf
9319 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip
9320 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9321 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9322 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9323 \def\plttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9324 %%
9325 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9326 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9327 \def\mlttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9328 %%
9329 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9330 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9331 \def\slttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9332 </lithuanian>

```

13.106 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language³⁵ are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 88]. See also section 13.169 on page 523. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.107 on the next page).

```

9333 <{*lowsorbian}
9334 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
9335 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9336 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
9337 %% Werner, Eduard
9338 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9339 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9340 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9341 %%
9342 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9343 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9344 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9345 %%
9346 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9347 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9348 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9349 </lowsorbian>

```

³⁵Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

13.107 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowersorbian”, so we just load lowersorbian.mld. See section 13.106 on the preceding page.

```

9350 <*lsorbian>
9351 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
9352 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9353 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
9354 %% Werner, Eduard
9355 \selectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
9356 </lsorbian>

```

13.108 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the babel package [44, 45, 55]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.85 on page 482). See also sections 13.109 and 13.110 on the next page for variants (it seems that magyar.dtx might have evolved).

```

9357 <*magyar>
9358 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9359 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
9360 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9361 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9362 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9363 \def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9364 \def\plttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9365 %%
9366 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9367 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9368 \def\mlttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9369 %%
9370 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9371 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9372 \def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9373 </magyar>

```

13.109 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the magyar.dtx file of the babel package [44, 45] (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI). See also sections 13.108 and 13.110 on the next page.

```

9374 ⟨*magyar2⟩
9375 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9376 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9377 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9378 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9379 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9380 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9381 \def\plttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9382 %%
9383 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9384 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9385 \def\mlttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9386 %%
9387 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9388 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9389 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9390 ⟨/magyar2⟩

```

13.110 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the `magyar.dtx` file (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 55]. See also sections 13.108 on the preceding page and 13.109 on the page before.

```

9391 ⟨*magyar3⟩
9392 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
9393 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9394 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9395 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9396 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9397 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9398 \def\plttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9399 %%
9400 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9401 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9402 \def\mlttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9403 %%
9404 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9405 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9406 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9407 ⟨/magyar3⟩

```

13.111 “Malay” language: malay.mld

The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 446):

```

9408 ⟨*malay⟩
9409 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
9410 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9411 ⟨/malay⟩

```

13.112 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language³⁶, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [3] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.114 on the next page and 13.115 on the following page.

```

9412 ⟨*malayalam – keli⟩
9413 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
9414 %%
9415 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
9416 %%
9417 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9418 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9419 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9420 %%
9421 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9422 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9423 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9424 %%
9425 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9426 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9427 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9428 ⟨/malayalam – keli⟩

```

13.113 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo

This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* (Λ) (the version of \LaTeX for Omega) via the omal package [4] (by A. J. ALEX) of the Malayalam-Omega project³⁷. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the omal package.

```

9429 ⟨*malayalam – omega⟩
9430 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2006/02/13]
9431 % from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)

```

³⁶The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.

³⁷<http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

```

9432 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}
9433 %
9434 </malayalam – omega>

```

13.114 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.112 on the page before and 13.115.

```

9435 (*malayalam – rachana)
9436 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]
9437 %%
9438 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
9439 %%
9440 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9441 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9442 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9443 %%
9444 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9445 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9446 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9447 %%
9448 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9449 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9450 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9451 </malayalam – rachana>

```

13.115 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.112 on the page before and 13.114.

```

9452 (*malayalam – rachana2)
9453 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9454 %%
9455 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
9456 %%
9457 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9458 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9459 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%

```



```

9460 %%
9461 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9462 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9463 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9464 %%
9465 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9466 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9467 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9468 \</malayalam – rachana2>

```

13.116 “Manju” language: manju.mld

The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load `bithe.mld` (see section 13.22 on page 450):

```

9469 \<manju>
9470 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
9471 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
9472 \</manju>

```

13.117 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 446):

```

9473 \<meyalu>
9474 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
9475 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9476 \</meyalu>

```

13.118 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [110, 113] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.19 on page 448, 13.20 on page 449, 13.21 on page 449, 13.22 on page 450, 13.29 on page 453, 13.30 on page 454, 13.175 on page 526, 13.176 on page 526, and 13.177 on page 527.

```

9477 \<mongol>
9478 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
9479 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

9480 %% Needs mongol fonts
9481 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9482 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9483 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9484 %%
9485 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9486 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9487 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9488 %%
9489 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9490 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9491 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9492 </mongol>

```

13.119 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the mongolian.dtx file [19] (by Dorjgotov BATMUNKH) for the babel package [44, 45] (hence the final “b” in “mongolb”).

The titles for the “mongolb” language use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG).

```

9493 < *mongolb >
9494 \ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]
9495 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9496 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9497 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9498 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9499 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru) and Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9500 %%
9501 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9502   \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyr\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9503 \else\relax
9504   \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9505 \fi
9506 \def\plftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9507   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9508 \def\plttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9509   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9510 %%
9511 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9512   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyr\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9513 \else\relax
9514   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9515 \fi
9516 \def\mlftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9517   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9518 \def\mlttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9519   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%

```

```

9520 %%
9521 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9522   \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyr\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9523 \else\relax
9524   \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9525 \fi
9526 \def\slftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9527   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9528 \def\slttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyr\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9529   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9530 </mongolb>

```

13.120 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the `babel` package [44, 45] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load `mongolb.mld`. See section 13.119 on the preceding page.

```

9531 < *mongolian >
9532 \ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]
9533 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9534 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9535 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9536 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9537 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru) and Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9538 %%
9539 \mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}
9540 </mongolian>

```

13.121 “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld

The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the `german` language), so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.124 on the next page.

```

9541 < *naustrian >
9542 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9543 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9544 </naustrian>

```

13.122 “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld

The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 459):

```
9545 < *newzealand >
9546 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
9547 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
9548 < /newzealand >
```

13.123 “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld

The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language³⁸, so we just load the ngermanb.mld file. See also section 13.124.

```
9549 < *ngerman >
9550 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
9551 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9552 < /ngerman >
```

13.124 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb” language³⁹ are taken from the file ngermanb.dtx file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the babel package [44, 45, 80]. See also sections 13.121 on the preceding page, and 13.123.

```
9553 < *ngermanb >
9554 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
9555 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
9556 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
9557 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
9558 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9559 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9560 %%
9561 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9562 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9563 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9564 %%
9565 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9566 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9567 \def\sltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9568 < /ngermanb >
```

³⁸ A revised version of the germanb variant of the german language.

³⁹ A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

13.125 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language (revised spelling and short titles) are taken from taken from the `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 80], and abbreviated. See also section 13.124 on the preceding page.

```

9569 ⟨*ngermanb2⟩
9570 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9571 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
9572 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
9573 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
9574 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
9575 %%
9576 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9577 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
9578 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
9579 %%
9580 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9581 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
9582 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9583 ⟨/ngermanb2⟩

```

13.126 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 49], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.128 on the next page.

```

9584 ⟨*norsk⟩
9585 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
9586 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty from norsk.dtx (babel)
9587 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
9588 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
9589 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9590 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9591 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
9592 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
9593 %%
9594 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9595 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
9596 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
9597 %%
9598 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9599 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
9600 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
9601 ⟨/norsk⟩

```

13.127 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `babel` package [44, 45, 49], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 13.126 on the preceding page.

```

9602 ⟨*norsk2⟩
9603 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9604 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
9605 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9606 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9607 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9608 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9609 %%
9610 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9611 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9612 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9613 %%
9614 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9615 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9616 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9617 ⟨/norsk2⟩

```

13.128 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language⁴⁰ are taken from `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 49], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.126 on the page before.

```

9618 ⟨*nynorsk⟩
9619 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
9620 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty from norsk.dtx (babel)
9621 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
9622 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
9623 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9624 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9625 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
9626 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
9627 %%
9628 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9629 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
9630 \def\pltttitle{Tabellar}%
9631 %%

```

⁴⁰Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialect spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.

```

9632 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9633 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
9634 \def\sltttitle{Tabellar}%
9635 \</nynorsk>

```

13.129 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.128 on the preceding page.

```

9636 \<*nynorsk2>
9637 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
9638 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9639 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9640 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9641 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9642 %%
9643 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9644 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9645 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9646 %%
9647 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9648 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9649 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9650 \</nynorsk2>

```

13.130 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the polish.dtx file (by Elmar SCHALÜCK and Michael JANICH) in the babel package [44, 45, 85]. See also sections 13.131 on the next page and 13.132 on the following page.

```

9651 \<*polish>
9652 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
9653 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty from polish.dtx (babel)
9654 %% Schalück, Elmar and Janich, Michael
9655 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9656 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9657 \def\pltttitle{Spis tablic}%
9658 %%
9659 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9660 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9661 \def\mltttitle{Spis tablic}%
9662 %%
9663 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%

```

```

9664 \def\slfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9665 \def\sltttitle{Spis tablic}%
9666 \polish

```

13.131 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

The titles for the “polish2” language⁴¹ are taken from the omega-polish.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [194]. See also sections 13.130 on the page before and 13.132.

```

9667 \polish2
9668 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
9669 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
9670 %% Needs Omega
9671 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9672 %%
9673 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9674 \def\plfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9675 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9676 %%
9677 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9678 \def\mlfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9679 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9680 %%
9681 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9682 \def\slfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9683 \def\sltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9684 \polish2

```

13.132 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI) in the P_{La}T_EX package [258, 319]. See also sections 13.130 on the page before and 13.131.

```

9685 \poliski
9686 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
9687 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
9688 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
9689 %% Olko, Mariusz and Woli\'nski, Marcin.
9690 %%
9691 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9692 \def\plfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9693 \def\pltttitle{Spis tabel}%

```

⁴¹ “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.


```

9694 %%
9695 \def\mtctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9696 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9697 \def\mltttitle{Spis tabel}%
9698 %%
9699 \def\stctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9700 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9701 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
9702 </polski>

```

13.133 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.134), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```

9703 <(*portuges)
9704 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
9705 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
9706 </portuges>

```

13.134 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the portuges.dtx file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the babel package [44, 45, 81].

See also section 13.23 on page 450, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```

9707 <(*portuguese)
9708 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9709 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
9710 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
9711 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
9712 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9713 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9714 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9715 %%
9716 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9717 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9718 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9719 %%
9720 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9721 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9722 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9723 </portuguese>

```

13.135 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

The titles for the “romanian” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Umstatter Horst and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 67].

```

9724 (*romanian)
9725 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9726 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
9727 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
9728 %% Horst, Umstatter and Juhasz, Robert
9729 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9730 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9731 \def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9732 %%
9733 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9734 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9735 \def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9736 %%
9737 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9738 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9739 \def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9740 </romanian>

```

13.136 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `RomanianTeX` package [280]. See also sections 13.135 and 13.137 on the following page. Alas, `RomanianTeX` is not compatible with the `babel` package [44, 45].

```

9741 (*romanian2)
9742 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]
9743 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
9744 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) and
9745 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9746 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9747 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9748 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9749 %%
9750 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9751 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9752 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9753 %%
9754 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9755 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9756 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9757 </romanian2>

```

13.137 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianTeX package [280]. See also sections 13.135 on the page before and 13.136 on the preceding page. Alas, RomanianTeX is not compatible with the `babel` package [44, 45].

```

9758 ⟨*romanian3⟩
9759 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]
9760 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
9761 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) and
9762 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9763 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9764 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9765 \def\plttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9766 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
9767 %%
9768 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9769 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9770 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
9771 %%
9772 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9773 \def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9774 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
9775 ⟨/romanian3⟩

```

13.138 “Russian” language: `russian.mld`

The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the `babel` package [44, 45]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```

9776 ⟨*russian⟩
9777 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
9778 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
9779 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9780 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}{en}{\mz} risunkov}%
9781 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}{en}{\mz} tablic}%
9782 %%
9783 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9784 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}{en}{\mz} risunkov}%
9785 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}{en}{\mz} tablic}%
9786 %%
9787 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9788 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}{en}{\mz} risunkov}%
9789 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}{en}{\mz} tablic}%
9790 ⟨/russian⟩

```

13.139 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld

The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the russian2m.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [194]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on the page before.

```

9791 <*russian2m>
9792 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
9793 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
9794 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
9795 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9796 %%
9797 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9798 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9799 ^0438^0435}}%
9800 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9801 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
9802 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
9803 ^0439}}%
9804 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
9805 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
9806 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
9807 %%
9808 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9809 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9810 ^0438^0435}}%
9811 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9812 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
9813 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
9814 ^0439}}%
9815 \def\mlttitle{\localrussian%
9816 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
9817 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
9818 %%
9819 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9820 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9821 ^0438^0435}}%
9822 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9823 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
9824 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
9825 ^0439}}%
9826 \def\slttitle{\localrussian%
9827 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
9828 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
9829 </russian2m>

```

13.140 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the omega-russian.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [194]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on page 507.

```

9830 (*russian2o)
9831 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
9832 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
9833 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
9834 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9835 %%
9836 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9837 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9838 ^0456^0435}}%
9839 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9840 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9841 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
9842 ^0456^0439}}%
9843 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
9844 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9845 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9846 %%
9847 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9848 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9849 ^0456^0435}}%
9850 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9851 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9852 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
9853 ^0456^0439}}%
9854 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9855 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9856 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9857 %
9858 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9859 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9860 ^0456^0435}}%
9861 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9862 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9863 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
9864 ^0456^0439}}%
9865 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
9866 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9867 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9868 </russian2o>

```

13.141 “Russianb” language: `russianb.mld`

The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. МАКHOVAYA) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 73, 208]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on page 507. The parttoc title varies depending on the presence of chapters defined or not by the document class.

```

9869 <*russianb>
9870 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
9871 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
9872 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
9873 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
9874 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9875 \def\ptctitle{%
9876   {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
9877 \else
9878 \def\ptctitle{%
9879   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9880 \fi
9881 \def\plftitle{%
9882   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9883     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9884 \def\plttitle{%
9885   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9886     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9887 %%
9888 \def\mtctitle{%
9889   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9890 \def\mlftitle{%
9891   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9892     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9893 \def\mlttitle{%
9894   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9895     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9896 %%
9897 \def\stctitle{%
9898   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9899 \def\slftitle{%
9900   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9901     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9902 \def\slttitle{%
9903   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9904     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9905 </russianb>

```

13.142 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [110, 113]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on page 507.

```

9906 <*russianc>
9907 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
9908 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
9909 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
9910 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
9911 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9912 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9913 %%
9914 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9915 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9916 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9917 %%
9918 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9919 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9920 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9921 </russianc>

```

13.143 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo

They are several variants for the russian titles with the `cmcyralt` fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the `cmcyralt` package [42].

The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```

9922 <*russian – cca>
9923 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
9924 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
9925 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
9926 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) and Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
9927 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
9928 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
9929 </russian – cca>

```

13.144 “Russian-cca1” language: **russian-cca1.mld** and **russian-cca1.mlo**

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the cmcyralt.sty file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package[165].

The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca1.mlo.

```
9930 (*russian – cca1)
9931 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
9932 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
9933 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
9934 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
9935 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) and Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
9936 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
9937 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
9938 </russian – cca1>
```

13.145 “Russian-lh” language: **russian-lh.mld** and **russian-lh.mlo**

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the russian.sty file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [251].

The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lh.mlo.

```
9939 (*russian – lh)
9940 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
9941 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty from russian.sty in the LH package
9942 %% LH fonts in special encoding. By Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
9943 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
9944 </russian – lh>
```

13.146 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: **russian-lhcyralt.mld** and **russian-lhcyralt.mlo**

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the lhcyralt.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [338].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```

9945 <*russian – lhcyralt>
9946 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
9947 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
9948 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
9949 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
9950 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9951 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
9952 </russian – lhcyralt>

```

13.147 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld` and `russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo`

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the `lhcyrkoi.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [338].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo`. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```

9953 <*russian – lhcyrkoi>
9954 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
9955 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
9956 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
9957 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
9958 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9959 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
9960 </russian – lhcyrkoi>

```

13.148 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: `russian-lhcyrwin.mld` and `russian-lhcyrwin.mlo`

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the `lhcyrwin.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [338].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrwin.mlo`. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

```

9961 (*russian – lhcyrwin)
9962 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
9963 %% Russian-lhcyrwin titles for minitoc.sty
9964 %% From lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
9965 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
9966 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9967 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
9968 </russian – lhcyrwin>

```

13.149 “Samin” language: `samin.mld`

The titles for the “samin” language⁴² come from the `samin.dtx` file (by Regnor JERNsLETTEN) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 68]. Specific fonts are required.

```

9969 (*samin)
9970 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
9971 %% North Sámi (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
9972 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
9973 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
9974 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9975 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
9976 \def\pltttitle{Tabeallat}%
9977 %%
9978 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9979 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
9980 \def\mltttitle{Tabeallat}%
9981 %%
9982 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9983 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
9984 \def\sltttitle{Tabeallat}%
9985 </samin>

```

13.150 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` language [44, 45, 65]:

```

9986 (*scottish)
9987 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
9988 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty from scottish.dtx (babel)
9989 %% Grant, Fraser

```

⁴²Several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sámi case. This note is copied and adapted from the `samin.dtx` file. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group.

```

9990 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
9991 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
9992 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
9993 %%
9994 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
9995 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
9996 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
9997 %%
9998 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
9999 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10000 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10001 </scottish>

```

13.151 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 77]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.152.

```

10002 <*serbian>
10003 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
10004 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty from serbian.dtx (babel)
10005 %% Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
10006 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10007 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10008 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10009 %%
10010 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10011 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10012 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10013 %%
10014 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10015 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10016 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10017 </serbian>

```

13.152 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

The titles for the “serbianc” language⁴³ have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.151.

⁴³The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

10018 <*serbianc>
10019 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
10020 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
10021 %%
10022 %% Marko Ćehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
10023 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
10024 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
10025 \def\ptctitle{%
10026   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10027 \def\plftitle{%
10028   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10029 \def\pltttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10030 %%
10031 \def\mtctitle{%
10032   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10033 \def\mlftitle{%
10034   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10035 \def\mltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10036 %%
10037 \def\stctitle{%
10038   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10039 \def\slftitle{%
10040   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10041 \def\sltttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10042 </serbianc>

```

13.153 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the `slovak.dtx` file (by Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 61]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

10043 <*slovak>
10044 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
10045 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
10046 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
10047 %% Chlebíková, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
10048 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
10049 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10050 \def\pltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10051 %%
10052 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
10053 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10054 \def\mltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10055 %%
10056 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
10057 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10058 \def\sltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10059 </slovak>

```

13.154 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The titles for the “slovene” language come from the slovene.dtx file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the babel package [44, 45, 91]:

```

10060 <*slovene>
10061 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
10062 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty from slovene.dtx (babel)
10063 %% Zavrtanik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
10064 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
10065 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10066 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10067 %%
10068 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
10069 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10070 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10071 %%
10072 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
10073 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10074 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10075 </slovene>

```

13.155 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the babel package [37, 44, 45]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.33 on page 455). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.18 on page 447), “catalan” (section 13.35 on page 455), and “galician” (section 13.64 on page 469). Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.156 on the next page). And “spanish3” (see section 13.157 on the following page) is a version for the Antomega [194] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where \ptctitle is shorter for articles (section 13.158 on page 519).

```

10076 <*spanish>
10077 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]
10078 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty from spanish.dtx (babel)
10079 %% Bezos, Javier
10080 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10081 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
10082 \else
10083 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
10084 \fi
10085 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10086 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10087 %%
10088 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10089 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%

```

```

10090 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10091 %%
10092 \def\stcttitle{\'Indice}%
10093 \def\slfttitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10094 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10095 </spanish>

```

13.156 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [37, 44, 45], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.155 on the preceding page.

```

10096 < *spanish2>
10097 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
10098 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10099 \def\ptcttitle{\'Indice General}%
10100 \def\plfttitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10101 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10102 %%
10103 \def\mtcttitle{Contenido}%
10104 \def\mlfttitle{Figuras}%
10105 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
10106 %%
10107 \def\stcttitle{Contenido}%
10108 \def\slfttitle{Figuras}%
10109 \def\sltttitle{Tablas}%
10110 </spanish2>

```

13.157 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the `omega-spanish.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV) of the Antomega project [194]. See section 13.155 on the page before.

```

10111 < *spanish3>
10112 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]
10113 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10114 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the \pack{Antomega} project.
10115 \def\ptcttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10116 \def\plfttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10117 \def\pltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10118 %%
10119 \def\mtcttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10120 \def\mlfttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10121 \def\mltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%

```

```

10122 %%
10123 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10124 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10125 \def\sltttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10126 </spanish3>

```

13.158 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier Bezos) from the `CervanTeX` package [36]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.155 on page 517.

```

10127 <(*spanish4)
10128 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
10129 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty from spanish.dtx (in CervanTeX)
10130 %% Bezos, Javier
10131 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10132 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice}%
10133 \else
10134 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice general}%
10135 \fi
10136 \def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
10137 \def\pltttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
10138 %%
10139 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice}%
10140 \def\mlftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
10141 \def\mltttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
10142 %%
10143 \def\stctitle{\`Indice}%
10144 \def\slftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
10145 \def\sltttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
10146 </spanish4>

```

13.159 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld

The titles for the “swedish” language are taken from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michael RYNNING) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 66]. See also section 13.160 on the next page.

```

10147 <(*swedish)
10148 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10149 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty from swedish.dtx (babel)
10150 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
10151 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10152 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%

```

```

10153 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
10154 %%
10155 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10156 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
10157 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
10158 %%
10159 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10160 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
10161 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
10162 </swedish>

```

13.160 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for `swedish`) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSON) in the \LaTeX package [231]. See also section 13.159 on the preceding page.

```

10163 <*swedish2>
10164 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
10165 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty from rapport.doc (slatex)
10166 %% Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
10167 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10168 \def\plftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
10169 \def\plttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
10170 %%
10171 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10172 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
10173 \def\mltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
10174 %%
10175 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10176 \def\slftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
10177 \def\slttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
10178 </swedish2>

```

13.161 “Thai” language: `thai.mld` and `thai.mlo`

The titles for the “thai” language come from the `thaicjk.ldf` file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [216, 217]. The `thailatex` package [233] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`.


```

10179 <*thai>
10180 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
10181 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
10182 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
10183 %%
10184 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
10185 </thai>

```

13.162 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [[44](#), [45](#), [57](#)]:

```

10186 <*turkish>
10187 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10188 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
10189 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
10190 %% Burc, Mustafa
10191 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10192 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10193 \def\plttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10194 %%
10195 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10196 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10197 \def\mlttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10198 %%
10199 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10200 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10201 \def\slttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10202 </turkish>

```

13.163 “Uighur” language: `uighur.mld`

The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section [13.19](#) on page [448](#)):

```

10203 <*uighur>
10204 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
10205 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10206 </uighur>

```

13.164 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld

The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig2.mld file (see section 13.20 on page 449):

```
10207 <*uighur2>
10208 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
10209 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10210 </uighur2>
```

13.165 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld

The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 13.19 on page 448):

```
10211 <*uighur3>
10212 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
10213 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10214 </uighur3>
```

13.166 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld

The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 459):

```
10215 <*UKenglish>
10216 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10217 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10218 </UKenglish>
```

13.167 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld

The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section 13.168 on the next page.

```
10219 <*ukraineb>
10220 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2006/12/19]
10221 %% Ukrainian titles for minitoc.sty from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10222 %% Andrij Shvaika, Olga Lapko
```

```

10223 \selectlanguage{ukrainian}%
10224 </ukraine>

```

13.168 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld

The titles for the “ukrainian” language come from the `ukraine.b.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO and Andrij M. SHVAIKA) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 86]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is `ukraine.b` (see section 13.167 on the preceding page).

```

10225 <*ukrainian>
10226 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
10227 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
10228 %% from ukraine.b.dtx (babel)
10229 %% Shvaika, Andrij and Lapko, Olga
10230 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10231 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10232 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10233 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10234 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10235 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10236 %%
10237 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10238 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10239 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10240 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10241 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10242 %%
10243 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10244 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10245 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10246 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10247 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10248 </ukrainian>

```

13.169 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language⁴⁴ are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [44, 45, 89]. See also section 13.106 on page 492. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.171 on the following page).

⁴⁴Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```

10249 <*uppersorbian>
10250 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
10251 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10252 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10253 %% Werner, Eduard
10254 %%
10255 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
10256 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10257 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10258 %%
10259 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10260 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10261 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10262 %%
10263 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
10264 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10265 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10266 </uppersorbian>

```

13.170 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”⁴⁵, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 459):

```

10267 <*USenglish>
10268 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10269 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10270 </USenglish>

```

13.171 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.169 on the preceding page.

```

10271 <*usorbian>
10272 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
10273 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
10274 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10275 %% Werner, Eduard
10276 \selectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
10277 </usorbian>

```

⁴⁵It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

13.172 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the vietnam package [218] (by Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN). Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.173.

```

10278 <*vietnam>
10279 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
10280 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
10281 %%
10282 \def\ptctitle{M\{d\{u\}c l\{d\{u\}c}%
10283 \def\plftitle{Danh s\{\'ach h\{\'inh v\{~e}%
10284 \def\plttitle{Danh s\{\'ach b\{h\{a\}ng}%
10285 %%
10286 \def\mtctitle{M\{d\{u\}c l\{d\{u\}c}%
10287 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\{\'ach h\{\'inh v\{~e}%
10288 \def\mlttitle{Danh s\{\'ach b\{h\{a\}ng}%
10289 %%
10290 \def\stctitle{M\{d\{u\}c l\{d\{u\}c}%
10291 \def\slftitle{Danh s\{\'ach h\{\'inh v\{~e}%
10292 \def\slttitle{Danh s\{\'ach b\{h\{a\}ng}%
10293 </vietnam>

```

13.173 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.172.

```

10294 <*vietnamese>
10295 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
10296 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
10297 </vietnamese>

```

13.174 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language come from the welsh.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [44, 45, 50]:

```

10298 <*welsh>
10299 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
10300 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty
10301 %% from welsh.dtx (babel)
10302 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
10303 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
10304 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%

```

```

10305 \def\pltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10306 %%
10307 \def\mtcttitle{Cynnwys}%
10308 \def\mlfttitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10309 \def\mltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10310 %%
10311 \def\stcttitle{Cynnwys}%
10312 \def\slfttitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10313 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10314 </welsh>

```

13.175 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the MonTeX package [110, 113] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.100 on page 489, 13.176, and 13.177 on the next page.

```

10315 <*xalx>
10316 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
10317 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
10318 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10319 \def\plfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10320 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10321 %%
10322 \def\mtcttitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10323 \def\mlfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10324 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10325 %%
10326 \def\stcttitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10327 \def\slfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10328 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10329 </xalx>

```

13.176 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the MonTeX package [110, 113] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.175).

```

10330 <*xalx2>
10331 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
10332 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
10333 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10334 \def\plfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%

```

```

10335 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10336 %%
10337 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10338 \def\mlfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10339 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10340 %%
10341 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10342 \def\slfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10343 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10344 </xalx2>

```

13.177 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonT_EX package [110, 113] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.175 on the page before).

```

10345 < *xalx3>
10346 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
10347 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
10348 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10349 \def\plfttitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10350 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10351 %%
10352 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10353 \def\mlfttitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10354 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10355 %%
10356 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10357 \def\slfttitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10358 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10359 </xalx3>

```

Part III

Complements

Contents of the Third Part

Bibliography	530
Changes History	561
Index	593

Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 530, 598, 600, 620, 642, 643
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUEMANCHE, <mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>. 598, 600, 620, 642, 643
- [3] A. J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using L^AT_EX 2_ε*, April 2003. <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 41, 195, 440, 495, 496, 598, 628, 640, 642
- [4] A. J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω*, January 2006. <mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/omega/latex/contrib/malayalam-omega/doc/manual-malayalam.pdf>. 41, 195, 440, 495, 598, 639, 641, 642
- [5] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html. <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>. 598, 642
- [6] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: A_MS-L^AT_EX*. Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/instr-l.pdf>. 85, 198, 599, 602
- [7] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICHAREAU. *L^AT_EX pour l'impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html. 599, 602, 609, 611, 618, 642, 643, 645, 646
- [8] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 49, 85, 219, 234, 255, 281, 284, 287, 381, 414, 599, 638, 641, 642

- [9] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 29, 85, 206, 208, 220, 234, 391, 397, 413, 599, 641, 642, 647
- [10] Donald ARSENEAU. *The cite package*, November 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty>. 591, 599, 602, 640, 642
- [11] Donald ARSENEAU. *The overcite package*, May 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/overcite.sty>. 199, 599, 640, 641, 642
- [12] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 133, 215, 225, 599, 641, 642, 657
- [13] Donald ARSENEAU. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 57, 200, 216, 599, 602, 640, 642
- [14] Donald ARSENEAU. *The url package*, June 2005. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/url.sty>. 599, 641, 642, 657
- [15] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T_EX Using the CJK B_ET_EX Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfT_EX under Windows* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 599, 602, 640, 642
- [16] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 599, 602, 640, 642
- [17] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 96
- [18] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 57, 199, 599, 600, 640, 642, 646, 656
- [19] Dorjgotov BATMUNKH. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, January 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf>. 498, 599, 642
- [20] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [21]. 532, 599, 642

- [21] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [20]. 531, 599, 642
- [22] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour L^AT_EX 2_ε*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/JMPL.ps.gz>. 46, 600, 642
- [23] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. 600, 609, 610, 612, 619, 620, 624, 627, 629, 638, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 654, 657
- [24] Claudio BECCARI. *Graphics in L^AT_EX*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/beccari/beccari-1.pdf>. 600, 642
- [25] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>. 600, 642, 646, 654
- [26] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online], July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. <mailto:emmanuel.beffara@pps.jussieu.fr>. 58, 221, 600, 642, 650, 656
- [27] Rachid BELMOUHOU. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 600, 611, 642, 643
- [28] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T_EX: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>. 600, 619, 642, 643
- [29] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>. 600, 627, 642, 643, 644
- [30] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encoding for L^AT_EX 2_ε multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>. 600, 627, 642, 643, 644
- [31] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in L^AT_EX 2_ε and the Projected X2 Encoding*

- for Cyrillic Texts. In *Congrès EuroT_EX*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>. 600, 627, 642, 643, 644
- [32] Jens BERGER. *The hypernat package*, July 2001. <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/hypernat.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/contrib/misc/hypernat.sty>. 600, 621, 640, 642
- [33] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 551, 600, 642
- [34] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>. 600, 642
- [35] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 41, 204, 440, 462, 463, 600, 613, 624, 629, 640, 642, 644, 645
- [36] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, September 2003. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://filemon.mecanica.upm.es/CervanTeX/spanish.dtx>. 41, 519, 600, 601, 640, 642
- [37] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 517, 518, 600, 642
- [38] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T_EX*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 41, 207, 440, 475, 600, 619, 640, 642
- [39] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 85, 224, 390, 600, 641, 642, 656
- [40] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The ℵ (Aleph) Project*. *TUGboat*, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 219, 598, 600, 640, 642
- [41] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *ℒ_TE_X*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006. 600, 602, 642, 643
- [42] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 511, 600, 602, 629, 640, 642, 645
- [43] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with ℒ_TE_X's standard document styles*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 440, 599, 600, 640, 642

- [44] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 36, 41, 72, 198, 199, 204, 232, 440, 441, 442, 446, 447, 450, 451, 452, 455, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 481, 483, 484, 485, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 521, 523, 525, 600, 642
- [45] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes (user)*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 36, 41, 72, 198, 199, 204, 232, 440, 441, 442, 446, 447, 450, 451, 452, 455, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 481, 483, 484, 485, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 521, 523, 525, 599, 600, 640, 642
- [46] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 441, 459, 600, 642
- [47] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 459, 460, 600, 642
- [48] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT, <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 484, 600, 619, 642, 643
- [49] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, Håvard HELSTRUP (<mailto:haavard@cernvm>) and Alv Kjetil HOLME (<mailto:holmea@cernvm>); the “nynorsk” variant has been supplied by Per Steinar IVERSEN (<mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch>) and Terje Engeset PETTERST (<mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no>); Rune KLEVELAND (<mailto:runekl@math.uio.no>) added the shorthand definitions. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 501, 502, 600, 620, 621, 623, 624, 642, 644, 645, 646
- [50] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 525, 600, 642
- [51] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Julio SANCHEZ, and Zunbeltz IZAOLA. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 447, 598, 600, 623, 642, 644, 646, 650

- [52] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 483, 599, 600, 642
- [53] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Gonçal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 455, 599, 600, 642
- [54] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, with help from Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, (<mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 489, 490, 600, 642, 646, 658
- [55] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, with help from Attila KOPPANYI (<mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 493, 494, 600, 624, 642, 644
- [56] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Georgi BOSHPANOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshpanov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 452, 600, 642
- [57] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rz.uni-hamburg.de>, with help from Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR (<mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 521, 600, 628, 642, 643, 645, 646, 657
- [58] Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBAUGH, Chris A. ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L^AT_EX 2_ε Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base>. 600, 601, 624, 625, 630, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 650, 651
- [59] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Manuel CARRIBA. *Galician support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 469, 600, 601, 642, 643
- [60] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>, <mailto:jmugica@dig21.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/dalician/galician.pdf>. 469, 600, 601, 637, 642, 643, 645

- [61] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 516, 600, 602, 642, 643, 646, 651
- [62] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 485, 600, 603, 642, 643
- [63] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L^AT_EX styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 440, 599, 600, 612, 640, 642, 643, 645, 648
- [64] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *French support from the babel system*, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 467, 468, 600, 618, 642, 643
- [65] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 514, 600, 619, 642, 643
- [66] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik ÖSTHOLS (erik_osthols@yahoo.com). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 519, 600, 620, 640, 642, 644, 645
- [67] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 506, 600, 621, 624, 642, 644
- [68] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Regnor JERNSLETEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 514, 600, 624, 642, 644
- [69] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 465, 466, 600, 624, 642, 644, 645, 649

- [70] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 484, 600, 624, 642, 644
- [71] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 446, 600, 624, 629, 642, 644, 645
- [72] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 446, 600, 624, 629, 642, 644, 645
- [73] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 452, 510, 600, 627, 642, 644, 646, 657
- [74] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 458, 600, 627, 642, 644
- [75] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 481, 600, 627, 642, 644
- [76] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Milos LOKAJICEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 457, 600, 628, 642, 645
- [77] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 515, 600, 637, 642, 645, 646, 652
- [78] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from:

- <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 457, 600, 641, 642, 645
- [79] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 471, 600, 642, 645, 649
- [80] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 500, 501, 600, 642, 645, 646, 649, 651
- [81] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2005. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations and suggestions for enhancements. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm>, mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail, arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 450, 505, 600, 610, 642, 643, 645, 649
- [82] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 451, 600, 642, 645, 650
- [83] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 461, 600, 624, 642, 644, 645, 650
- [84] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 462, 600, 642, 645, 650
- [85] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 503, 600, 623, 642, 644, 646, 650
- [86] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Andriy SHVAIKA. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 523, 600, 642, 646, 652

- [87] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 472, 600, 642, 646, 654
- [88] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/lrsorbian.dtx>. 492, 600, 642, 646, 657
- [89] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 523, 600, 642, 646, 657
- [90] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/albanian.dtx>. 442, 600, 642, 646, 658
- [91] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 517, 600, 642, 646, 658
- [92] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/jura/>. 85, 197, 208, 389, 598, 600, 602, 624, 640, 642
- [93] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>. 600, 642
- [94] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The ϵ -TeX manual (version 2)*. The $\mathcal{N}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{S}$ Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf. 203, 219, 250, 600, 613, 640, 642
- [95] Samuele CARCAGNO. *My L^AT_EX Notes, The Messy Notes of a L^AT_EX User*. Available from: http://xoomer.alice.it/sam_psy/soft/my_latex_notes.pdf. 601, 643
- [96] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L^AT_EX*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006. 601, 643
- [97] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/xr.dtx>. 26, 225, 293, 601, 641, 643, 658

- [98] David P. CARLISLE. *The afterpage package*, October 1995.
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/afterpage.pdf>. 578, 598, 601,
 640, 643
- [99] David P. CARLISLE. *The file ltxdoc.dtx for use with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1999. Available
 from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.dtx>. 24, 202, 210,
 601, 602, 628, 643
- [100] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 225,
 601, 641, 643, 658
- [101] David P. CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005.
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 114, 601, 603,
 640, 643
- [102] Winston CHANG. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Cheat Sheet*, October 2006. Available from:
<http://www.stdout.org/~winston/latex/latexsheet.pdf>. 601, 643
- [103] Jean-Pascal CHAUVET. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from:
<http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>. 602, 643
- [104] Pehong CHEN and Michael A. HARRISON. *Index preparation and processing. Software
 – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988. 602, 620, 643
- [105] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts in PdfL^AT_EX* [online], September 2005.
 Available from: <http://ipe.comp.geom.org/pdftex.html>.
<mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr>. 602, 643
- [106] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make L^AT_EX (teL_EX) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online],
 December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>.
<mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 204, 602, 640, 643
- [107] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/subfigure.pdf>.
 31, 85, 135, 215, 223, 603, 641, 643, 654
- [108] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 50, 73, 85, 199,
 237, 258, 601, 603, 640, 643
- [109] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 31, 85, 142,
 199, 215, 223, 372, 603, 641, 643, 654
- [110] Oliver CORFF. *MonT_EX – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002.
<mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 41,
 195, 212, 440, 448, 449, 450, 453, 454, 497, 511, 526, 527, 609, 631, 641, 643

- [111] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch.Pentaglot.html>. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 213, 609, 643
- [112] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 212, 609, 643
- [113] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *MonTeX – Mongolian for L^AT_EX 2_ε, Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 41, 195, 212, 440, 448, 449, 450, 453, 454, 497, 511, 526, 527, 609, 611, 631, 641, 643
- [114] Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vartan AKOPIAN. *ArmTeX: a System for Writing in Armenian with T_EX and L^AT_EX* (written in armenian), June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>, <http://www-scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 41, 198, 440, 444, 566, 598, 599, 610, 640, 642, 643
- [115] Patrick W. DALY. *Graphics and Colour with L^AT_EX*, June 1998. D-37191 Katlenburg-Lindnau, Federal Republic of Germany. Available from: <http://tex.loria.fr/graph-pack/grf/grf.pdf>. 610, 643
- [116] Patrick W. DALY. *A package to Set Margins to Full Page*, February 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/preprint/fullpage.pdf>. 142, 610, 619, 640, 643
- [117] Patrick W. DALY. *Natural Sciences Citations and References (Autho-Year and Numerical Schemes)*, February 2007. This paper describes the natbib package (version 8.0), <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natbib.pdf>. 199, 216, 592, 610, 637, 641, 643
- [118] Patrick W. DALY. *Reference sheet for natbib package*, February 2007. <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natnotes.pdf>. 199, 216, 592, 610, 637, 641, 643
- [119] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 202, 611, 643
- [120] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *L^AT_EX, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003. 611, 643
- [121] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 204, 611, 643
- [122] Antoni R. DILLER. *L^AT_EX, Line by Line (Tips and Techniques for Document Processing)*. John Wiley & Sons, Chicester, second edition, January 1993. <mailto:A.R.Diller@cs.bham.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~ard/latex/latex.html>. 611, 643

- [123] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002.
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx>. 19, 96,
222, 562, 612, 641, 643, 652
- [124] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, March 2007.
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 96, 420,
612, 630, 640, 643
- [125] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, March 2007.
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 96, 420,
557, 593, 612, 630, 640, 643
- [126] Victor EIJKHOUT. *T_EX by Topic: A T_EXnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley,
Wokingham (England), 1992. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from:
<http://www.cs.utk.edu/~eijkhout/texbytopic-a4.pdf>. 612, 643
- [127] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>.
Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>.
609, 612, 640, 643
- [128] Victor EIJKHOUT and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Introduction to the Dutch L^AT_EX document
classes*, February 1994. Available from:
<http://http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/classdoc.pdf>.
600, 612, 642, 643
- [129] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiT_EX and the Iranian T_EX Community*.
TUGboat, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 41, 205, 440, 464, 613,
614, 619, 640, 643, 645, 648
- [130] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from:
<http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>. 602, 614, 640, 643
- [131] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T_EX FAQ. Your 396 Questions Answered*, November 2005.
Version 3.15a. Available from:
<ftp://cam.ctan.org/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>. 614, 643
- [132] Simon FEAR. *Publication quality tables in L^AT_EX (with the booktabs package)*, March
2003. In the absence of the author, contact Danie Els, <mailto:dnjels@sun.ac.za>.
Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/booktabs/booktabs.pdf>. 20,
600, 612, 614, 640, 643
- [133] Jürgen FENN. *Managing Citations and Your Bibliography with BibT_EX. The PracT_EX
Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/fenn/fenn.pdf>. 614, 643
- [134] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516,
November 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf>. 614, 643

- [135] Peter FLOM. *LT_EX for academics and researchers who (think they) don't need it*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(4), November 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/flom/flom.pdf>. 618, 643
- [136] Peter FLOM, Hans HAGEN, Joe HOGG, Nicola TALBOT, Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, and David WALDEN. *What is T_EX?* *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk> and <mailto:dave@walden-family.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/walden-what-is/all.pdf>. 618, 620, 621, 643, 644, 646, 655, 657
- [137] Peter L. FLOM. *A LT_EX Fledgling Struggles to Take Flight*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/flom/flom.pdf>. 618, 643
- [138] Peter FLYNN. *A categorized search of CTAN*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 618, 643
- [139] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with LT_EX*, March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/tex/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>. 618, 643
- [140] Peter FLYNN. *Rolling your own Document Class: Using LT_EX to keep away from the Dark Side*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 618, 643
- [141] Peter FLYNN. *The morefloats package*, January 2007. Available from: <http://latex.silmaril.ie/veryshortguide/veryshortguide.pdf>. 618, 643
- [142] Federico GARCIA. *Capabilities of PDF interactivity*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/garcia1/garcia1.pdf>. 619, 643
- [143] Hubert GÄSSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK. *The pict2e package*, August 2004. <mailto:HubertJG@open.min.de>, <mailto:Rolf.Niepraschk@ptb.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/pict2e/pict2e.pdf>. 55, 619, 638, 641, 643, 645, 647
- [144] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>. 619, 643
- [145] Chuck GENSCHTE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 220, 619, 643, 646, 657
- [146] Helen GILHOOLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile DESPRAIRES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 611, 613, 619, 643
- [147] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S. SUTOR. *The LT_EX Web Companion: Integrating T_EX, HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999. 619, 631, 643, 645, 646, 649, 654

- [148] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, June 2005.
<http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 204, 207, 225,
 237, 582, 619, 643, 656, 657
- [149] Enrico GREGORIO. *Babel, how to enjoy writing in different languages. The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:Enrico.Gregorio@sci.univr.it>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/gregorio/gregorio.pdf>. 619, 631, 643, 645
- [150] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph* **8**, July 2004. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 219, 598, 620, 640, 643
- [151] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>. 620, 643
- [152] Thế Thành HÀN. *The pdfT_EX Program*. In *EuroT_EX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from:
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>. 620,
 643
- [153] Thế Thành HÀN. *Micro-typographic extensions to the T_EX typesetting system. TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>. 620, 643
- [154] Thế Thành HÀN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, and Paweł JACKOWSKI. *The pdfT_EX user manual*, February 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/pdftex/manual/pdftex-a.pdf>. 620, 643,
 645, 649
- [155] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004.
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 57, 199,
 216, 600, 620, 640, 643
- [156] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004.
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 57, 216,
 620, 637, 641, 643
- [157] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>.
 Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 90, 210,
 585, 620, 627, 640, 643
- [158] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman T_EX for Mac and PC. TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf>. 620, 643
- [159] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, April 2004.
<mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X.desc.html>. 476, 478, 479, 620, 643

- [160] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of Ω : Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc.* *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 219, 620, 643, 645, 647
- [161] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. Ω , a $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes. In Wlodek BZYL and Tomasz PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 219, 545, 620, 643, 645, 647
- [162] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf. 620, 643, 645, 647
- [163] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/cahiers/r25-cahiers39-40/131-yannis.html>. 620, 643, 645, 647
- [164] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL. Ω , une extension de $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [161]. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPS/20-yannis.ps.gz>. 219, 620, 643, 645, 647
- [165] Alexander HARIN, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Vadim MASLOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 512, 602, 620, 629, 640, 643, 645, 646, 658
- [166] Stephen HARTKE. *A Survey of Free Math Fonts for $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and \LaTeX* . *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/hartke/hartke.pdf>. 620, 644
- [167] Jim HEFFERON. *CTAN for Starters*. *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [168] Jim HEFFERON. *Minutes in Less Than Hours: Using \LaTeX Resources*. *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 1(4), October 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 620, 644
- [169] Jim HEFFERON. *What I Wish I Had . . . When I Was A Lad — Using \LaTeX resources*. *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 620, 644
- [170] Thomas HENLICH. *The Marvosym Font Package*, May 2006. The font was designed by Martin VOGEL, <http://marvosym.de>, <mailto:thomas@henloch.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/psfonts/marvodoc.pdf>. 212, 620, 629, 640, 644, 646, 657
- [171] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 210, 259, 620, 629, 640, 644

- [172] Taco HOEKWATER, Hartmut HENKEL, and Hans HAGEN. *LUA_T_EX Reference*, March 2007.
<http://www.luatex.org/>. Available from:
<http://context.aanhet.net/svn/luatex/luatexref-t.pdf>. 219, 620, 628, 640, 643, 644
- [173] Alan HOENIG. *T_EX Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L_AT_EX
 & T_EX Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More. 621, 644
- [174] Klaus HÖPPNER. *Strategies for including graphics in L_AT_EX documents*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/hoepfner/hoepfner.pdf>. 621, 644
- [175] Don HOSEK. *The morefloats package*, July 1990.
<mailto:dhosek@ymir.claremont.edu>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/morefloats.sty>. 621, 631,
 641, 644
- [176] Hiroya IKEDA. *pL_AT_EX 2_ε*, September 2001. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>.
 Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 220, 623,
 641, 644, 647
- [177] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in L_AT_EX*⁴⁶, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and
furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp. Available from:
http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf. 619,
 623, 643, 644
- [178] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the Arabi package*. *The Users Guide*,
 February 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées,
 Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user_guide.pdf.
 36, 41, 198, 444, 465, 586, 599, 623, 640, 644
- [179] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in L_AT_EX 2_ε*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268,
 September 1994. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>. 624, 644, 645, 650
- [180] Alan JEFFREY and L_AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *The file ltnews.dtx for use with L_AT_EX 2_ε*,
 July 2001. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/ltnews.cls>. 24, 202, 210, 602,
 624, 627, 628, 644
- [181] Zhuhan JIANG. *The vruler package*, October 1996.
<mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>. 624, 641, 644,
 657
- [182] David M. JONES. *The hangcaption package*, August 1992.
<mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 50,
 76, 85, 207, 238, 257, 620, 624, 640, 644

⁴⁶This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [183] Ki-Joo KIM. *A BibT_EX Guide via Examples*, April 2004.
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:
http://www.geocities.com/bibtex_guide.pdf. 624, 644
- [184] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from E_T_EX*, April 2004.
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:
<http://www.geocities.com/latex2pdf.pdf>. 624, 644
- [185] Ki-Joo KIM. *E_T_EX Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/latex_fonts.pdf. 624, 644
- [186] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 34, 202, 624, 644
- [187] Donald E. KNUTH. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover T_EX3, 1991. 200, 209, 223, 224, 547, 624, 644
- [188] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 202, 624, 644
- [189] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T_EXbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [187], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 209, 602, 624, 643, 644
- [190] Un KOAUNGH. *H_ET_EX: a E_T_EX package for the Korean language support*, April 2005. In korean. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 195, 207, 440, 478, 479, 620, 624, 640, 644
- [191] Markus KOHM and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares E_T_EX 2_ε-Paket*, July 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 39, 47, 59, 71, 85, 137, 155, 195, 199, 208, 215, 222, 236, 237, 390, 580, 602, 624, 631, 644, 645, 651
- [192] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to E_T_EX*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 219, 610, 624, 643, 644
- [193] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in E_T_EX 2_ε*. *MAPS*, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from:
http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf. 624, 644
- [194] Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/omega/contrib/antomega/doc/omega/antomega/antomega.pdf>. 41, 198, 440, 472, 473, 474, 491, 504, 508, 509, 517, 518, 599, 623, 624, 640, 644
- [195] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>. 624, 644

- [196] Frank KÜSTER. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/>. 50, 73, 85, 197, 237, 258, 598, 624, 640, 644
- [197] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de T_EX et L^AT_EX*. Masson, Paris, December 1997. 625, 644
- [198] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT_EX—Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European T_EX Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf. 36, 41, 198, 440, 443, 480, 599, 625, 640, 644
- [199] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT_EX Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 36, 41, 198, 440, 443, 480, 599, 625, 640, 644
- [200] Leslie LAMPORT. *MakeIndex, An Index Processor For L^AT_EX*, 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf>. 625, 644
- [201] Leslie LAMPORT. *L^AT_EX: A Document Preparation System — User's Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 54, 209, 625, 644
- [202] Leslie LAMPORT, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *NTG Document Classes for L^AT_EX version 2e*, June 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/ntgclass.pdf>. 600, 612, 625, 642, 643, 644
- [203] Leslie LAMPORT, L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Producing proceedings articles with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, November 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/proc.dtx>. 24, 202, 600, 602, 625, 627, 642, 644, 648
- [204] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for L^AT_EX version 2e*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 24, 56, 68, 195, 198, 199, 202, 221, 599, 600, 602, 625, 630, 642, 644, 645, 649
- [205] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *Standard Letter Document Class for L^AT_EX version 2e*, April 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/letter.dtx>. 56, 202, 209, 600, 602, 625, 627, 630, 642, 644, 645, 646, 651
- [206] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>. 627, 644
- [207] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 29, 618, 627, 640, 644

- [208] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 36, 452, 510, 627, 628, 644, 645
- [209] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>. 20, 611, 627, 640, 644
- [210] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/loutput.dtx>. 29, 220, 413, 618, 627, 640, 644
- [211] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for authors*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 195, 627, 644
- [212] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 195, 627, 644
- [213] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 195, 216, 277, 354, 358, 627, 644
- [214] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 204, 216, 627, 644
- [215] Philipp LEHMAN. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/Type1fonts/fontinstallationguide/fontinstallationguide.pdf>. 627, 644
- [216] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for L^AT_EX 2_ε — Multilingual support beyond babel*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 36, 41, 201, 223, 440, 456, 476, 477, 478, 479, 486, 487, 488, 520, 602, 627, 640, 644
- [217] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], August 2005. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 36, 41, 201, 223, 440, 456, 476, 477, 478, 479, 486, 487, 488, 520, 602, 627, 640, 644
- [218] Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN. *The vietnam package*, October 2006. <mailto:wl@gnu.org>, <mailto:hanthethanh@gmx.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/>. 41, 525, 620, 627, 641, 643, 644, 657
- [219] Knut LICKERT. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for people in associations: minutes.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:knut@lickert.net> et <http://tex.lickert.net/packages/minutes/index.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/minutes.pdf>. 212, 277, 379, 627, 630, 641, 645
- [220] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 50, 72, 85, 206, 237, 257, 619, 627, 640, 645

- [221] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001.
<mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.dtx>. 29, 618, 627,
 640, 645
- [222] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997.
<mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University
 of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy.
 Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>.
 50, 72, 85, 222, 237, 258, 628, 641, 645, 651
- [223] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced L^AT_EX*, September 1994. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available
 from: [http:
 //www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/latex-advanced.pdf](http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/latex-advanced.pdf).
 628, 645
- [224] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006.
 Available from:
<http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>.
<mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. 628, 645
- [225] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur L^AT_EX sans jamais
 oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from:
<http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>. 628, 645
- [226] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates,
 Inc, September 1993. 195, 202, 550, 628, 645
- [227] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”*,
 1996. See [226]. Available from:
<ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 195, 202, 628, 645
- [228] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999.
 628, 645
- [229] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005.
<mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. 57, 223,
 629, 641, 645, 653
- [230] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of BibT_EX)*, June 2005.
<mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from:
http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf. 195, 199, 629,
 645
- [231] Sven MATTISSON. *SE_T_EX: Swedish speaking version of L^AT_EX* [online], November 1989.
 Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>.
<mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>. 41, 223, 520, 629, 641, 645, 652
- [232] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002.
<mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 50, 67, 85, 128, 222,
 236, 256, 629, 641, 645, 651

- [233] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006.
<mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/thailatex/>. 223, 520, 624, 629, 641, 644, 645, 646, 648, 652, 655
- [234] Frank MITTELBACH. ε -T_EX: *Guidelines for future T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>. 613, 630, 640, 645
- [235] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts”* [33]. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>. 630, 645
- [236] Frank MITTELBACH. *Producing slides with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1997. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/slides.dtx>. 202, 602, 630, 645, 652
- [237] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000.
<mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 87, 114, 630, 637, 641, 645
- [238] Frank MITTELBACH. *The varioref package*, April 2003. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/tools/varioref.pdf>. 630, 641, 645, 657
- [239] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>. 20, 611, 630, 640, 641, 645, 652
- [240] Frank MITTELBACH. *The dblacnt package*, April 2005. The current maintainer is Werner LEMBERG, <mailto:w1@gnu.org>, <mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/dblacnt.sty>. 580, 610, 627, 630, 640, 644, 645
- [241] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>. 600, 611, 612, 630, 640, 642, 643, 645, 646, 657
- [242] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The L^AT_EX Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 29, 141, 195, 210, 215, 220, 413, 600, 601, 618, 619, 630, 640, 642, 643, 645, 650
- [243] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Der L^AT_EX-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version. 600, 601, 619, 630, 642, 643, 645, 650
- [244] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *L^AT_EX Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER,

- Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 576, 599, 600, 601, 602, 619, 621, 630, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 650, 653
- [245] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. TUGboat, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>. 630, 645, 650
- [246] Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, Alan JEFFREY, and David P. CARLISLE. *The main structure of documents*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltxclass.dtx>. 601, 624, 630, 643, 644, 645, 650
- [247] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>. 631, 645
- [248] Lapo Filippo MORI. *LT_εXpedia: the future of LT_εX documentation*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori2/mori2.pdf>. 631, 645
- [249] Lapo Filippo MORI. *Tables in LT_εX 2_ε: Packages and Methods*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori/mori.pdf>. 631, 645
- [250] Michael A. MORRISON. *LT_εX Links* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~morrison/LaTeX/index.html>. <mailto:morrison@mail.nhn.ou.edu>. 631, 645
- [251] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/textsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 512, 627, 637, 640, 645
- [252] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *The KOMA-Script Bundle*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 39, 47, 59, 71, 85, 137, 155, 195, 199, 208, 215, 222, 236, 237, 390, 580, 602, 624, 631, 637, 644, 645, 651
- [253] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: A LT_εX Survivor's Guide*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/null-bh02/null-bh02.pdf>. 639, 645
- [254] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: Topic #1: Creating my first LT_εX article, Part 3*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/null-bh03/null-bh03.pdf>. 639, 645
- [255] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfT_εX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT_εX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 85, 621, 639, 640, 645

- [256] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à \LaTeX 2 ϵ* . *Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [257] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 195, 618, 621, 639, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 650
- [257] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to \LaTeX 2 ϵ* , May 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 195, 202, 209, 553, 621, 639, 642, 644, 645, 646, 650
- [258] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *\LaTeX 2 ϵ po polsku czyli \P\TeX (wersja 1.3.1)*, May 2003. In polish. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/platex/polski.dtx>. 41, 220, 504, 639, 641, 645, 646, 647, 657
- [259] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *\LaTeX à 200%*. O'Reilly France, November 2006. Unavailable. 627, 640, 644, 645
- [260] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your \LaTeX Package*, November 2004. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/dtxut/dtxtut.pdf>. 641, 645
- [261] Scott PAKIN. *The Comprehensive \LaTeX Symbols List*, September 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/symbols/comprehensive/>. 641, 645
- [262] Scott PAKIN. *The newcommand.py utility*, January 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/support/newcommand/newcommand.pdf>. 637, 641, 645, 656
- [263] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the \TeX / \LaTeX systems* [online], January 2001. Available from: <http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. 41, 199, 440, 447, 599, 640, 641, 645
- [264] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in \TeX* . *TUGboat*, 20(2):119–126, 1999. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>. 641, 645
- [265] Anshuman PANDEY, John SMITH, Dominik WUJASTYK, Zdeněk WAGNER, and Kevin CARMODY. *Devanāgarī for \TeX* , May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>, <mailto:jds10@cam.ac.uk>, <mailto:d.wujastyk@ucl.ac.uk>, <mailto:wagner@cesnet.cz> and <mailto:i@kevincarmody.org>, home page: <http://devnag.sarovar.org/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/deneric/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 41, 204, 207, 440, 458, 482, 601, 611, 640, 641, 643, 645, 646, 653, 657
- [266] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, Paris, September 2003. 476, 478, 479, 641, 645

- [267] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibTeXing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibTeX users. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 199, 642, 645
- [268] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibTeX Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibTeX's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 199, 642, 645
- [269] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [271]. 602, 610, 640, 642, 643, 645, 646, 657, 658
- [270] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [271]. 610, 642, 643, 645, 646, 657, 658
- [271] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 554, 610, 642, 643, 645, 646, 657, 658
- [272] Kasper PEETERS. *HyperTeX FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from:
<http://arxiv.org/hypertext/>. 208, 225, 621, 640, 642, 645
- [273] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>. 600, 643, 645, 646, 647, 655
- [274] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in Ω* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from:
<http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega9papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 219, 620, 643, 645, 647
- [275] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in Ω* . In *Congrès EuroTeX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 219, 620, 643, 645, 647
- [276] C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN. *ETEX Tutorial, A Primer*, September 2003. Floor III, SJP Buildings, Cotton Hills, Trivandrum 695014, India. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org.in/tutorials.html>. 645, 649
- [277] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 59, 69, 85, 207, 211, 225, 234, 256, 394, 621, 639, 640, 645, 649
- [278] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in ETeX: a manual for hyperref*, February 2004. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 85, 115, 621, 639, 640, 645, 649

- [279] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem T_EX und DANTE, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung T_EX e.V.*, September 2003. Version 72. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>. 620, 638, 643, 645, 649
- [280] Adrian REZUŞ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian T_EX*, October 1996.
<mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>.
506, 507, 641, 645, 649, 650
- [281] Yuri ROBBERS, Markus KOHM, and Rasmus Pank ROULUND. *Replacing L^AT_EX 2_ε standard classes by KOMA-Script. The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006.
<mailto:yuri.robbers@gmail.com>, mailto:rasmus_pank@yahoo.dk and
<http://www.komascript.de>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robbers/robbers.pdf>. 39, 47, 59, 71, 85, 137, 155,
199, 208, 215, 222, 236, 237, 390, 580, 602, 624, 644, 645, 650, 651
- [282] Will ROBERTSON. *Productivity with macros and packages. The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(3), 2006. <mailto:wspr81@gmail.com>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robertson/robertson.pdf>. 645, 650
- [283] Christian ROLLAND. *L^AT_EX par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999.
<mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanafoo.fr>. 645, 650
- [284] Chris A. ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents. TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-3/tb64rowl.pdf>. 645, 650
- [285] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 34, 641, 645,
650, 656
- [286] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec L^AT_EX 2_ε*, June 2001.
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>. 646, 650
- [287] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005.
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>. 646, 650
- [288] Walter SCHMIDT. *Font selection in L^AT_EX: The most frequently asked questions. The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/schmidt/schmidt.pdf>. 646, 651
- [289] Thomas A. SCHMITZ. *Mastering texmf-trees. The PracT_EX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:thomas.schmitz@uni-bonn.de>,
<http://www.uni-bonn.de/www/Philologie/Personnal/Schmitz.html>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/schmitz/schmitz.pdf>. 646, 651
- [290] Martin SCHRÖDER. *The multitoc package*, June 1999.
<mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx>. 89, 637, 641,
646, 651

- [291] Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Lianyi SONG, and Charles GREThER. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 611, 619, 643, 646, 651, 653
- [292] Michael SHELL and David HOADLEY. *BibT_EXing Tips and FAQ*, January 2007. Available from: <http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf>. 199, 620, 644, 646, 652
- [293] Sindhu SINGH. *Our Introduction to L^AT_EX*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/singh/singh.pdf>. 646, 652
- [294] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption2 package*, November 2005. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 200, 259, 601, 640, 646, 653
- [295] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, February 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/anleitung.pdf>. 85, 601, 640, 646, 653
- [296] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Typesetting captions with the caption package*, February 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 200, 258, 601, 640, 646, 653
- [297] D. P. STORY. *Using L^AT_EX to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from: <http://www.math.uakron/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>. 646, 654
- [298] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using L^AT_EX*. Springer, October 2002. Available from: <http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>. 646, 653, 654, 656
- [299] Nicola TALBOT. *Creating a PDF document using PDFL^AT_EX*, July 2004. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/pdfdoc/pdfdoc-a4.pdf>. 646, 655
- [300] Daniel TAUPIN[†]. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 50, 69, 85, 225, 236, 256, 641, 646, 655, 657
- [301] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. <mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/>. 50, 72, 85, 221, 237, 257, 641, 646, 649, 656
- [302] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de L^AT_EX 2_ε (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>. 614, 620, 643, 644, 646, 656

- [303] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to \LaTeX 2_ε usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>. 614, 643, 646, 656
- [304] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS⁴⁷. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers \TeX* , June 2004. French translation of [305] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 223, 224, 229, 602, 643, 645, 646, 648, 656
- [305] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A \TeX DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for \TeX Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 223, 224, 229, 557, 646, 656
- [306] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 114, 619, 640, 646, 656
- [307] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 204
- [308] Piet VAN OOSTRUM. *\TeX Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>. 646, 657
- [309] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec Bib \TeX* , 2003. Available from: http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz. 646, 657
- [310] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting. 476, 646, 657
- [311] Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE, and Tony ROBERTS. *The minitoc-hyper package*, May 1999. **This package is obsolete, use now the minitoc package [125]**, <mailto:verna@inf.enst.fr>, <mailto:Bernd.Jaehne@aeon.de>, <mailto:aroberts@usq.edu.au>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/minitoc-hyper.sty>. 59, 211, 234, 623, 630, 640, 644, 645, 646, 650, 657
- [312] Boris VEYTSMAN. *Notes on principles and \TeX implementation*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. <mailto:borisv@lk.net>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/veytsman-design/veytsman-design.pdf>. 646, 657
- [313] André VIOLANTE. *\LaTeX : Notions de base*. Dunod, January 2007. Unavailable. 646, 657
- [314] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977. 646, 657

⁴⁷TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a \TeX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).

- [315] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in E_T_X*, March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 195, 627, 644, 646, 657
- [316] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>. 646, 657
- [317] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
1. Basics.
 2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
 3. Tokens, Macros.
 4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T_EX). 260, 646, 657
- [318] Douglas WAUD and Tim NULL. `\begin{here}`. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:douglas.waud@umassmed.edu>, <http://users.umassmed.edu/douglas.waud/>, and <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/waud/waud.pdf>. 639, 645, 646, 657
- [319] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P_ET_EX i pdfP_ET_EX*, May 2005. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.gust.org.pl/doc/poczatki/platex.html>. 41, 220, 504, 641, 646, 647, 657
- [320] Daphne WEST and Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006. 611, 643, 646, 652, 657
- [321] Graham WILLIAMS. *Graham Williams' T_EX Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000. Last version at: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>. 646, 657
- [322] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 221, 223, 641, 646, 654, 657
- [323] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 54, 216, 637, 641, 646, 657
- [324] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 42, 61, 68, 75, 85, 114, 128, 214, 215, 224, 390, 641, 646, 656, 657
- [325] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 50, 67, 85, 197, 235, 393, 598, 640, 646, 657

- [326] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 60,
 85, 198, 235, 389, 599, 640, 646, 657
- [327] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 47,
 85, 92, 97, 101, 140, 214, 215, 224, 234, 389, 641, 646, 656, 657
- [328] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>. 641,
 646, 656, 657
- [329] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 51, 69,
 85, 200, 259, 601, 640, 646, 657
- [330] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>. 611, 640,
 646, 657
- [331] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 62, 69,
 85, 211, 234, 236, 259, 269, 392, 602, 629, 646, 657
- [332] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 62,
 69, 85, 211, 234, 236, 259, 269, 392, 602, 629, 646, 657
- [333] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>.
 50, 72, 85, 221, 237, 257, 641, 646, 650, 657
- [334] Peter R. WILSON. *The memoir standard class*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/wilson/wilson.pdf>. 62, 69, 85, 211, 234, 236, 259,
 269, 392, 602, 629, 646, 657
- [335] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 208, 260,
 599, 623, 640, 642, 646, 657
- [336] C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. *KannadaT_EX* [online], April 2004.
 Available from: <http://sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex/>.
<mailto:yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in>, <mailto:yogacs@users.sarovar.org>,
<mailto:subbukk@users.sarovar.org>. 489, 624, 640, 646, 654, 658

- [337] Charlie S. ZENDER. *LT_EX Cheat Sheet*, August 2006. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: <http://www.dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>. 646, 658
- [338] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV and Vadim MASLOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/supported/lhcy/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>, <mailto:vadik@cs.umd.edu>. 512, 513, 627, 640, 646, 658

Changes History

★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
 - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
 - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
 - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
 - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
 - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
 - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
 - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyces` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
 - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
 - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
 - At least three passes (3) of \LaTeX are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
 - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).

- Some mods added to work with xr (external references). xr version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ version 02

- 1993/07/05
 - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying \@caption.

※ version 03

- 1993/07/09
 - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ version 04

- 1993/07/09
 - Added \if@realch to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
 - The package mtcoff allows you to use a L^AT_EX document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

★ version 05

- 1993/07/13
 - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ version 06

- 1993/07/15
 - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete \caption stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [123] package).

★ version 07

- 1993/07/22
 - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David P. CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. \chapterend and \minitocno are suppressed, \minitoc, \dominitoc and \faketableofcontents added.

★ version 08

- 1993/07/29
 - Spacing adjustments.

★ version 09

- 1993/08/04

- Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ **version 10**

- 1993/08/05
 - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ **version 11**

- 1993/08/18
 - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ **version 12**

- 1993/12/16
 - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
 - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
 - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ **version 13**

- 1993/12/17
 - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ **version 14**

- 1994/01/03
 - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
 - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
 - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
 - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
 - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ **version 15**

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- ★ **version 16**
 - 1994/02/02
 - Bug fixes (typos).
- ★ **version 17**
 - 1994/06/23
 - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
 - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).
- ★ **version 18**
 - 1994/06/26
 - Make `minitoc` really compatible with $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$.
 - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes L. BRAAMS).
- ★ **version 19**
 - 1994/08/16
 - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
 - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
 - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
 - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michael RYNNING).
 - Corrected appendix in articles.
- ★ **version 20**
 - 1994/08/25
 - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
 - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.
 - Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
 - Corrected vertical spacing.
 - Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.
- ★ **version 21**
 - 1994/09/07

- Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

★ version 22

- 1994/10/10
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

★ version 23

- 1994/11/08
 - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
 - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
 - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
 - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
 - Removed appendix stuff.

★ version 24

- 1994/12/21
 - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the \LaTeX 2 ϵ release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

★ version 25

- 1996/09/13
 - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

★ version 26

- 1996/11/14
 - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
 - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

★ version 27

- 1996/12/20
 - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
 - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
 - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
 - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

★ version 28

- 1997/10/29

- Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
 - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
 - Added the `shorttext` package option.
 - Added *coffee* stuff.
 - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
 - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
 - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU: `{\let@dottedtocline@undottedtocline}{}` should probably be `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}` (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
 - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
 - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.
- ★ version 29
 - 1999/03/16
 - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
 - 1999/06/28
 - Added the armenian language (from ArmTeX [114]).
 - 1999/07/23
 - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
 - 1999/07/29
 - Added the lithuanian language.
- ★ version 30
 - 1999/12/06
 - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
 - Corrected a bug in `\sltnam` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).
- ★ version 31
 - 2000/04/04
 - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.
- ★ version 32
 - 2000/08/08
 - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
 - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
 - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
 - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
 - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
 - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
 - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
 - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
 - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
 - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
 - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
 - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
 - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
 - Added the `interlingua` language.

★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
 - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
 - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
 - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19

- Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
 - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
 - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
 - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.
- ※ **version 37**
- 2003/01/24
 - Version #37 dropped.
- ★ **version 38**
- 2003/01/24
 - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
 - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L^AT_EX).
 - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
 - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
 - Changed the test for empty titles.
 - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
 - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
 - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
 - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
 - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).
 - Corrected `secttocs`, at least.
- 2003/03/18
 - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.
- ★ **version 39**
- 2003/04/09
 - Modern font commands for compatibility with the `memoir` class.
 - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and `memoir` class.
- 2003/06/08

- Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the `notoccite` package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the `notoccite` package option (loads the `notoccite` package).
 - 2004/09/08
 - Added language options and `.mld` files for dialects: `canadian (english)`, `acadian`, `acadien`, `canadien (french)`, `naustrian`, `ngerman (ngermanb)`.
 - Added comments in `.mld` files using special fonts.
 - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
 - 2004/09/17
 - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.
- ★ version 40
- 2004/12/09
 - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
 - Removed the test on the presence of the `multicol` package in `minitoc.tex`, because `multicol` is a required package.
 - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
 - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
 - Added a paragraph about a problem with the `appendix` package.
 - 2004/12/13
 - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
 - 2004/12/14
 - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
 - 2004/12/20
 - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).
- ★ version 41
- 2005/01/05
 - Corrections in documentation.
 - Message added if some sectionning commands are not available.
 - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
 - 2005/01/06
 - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
 - 2005/01/10
 - Added bibliography.
 - 2005/01/11

- \mathcal{AMS} classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
 - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`.
 - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
 - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
 - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
 - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
 - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
 - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
 - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
 - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03
 - Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
 - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
 - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
 - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
 - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
 - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ **version 42**

- 2005/02/14
 - Version 42 not released.
 - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
 - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
 - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ **version 43**

- 2005/02/21
 - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
 - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
 - Fixed a bug in `mtccoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
 - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
 - Moved history to the end of package code.
 - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
 - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
 - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
- 2005/03/08
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
 - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
 - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
 - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
 - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
 - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
 - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.

- 2005/03/18
 - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
 - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
 - Added a hint for the `abstract` package.
- 2005/04/07
 - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
 - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
 - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
 - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
 - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
 - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
 - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
 - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
 - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26
 - Fixed rules in `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`.
- 2005/05/30
 - Fixed chapter-level entries in `parttocs`, when page numbers must be removed.
 - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
 - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
 - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
 - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
 - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
 - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
 - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
 - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06

- Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
 - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
 - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
 - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
 - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
 - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
 - Added “OUI”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
 - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
 - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
 - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29
 - Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
 - Added `castillian.mld`.
 - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
 - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
 - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
 - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
 - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
 - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21

- Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
 - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
 - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
 - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
 - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitoc`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
 - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending on the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
 - The `memoir` class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
 - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
 - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
 - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
 - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.
 - Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
 - Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
 - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
 - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
 - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
 - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
 - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
 - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
 - Added a note about the rubber tool.

- 2005/09/15
 - Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
 - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ **version 44**

- 2005/09/26
 - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
 - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
 - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
 - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
 - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
 - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
 - Corrected typos.
 - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
 - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
 - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.
 - Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.
- 2005/10/04
 - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
 - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02

- Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
 - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
 - Added the french L^AT_EX Companion [244].
- 2005/11/09
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
 - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
 - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
- 2005/11/16
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
 - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23

- Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Reordering a long sequence of citations.
 - Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
 - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
 - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
 - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
 - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.

- 2005/12/08
 - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
 - Corrections of french quotes.
 - Added some PDF options.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected an URL to the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
 - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
 - Correction of typos.
 - Added some labels.
 - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
 - The documentation needs 4 \LaTeX runs.
- 2005/12/22
 - Made some messages shorter.
 - Corrections in the list of messages.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
 - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
 - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04
 - Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
 - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
 - Added “*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected the bibliography entry about `BangTeX`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Used the `afterpage` package [98] in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10

- Corrections in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the bahasam language.
 - Added the albanian language.
 - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
 - Updated french.mld (removing abusive uppercase letters).
 - Corrected the italian.mld file. Added the italian2 language.
 - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
 - Renamed the bahasa language as bahasai; bahasa is synonym of bahasai.
 - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of bahasam.
 - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of bahasai.
- 2006/01/12
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgements.
 - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
 - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of japanese3.mld.
 - Added comments in some .mld files.
 - Added magyar3.mld.
 - Updated lithuanian.mld.
- 2006/01/16
 - Correction in \mtcaddsection.
- 2006/01/17
 - Correction in \mtcfixindex and \mtcfixglossary.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
 - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in minitoc.bug) about the initialization of fonts.
 - Added romanian2.mld and romanian3.mld.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Load some packages before hyperref.
 - Added spanish4.mld.
- 2006/01/23

- Corrected the table about default titles.
 - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
 - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
 - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
 - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [191, 252, 281], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
 - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
 - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
 - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02
 - Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added package `dblaccnt` [240] for the “The pdfTeX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN).
- 2006/02/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13

- Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
 - Added `kannada.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
 - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
 - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowlegments.
- 2006/02/17
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
 - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
 - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8` and `hanja-u8`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
 - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
 - Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
 - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `polски.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
 - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.

- 2006/03/02
 - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [148].
- 2006/03/06
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
 - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
 - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
 - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
 - The messages are now numbered.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
 - Added FAQ 37 about `.mld` files and `babel`.
 - Added `french1.mld` and `french2.mld`.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
 - Added `english1.mld` and `english2.mld`.

★ version 45

- 2006/03/31
 - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.

- Added `arab2.mld`, `bicig3.mld`, `buryat2.mld`, `xalx2.mld`, and `xalx3.mld`.
- 2006/04/03
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
 - Added `swedish2.mld`.
 - The `insection` package option loads also the `flafter` package.
- 2006/04/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
 - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
 - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13
 - In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
 - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
 - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - Added comments about the `insection` option.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
 - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
 - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03

- Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
 - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
 - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
 - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
 - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05

- Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/08
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.
- ★ **version 46**
- 2006/06/09
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/21
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
 - 2006/06/22
 - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
 - Added chapter “Example files”.
 - 2006/06/23
 - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
 - Use the `lipsum` package [157] in some of the examples of documents.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/27
 - Update the examples of documents.
 - Added the `second.tex` example file.
 - 2006/06/29
 - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
 - 2006/06/30
 - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
 - 2006/07/03
 - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
 - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
 - 2006/07/04
 - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - 2006/07/07
 - Corrections of typos.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
 - Correction in `french2.mld`.

- 2006/07/10
 - Correction in minilots and minilofs (and siblings) about depth.
 - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
 - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
 - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
 - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
 - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
 - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
 - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc1` in the list of files.
 - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
 - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.

★ version 47

- 2006/07/26
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
 - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Ayabi` system [178]).
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
 - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
 - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
 - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.

- Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
 - Minor correction in warning message F0008.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).

★ version 48

- 2006/08/04
 - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
 - Update the bibliography.
 - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
 - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
 - Increasing `\textwidth`.
 - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
 - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
 - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
 - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).
- 2006/08/28
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
 - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
 - Update the bibliography.
 - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
 - Update the bibliography.

- Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
 - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
 - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
 - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
 - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
 - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
 - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
 - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
 - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
 - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
 - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
 - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
 - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
 - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
 - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
 - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
 - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
 - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
 - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.
 - Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
 - Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
 - Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
 - Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
 - Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsfc.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
 - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
 - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
 - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
 - Added a figure about systems derived from \TeX and \LaTeX .
- 2006/09/13
 - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
 - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
 - Simplifications in the scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
 - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Fixed typos.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
 - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
 - Improving some tables.
 - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
 - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.
 - Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2006/11/06
 - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
 - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.
 - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the `english.mld` file.
- 2006/11/13

- The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

★ **version 50**

- 2006/11/17
 - Removed old examples of documents: *mtc-adds.tex*, *mtc-amem.tex*, *mtc-book.tex*, *mtc-gaps.tex*, *mtc-mem1.tex*, *mtc-subf.tex*, and *mtc-tsfc.tex*.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the *tmk* script and a table describing a TDS structure for *minitoc*.
 - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
 - Updated the *INSTALL* file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
 - Added the warning message **W0094** with the list of the missing *minitoc* languages files (*.mld* and *.mlo*).
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Updated the *INSTALL* file and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the file *minitoc-tds.zip* (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

★ **version 51**

- 2006/12/18
 - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.
- 2006/12/20
 - Improving the index: names.
 - Updated some *.mld* files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
 - Miscellaneous corrections.
 - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
 - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
 - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
 - Indexing the files.
 - Renamed the file “*catalog*” into “*CATALOG*”.
 - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
 - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

★ **version 52**

- 2007/01/11
 - Correction of index ordering.
 - Default option in boldface in the index.

- Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
- Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
 - Added fake sections in the “Examples of documents” chapter.
 - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
 - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
 - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
 - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
 - Corrected the name `Thế Thành HÀN` (first name before last name, the english way).
 - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
 - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
 - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
 - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
 - Trying to use a recent version of the `cite [10]` package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with `hyperref`.
- 2007/01/26
 - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29
 - Correction of the indexing of the environments.
- 2007/01/31
 - Improving the index layout.
 - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
 - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
 - Indexing the names of authors.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
 - Updated the acknowledgements.

★ version 53

- 2007/02/13
 - Added the example file `mtc-fko.tex`.
 - Corrected `\kernafterminitoc` and `siblings`.

- 2007/02/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.
- 2007/03/02
 - Added a header to the index, to explain notations.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Changed the style of page and line numbers in the index.
 - Updated `kannada.mld`.
 - Dangerous bend symbols are now in the right margin.
- 2007/03/06
 - Improved the presentation of example files.
 - Using the `natbib` package [117, 118] to sort the sequences of citations.
- 2007/03/09
 - Correction in table 7.2 on page 228.
 - Renamed `minitoc-texmf.zip` into `minitoc-tds.zip`.
- 2007/03/19
 - Use the `sort&compress` option of the `natbib` package [117, 118] to compress the sequences of citations; the `hypernat` package must also be loaded (after `natbib` and `hyperref`).
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/03/22
 - Added changing the title of the parttoc for appendices in `mtc-apx.tex`.

Index

In this index, italic style numbers (*123*) are page numbers, normal roman numbers (123) are code line references for usage, bold roman numbers (**123**) are code line references for definitions; colored numbers in square brackets, like this: \hookrightarrow [125], are bibliographic references, eventually sorted and compressed.

The names of commands, environments, files, suffixes, options and languages, are in typewriter font (**bold** for default options or the default language). The names of tools, packages and classes are in sans serif font. The people names are in roman for the first names, in SMALL CAPS for the family names, separated by a comma, the family name first⁴⁸, like in “LAMPOR, Leslie” in the index.

Symbols

.F (extension)	51, 195, 282	.log (extension)	29, 31, 48, 49, 52, 54, 77, 139, 145, 146, 157, 163, 194, 196, 207, 249, 251, 266, 267, 388, 411, 412, 440, 569, 590
.G (extension)	51, 195, 318	.lot (extension)	26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 263–265, 267, 290, 291, 301, 318, 327, 341, 349, 431, 565, 567
.H (extension)	51, 196, 340	.maf (extension)	49, 77, 148, 196, 210, 236, 382, 414, 575
.M (extension)	51, 196, 279	.mld (extension)	19, 35, 36, 41, 67, 72, 78, 149, 157, 163, 180, 189, 191, 196, 198, 201, 226, 228, 232, 233, 235, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382–384, 436, 439, 440, 468, 565, 567, 569, 573, 574, 579, 582, 589, 590
.P (extension)	51, 196, 318	.mlf (extension)	26, 51, 196, 282, 290
.S (extension)	51, 196, 340	.mlo (extension)	19, 36, 41, 67, 149, 158, 163, 181, 196, 201, 202, 206, 226, 228, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382, 384, 436, 440, 495, 574, 582, 589, 590
.T (extension)	51, 197, 285	.mlt (extension)	26, 51, 196, 285, 290
.U (extension)	51, 197, 318	.mtc (extension)	26, 48, 51, 55, 56, 58, 196, 261, 267, 268, 279, 290, 414, 561
.V (extension)	51, 197, 341	.mtc1 (extension)	267, 414, 586
.aux (extension)	52, 55, 57, 60, 195, 199, 255	.pdf (extension)	228
.bst (extension)	204, 207, 225, 227–229, 238, 587		
.cls (extension)	195		
.dtx (extension)	41, 195, 196, 230, 236, 440, 514, 572		
.ins (extension)	195, 196, 230, 236		
.ist (extension)	206, 212, 227–229, 572, 573, 575		
.lan (extension)	206, 212, 227–229, 418		
.lof (extension)	26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 263–266, 290, 291, 299, 318, 325, 340, 347, 431, 567		

⁴⁸For some oriental names (like japanese, korean, vietnamese or indian names), it is sometimes difficult to know which is the first or the last name.

- .plf (extension) 29, 51, 196, 318
- .plt (extension) 29, 51, 196, 318
- .pre (extension) 212, 227–229, 576, 581
- .ptc (extension) 29, 51, 196, 318
- .slf (extension) 28, 51, 196, 340
- .slt (extension) 28, 51, 196, 341
- .stc (extension) 28, 51, 196, 340
- .sty (extension) . . 197, 219, 226, 229, 230, 232, 565
- .tar (extension) 230
- .tex (extension) 146, 197
- .tgz (extension) 230
- .toc (extension) . 26, 47, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173–175, 197, 199, 232, 263–266, 274, 275, 290, 291, 296, 318, 322, 340, 345, 431, 562, 565, 567
- .zip (extension) 230
- /tmp/‘whoami’.imk (file) 229
- /tmp/‘whoami’.rmk (file) 230
- /tmp/‘whoami’.tmk (file) 229, 230
- /tmp/‘whoami’/OLD (file) 586
- \@@dominilof **3573, 3611**
- \@@dominilot **3592, 3611**
- \@dominitoc (command) 291
- \@@dominitoc **3539, 3554, 3611**
- \@@dopartlof 4287, **4307**
- \@@dopartlot 4306, **4307**
- \@@doparttoc 4268, **4307**
- \@@dosectlof 4901, **4921**
- \@@dosectlot 4920, **4921**
- \@@dosecttoc 4882, **4921**
- \@M . 1464, 1474, 3036, 3462, 3485, 3498, 4217, 4789, 4790, 4822
- \@Undottedtocline (command) 289
- \@Undottedtocline **3480, 6121, 7712**
- \@Undottedtoclinep (command) 289
- \@Undottedtoclinep . **3493, 3508**, 3520, 3523, 3526, 3531, 3534, 3537, **7712**
- \@addtoreset 933, 1189
- \@afterheading . **3940, 3954, 3968**, 7800, 7808
- \@afterindenttrue 3035, 3484, 3497
- \@caption (command) 562
- \@centercr 3251, **3989**, 4582
- \@chapter (command) 49, 265, 288, 395
- \@chapter . . **1, 2967, 3464, 6651, 7346**, 7774, 7776
- \@dominilof **3544**, 3612
- \@dominilof@used@false 2749
- \@dominilof@used@true 3584
- \@dominilot **3549**, 3613
- \@dominilot@used@false 2750
- \@dominilot@used@true 3603
- \@dominitoc (command) 291
- \@dominitoc **3539**, 3611
- \@dominitoc@used@false 2748
- \@dominitoc@used@true (command) 291
- \@dominitoc@used@true 3565
- \@dopartlof **4239**, 4308
- \@dopartlof@used@false 2743
- \@dopartlof@used@true 4280
- \@dopartlot **4243**, 4309
- \@dopartlot@used@false 2744
- \@dopartlot@used@true 4299
- \@doparttoc **4235**, 4307
- \@doparttoc@used@false 2742
- \@doparttoc@used@true 4261
- \@dosectlof **4853**, 4922
- \@dosectlof@used@false 2755
- \@dosectlof@used@true 4894
- \@dosectlot (command) 572
- \@dosectlot **4857**, 4923
- \@dosectlot@used@false 2756
- \@dosectlot@used@true 4913
- \@dosecttoc **4849**, 4921
- \@dosecttoc@used@false 2754
- \@dosecttoc@used@true 4875
- \@dotsep (command) 42, 43, 361
- \@dotsep . **5521**, 5534, 5539, 5544, 5549, 5554, 5559, 5564, 5569, 5574
- \@dottedtocline (command) . 67, 68, 268, 289, 310, 313, 316, 333, 335, 338
- \@dottedtocline . . . **3311, 3381, 3447, 3462, 3508**, 3520, 3523, 3526, 3531, 3534, 3537, **4053, 4128, 4201, 4217, 4642, 4710, 4775, 4789**
- \@dottedxxxline 2321
- \@ensure@R 9021, 9024, 9027, 9031, 9034, 9037, 9041, 9044, 9047
- \@fileswf@false (command) 569
- \@fileswf@false . 3315, 3385, 3451, 4060, 4132, 4205, 4647, 4714, 4780
- \@firstchapteris@used@false 2758
- \@firstchapteris@used@true 3211
- \@firstoftwo 2863
- \@firstpartis@used@false 2757
- \@firstpartis@used@true 3889
- \@firstsectionis@used@false 2759
- \@firstsectionis@used@true 4553
- \@gobble (command) 569
- \@gobble **7588, 7591, 7592, 7712**
- \@gobblethree (command) 382
- \@gobblethree **6163, 6244**
- \@gobbletwo (command) 424
- \@gobbletwo **7528, 7573**
- \@hangfrom **4812**
- \@ifclasslater 2855

- \ifclassloaded ... **2830, 6478, 6578, 6587, 6602, 6625**
- \ifnextchar (command) . 279, 282, 285, 423
- \ifnextchar .. **3262, 3330, 3396, 3539, 3544, 3549, 4000, 4072, 4144, 4247, 4593, 4658, 4723, 4861, 5142, 7509, 7515, 7521, 7527, 7774**
- \ifpackagelater 6568
- \ifpackageloaded . **2787, 2804, 2806, 2808, 2810, 2812, 2814, 2816, 2818, 2820, 2822, 2824, 2826, 2828, 6454, 6462, 6470, 6502, 6510, 6518, 6611, 7283**
- \ifpackagewith **6518, 6611**
- \ifundefined (command) 265, 266, 276, 302, 350
- \ifundefined . **2667, 5142, 5634, 5710, 5988, 6031, 6125, 6142, 6632, 6651, 6670, 7343, 7346, 7349, 7408**
- \input (command) 297, 299, 302, 323, 325, 328
- \input **3703, 3768, 3829, 6074, 6094**
- \inputcheck (command) 57, 268, 563
- \inputcheck .. **2885, 3019, 3687, 3699, 3716, 3753, 3764, 3781, 3814, 3825, 3842, 4389, 4390, 4401, 4417, 4449, 4450, 4461, 4477, 4509, 4510, 4521, 4537, 4990, 4991, 5002, 5018, 5050, 5051, 5062, 5078, 5110, 5111, 5122, 5138**
- \longextensions@false (command) ... 267
- \longextensions@false .. 2992, 2997, 6139
- \longextensions@true (command) 267
- \longextensions@true 2994, 7656
- \mchapter 7772
- \mainaux **2767**
- \makechapterhead . 1461, 7799, 7804, 7806
- \makephead@c **3968**
- \makephead@l **3940**
- \makephead@r **3954**
- \makeschapterhead 1471
- \minilof@used@false 2746
- \minilof@used@true (command) 282
- \minilof@used@true 3332
- \minilot@used@false 2747
- \minilot@used@true (command) 285
- \minilot@used@true 3398
- \minitoc@used@false 2745
- \minitoc@used@true (command) 279
- \minitoc@used@true 3264
- \mkboth **3180, 4015, 4087, 4160**
- \mtc@FEfalse (command) 267
- \mtc@FEfalse 2896, 2909
- \mtc@FEtrue (command) 267
- \mtc@FEtrue 2886, 2900, 2907
- \mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false 2709
- \mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true 2811
- \mtc@HgcLoaded@false 2708
- \mtc@HgcLoaded@true 2810
- \mtc@Himlof@false 5922, 5953
- \mtc@Himlof@true 5929, 5947
- \mtc@Himlot@false 5955, 5970, 5986
- \mtc@Himlot@true 5962, 5980
- \mtc@Himtoc@false 5907, 5920, 5937
- \mtc@Himtoc@true 5914
- \mtc@LIfalse 2890, 2894, 2896
- \mtc@LItrue 2885, 2900
- \mtc@abstract@loaded@false 6445
- \mtc@abstract@loaded@true 6612
- \mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false 2717
- \mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true 2819
- \mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false 2716
- \mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true 2818
- \mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false 2703
- \mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true 2821
- \mtc@captcontLoaded@false 2702
- \mtc@captcontLoaded@true 2820
- \mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false 2697
- \mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true 2825
- \mtc@captionIILoaded@false 2696
- \mtc@captionIILoaded@true 2824
- \mtc@captionLoaded@a@false 2695
- \mtc@captionLoaded@a@true 2823
- \mtc@captionLoaded@false 2694
- \mtc@captionLoaded@true 2822
- \mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false 2699
- \mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true 2827
- \mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false 2698
- \mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true 2826
- \mtc@chapter@def@false 2729, 2730
- \mtc@chapter@def@true 2730
- \mtc@chapter@undef@false 2736
- \mtc@chapter@undef@true 2735, 2736
- \mtc@checkfilesfalse 6134
- \mtc@checkfilestrue 2887, 6133
- \mtc@empty@minilof@false 2722
- \mtc@empty@minilof@true 3342
- \mtc@empty@minilot@false 2723
- \mtc@empty@minilot@true 3408
- \mtc@empty@minitoc@false 2721
- \mtc@empty@minitoc@true 3274
- \mtc@empty@partlof@false 2719
- \mtc@empty@partlof@true 4084, 4157
- \mtc@empty@partlot@false 2720
- \mtc@empty@parttoc@false 2718
- \mtc@empty@parttoc@true 4012
- \mtc@empty@sectlof@false 2725
- \mtc@empty@sectlof@true 4670
- \mtc@empty@sectlot@false 2726
- \mtc@empty@sectlot@true 4735

\@mtc@empty@secttoc@false	2724	\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true	7287
\@mtc@empty@secttoc@true	4605	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false	2711
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false	2707	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true	2813
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true	2809	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false	2710
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false	2706	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true	2812
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true	2808	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false	2713
\@mtc@hints@false	6444	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true	2815
\@mtc@hints@given@false	2687	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@false	2712
\@mtc@hints@given@true	3554, 3573, 3592, 4250, 4269, 4288, 4864, 4883, 4902, 5162, 6455, 6463, 6471, 6479, 6487, 6495, 6503, 6511, 6521, 6538, 6553, 6569, 6579, 6588, 6596, 6603, 6614, 6626, 6639, 6658, 6678, 6730, 6740, 6749, 6758, 6769, 6778, 6787, 6798, 6807, 6826, 6835, 6844, 6855, 6864, 6873, 6884, 6893, 6915, 6926, 6937, 6950, 6961, 6972, 6985, 6996, 7007, 7016, 7025, 7034, 7050, 7059, 7068, 7077, 7086, 7095, 7104, 7113, 7122, 7131, 7140, 7149, 7158, 7166, 7173, 7180, 7187, 7194, 7201, 7208, 7215, 7222, 7229, 7236, 7243	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true	2814
		\@mtc@sect@floats@false	2688
\@mtc@hints@true	2685, 6443	\@mtc@sect@floats@true	6715–6718
\@mtc@hints@w@false	2686, 6632, 6651, 6670	\@mtc@section@def@false	2731, 2732
\@mtc@hints@w@true	6634, 6636, 6638, 6653, 6655, 6657, 6673, 6675, 6677, 6730	\@mtc@section@def@true	2732
\@mtc@hyper@used@false	2788	\@mtc@section@undef@false	2738
\@mtc@hyper@used@true	2791	\@mtc@section@undef@true	2737, 2738
\@mtc@insellang@false	6074, 6092, 6119	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false	2693
\@mtc@insellang@true	6076	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true	2805
\@mtc@listfiles@false	6162	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false	2692
\@mtc@listfiles@true	6160, 6161	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true	2804
\@mtc@lof@used@false	6447, 6692	\@mtc@setdepth@false	5868
\@mtc@lof@used@true	6699, 6708	\@mtc@setdepth@true	5863, 5866
\@mtc@lot@used@false	6448, 6693	\@mtc@setfeature@false	5809, 5826
\@mtc@lot@used@true	6702, 6711	\@mtc@setfeature@true	5803, 5807
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false	2701	\@mtc@setfont@false	5282, 5300, 5339–5342, 5345, 5346, 5349, 5350, 5353–5358, 5361–5364, 5367–5370, 5373–5379, 5382–5386, 5389–5393
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true	2829	\@mtc@setfont@true	5277, 5280, 5337
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false	2700	\@mtc@setformat@false	5582, 5599
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true	2828	\@mtc@setformat@true	5576, 5580
\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false	2690, 2836	\@mtc@setpagenumbers@false	5632, 5657, 5679
\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true	2831	\@mtc@setpagenumbers@true	5654
\@mtc@memoirnew@false	2691, 2839	\@mtc@setrules@false	5708, 5733, 5755
\@mtc@memoirnew@true	2841	\@mtc@setrules@true	5730
\@mtc@mislangfalse	6168	\@mtc@setttitle@false	5458
\@mtc@misslangtrue	6172, 6188, 6201, 6217	\@mtc@setttitle@true	5453, 5456
\@mtc@notoccite@false	2782	\@mtc@setttitlefont@false	5417
\@mtc@notoccite@true	6137	\@mtc@setttitlefont@true	5412, 5415
\@mtc@part@def@false	2727, 2728	\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false	2715
\@mtc@part@def@true	2728	\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true	2817
\@mtc@part@undef@false	2734	\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false	2714
\@mtc@part@undef@true	2733, 2734	\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true	2816
\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false	2689, 7287	\@mtc@spn@ok@false	5676
		\@mtc@spn@ok@true	5674
		\@mtc@sru@ok@false	5752
		\@mtc@sru@ok@true	5750
		\@mtc@ss@insection@false	6142
		\@mtc@ss@insection@true	6157
		\@mtc@toc@used@false	6446, 6691
		\@mtc@toc@used@true	6696, 6705
		\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false	2705
		\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true	2807

- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false 2704
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true 2806
- \@mtcfixglossary@false 6010, 6012
- \@mtcfixglossary@true . . . 6014, 6016, 6018
- \@mtcfixindex@false 6053, 6055
- \@mtcfixindex@true 6057, 6059, 6061
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false 2830
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true 2851
- \@namedef (command) 352
- \@namedef **5211, 5220, 5229, 5266, 5494**
- \@nameuse (command) 352
- \@nameuse **5211, 5279, 5298, 5414, 5455**, 5596,
5598, 5672, 5691, **5729**, 5766, 5823,
5825, 5865
- \@newread (command) 563
- \@nobreakfalse 3173, 3320, 3390, 3456, 4065,
4137, 4210, 4652, 4717, 4783
- \@part (command) 49, 262, 317, 394
- \@part **1, 2922, 4222, 6632, 7343**
- \@partlof@used@false 2740
- \@partlof@used@true 4074
- \@partlot@used@false 2741
- \@partlot@used@true 4147
- \@parttoc@used@false 2739
- \@parttoc@used@true 4002
- \@plus 3482, 3495
- \@pnumwidth (command) 42, 43
- \@pnumwidth . . . 3505, **5503**, 5532, 5537, 5542,
5547, 5552, 5557, 5562, 5567, 5572
- \@pnumwith (command) 361
- \@pt (command) 568
- \@resetfont **3845, 3865**
- \@schapter (command) 49, 265, 288, 395
- \@schapter **1, 3469, 6651, 7346**
- \@secondoftwo 2863
- \@sect (command) 49, 264, 339, 340, 395
- \@sect . . . **1, 2955, 4795**, 4802, **4841, 6670, 7349**
- \@sectlof@used@false 2752
- \@sectlof@used@true 4660
- \@sectlot@used@false 2753
- \@sectlot@used@true 4725
- \@secttoc@used@false 2751
- \@secttoc@used@true 4595
- \@spart (command) 49, 262, 317, 394
- \@spart **1, 2922, 4222, 6632, 7343**
- \@ssect (command) 49, 264, 339, 395
- \@ssect **1, 2955, 6670, 7349**
- \@starttoc (command) 267, 274
- \@svsec **4812**
- \@svsechd **4812**
- \@tempdima 3038, 3487, 3488, 3500, 3501
- \@tempskipa **4812**
- \@tocfile (command) 279, 282, 285
- \@tocfile **3265**, 3270, 3273, 3317, **3333**, 3338,
3341, 3387, **3399**, 3404, 3407, 3453,
4001, 4008, 4053, 4073, 4080, 4128,
4145, 4153, 4201, 4594, 4601, 4642,
4659, 4666, 4710, 4724, 4731, 4775
- \@tocrmarg (command) 42, 43, 361
- \@tocrmarg 3034, 3483, 3496, **5512**, 5533, 5538,
5543, 5548, 5553, 5558, 5563, 5568,
5573
- \@topnewpage **3940, 3954, 3968**, 7804
- \@undottedtocline (command) 268
- \@undottedtocline . . **3030, 3311, 3381, 3447**,
4053, 4128, 4201, 4642, 4710, 4775
- \@width 3220
- \@xsect **4812**
- \ . . **3251, 3309, 3321, 3377, 3391, 3443, 3457**,
3989
- \jobname.lan (file) 418
- \jobname.mtc (file) 267
- \jobname.mtc1 (file) 267
- [] 19, 20, 24, 26, 29, 31, 34, 36, 39, 41,
42, 46, 47, 49–51, 54–62, 67–69, 71–
73, 75, 76, 85, 87, 89, 90, 92, 96, 97,
101, 114, 115, 128, 133, 135, 137, 140–
142, 155, 195, 197–216, 219–225, 229,
232, 234–238, 250, 255–260, 269, 277,
281, 284, 287, 293, 354, 358, 372, 379,
381, 389–394, 397, 413, 414, 420, 440–
444, 446–521, 523, 525–527, 530–560,
562, 566, 576, 578, 580, 582, 585, 586,
591, 592
- \~ 10283, 10287, 10291
- 2c.tex (old example document) 585, 588
- _ 1752, 8144,
8145, 8147, 8148, 8153, 8154, 8156,
8157, 8162, 8163, 8165, 8166, 8548,
8549, 8552, 8553, 8556, 8557, 8995,
8997, 8999, 9002, 9004, 9006, 9009,
9011, 9013, 9022, 9025, 9028, 9032,
9035, 9038, 9042, 9045, 9048, 9507,
9509, 9517, 9519, 9527, 9529, 10233,
10235, 10239, 10241, 10245, 10247

A

- \a@tok 7900
- ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 240, 464
- above (option of placeins) 29, 30, 177
- ABRAHAMS, Paul W. 240, ↪[1, 2]
- abstract (package) 50, 67, 85, 155, 197, 235, 393, 572, ↪[325]
- abstract (environment) 50, 67
- ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 240
- acadian (language option) 440, 569
- acadian.mld (file) 227, 228, 440
- acadien (language option) 36, 441, 569
- acadien.mld (file) 227, 228, 441
- \accent 8304
- add.bib (old example document) 587, 588
- add.tex (old example document) 586, 588
- ADDABBO, Tommaso 240
- \addappheadtotoc (command) 61, 102
- \addappheadtotoc 896
- \addcoffeeline (command) 212, 379
- \addcoffeeline **6121, 7712**
- \addcontentsline (command) 32, 48, 60, 192, 193
- \addcontentsline **1**, 28, 480, 535, 536, 829, 830, 962, 1224, 1323, 1326, 1329, 1332, 1335, 2048, 2502, 2505, **2932**, 2959–2962, 2970–2973, **3182, 3464**, 4224–4226, **4795, 4802, 4812, 6010, 6053, 7679, 7731**, 7813, 7816, 7820, 7823
- addsec.tex (old example document) 578, 586, 588
- \addst@rred (command) 288
- \addst@rred **3182, 3201, 3474**
- \addstarred (command) 566
- \addstarredchapter (command) 32, 192, 233, 288
- \addstarredchapter **1**, 1320, **3474, 7731**
- \addstarredpart (command) 32, 192, 288
- \addstarredpart **1, 3474, 7731**
- \addstarredsection (command) 32, 192, 275, 288
- \addstarredsection **1**, 1047, **3201, 3474, 7731**
- \addto (command) 72
- \addtocontents (command) 60, 61
- \addtocontents **1**, 1420, **3469, 4222, 4841, 5908, 5922, 5955, 6121**
- \addtocounter (command) 32, 47
- \addtocounter . 1208, **2919**, 3214–3216, **3703, 3768, 3829**, 3892–3894, 4415, 4475, 4535, 4555–4557, 5016, 5076, 5136
- \addtolength 1443, 1446, 2019
- addtotoc (option of abstract) 50, 67, 155, 197
- \addvspace 2664
- \adjustmtc (command) . 32, 33, 48, 60, 61, 84, 94, 138, 197, 265, 276, 574
- \adjustmtc **1**, 532, 889, 2514, **2969, 3205, 7489**
- \adjustptc (command) . . 32, 84, 89, 197, 236, 263, 304, 574
- \adjustptc **1**, 29, 1696, **2932, 3880, 7489**
- \adjuststc (command) . . 32, 60, 84, 101, 197, 264, 329, 574
- \adjuststc **1**, 826, **2958, 4548, 7489**
- afrikaan (language option) 36, 441, 442
- afrikaan.mld (file) 227, 228, 441, 442
- afrikaans (language option) 36, 442
- afrikaans.mld (file) 227, 228, 442
- \afterminilof (command) 83, 284
- \afterminilof **3141, 3391, 7638**
- \afterminilot (command) 83, 287
- \afterminilot **3141, 3457, 7638**
- \afterminitoc (command) 83, 281
- \afterminitoc **3141, 3321, 7638**
- afterpage (package) 578, ↪[98]
- \afterpartlof (command) . . 45, 83, 314, 566
- \afterpartlof **3134, 4139, 7629**
- \afterpartlot (command) . . 45, 83, 316, 566
- \afterpartlot **3134, 4212, 7629**
- \afterparttoc (command) . . 45, 83, 311, 566
- \afterparttoc **3134, 4067, 7629**
- \aftersectlof (command) 83, 336
- \aftersectlof **3144, 4719, 7647**
- \aftersectlot (command) 83, 338
- \aftersectlot **3144, 4785, 7647**
- \aftersecttoc (command) 83, 333
- \aftersecttoc **3144, 4654, 7647**
- AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. 240, 447, ↪[51]
- AKOPIAN, Vartan 198, 240, 444, ↪[114]
- albanian (language option) 36, 442
- albanian.dtx (file) 442
- albanian.mld (file) 227, 228, 442
- \alef 7919–7921, 7923–7925, 7927–7929, 8547–8549, 8551–8553, 8555–8557, 8998, 9000, 9005, 9007, 9012, 9014
- \alefhamza 7920, 7924, 7928
- Aleph (package) 209, 219, ↪[40, 150]
- ALEX, A. J. 240, 495, 496, ↪[3, 4]
- ALFORD, Mark 240, ↪[5]
- \alloc@ 2976
- alnumsec (package) . . 50, 73, 85, 178, 197, 237, 258, 407, 584, ↪[196]
- \Alph 1546, 1547
- alphanum (package) . . 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 389, 581, ↪[92]
- amem.tex (old example document) 585

american (language option) 36, 442
american.mld (file) . . . 227, 228, 384, 442, 567
amsart (class) 50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 570,
 \hookrightarrow [6]
amsart.cls (file) 198
amsbook (class) . 49, 63, 85, 155, 197, 198, 393,
570, \hookrightarrow [6]
amsbook.cls (file) 198
amsproc (class) . 50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392,
570, \hookrightarrow [6]
amsproc.cls (file) 198
ANDRÉ, Jacques 240, \hookrightarrow [244]
ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 240
ANGELI, Ralf 240
Antomega (package) . . 198, 440, 472–474, 491,
504, 508, 509, 517, 518, \hookrightarrow [194]
app-mem.tex (old example document) 588
APPEL, Walter 240, \hookrightarrow [7]
appendices (environment) . . 60, 102, 198, 214
appendix (package) 49, 60–62, 85, 155, 198, 235,
389, 569, 583, \hookrightarrow [326]
\appendix (command) 60
\appendix . . 1, 27, 540, 833, 1125, 1389, 2414
\appendixmtc **7528**
apx.tex (old example document) 588
arab (language option) 36, 443, 444
arab.mld (file) . . . 198, 227, 228, 443, 444, 565
arab2 (language option) 36, 443
arab2.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 443, 583
Arabi (package) 36, 41, 198, 444, 465, 586,
 \hookrightarrow [178]
arabi (language option) 36, 444
arabi.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 444, 586
arabic (language option) 36, 198, 444
\arabic . . **3621, 3727, 3788, 4961, 5908, 5922,**
5955
arabic.ldf (file) 198
arabic.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 444
ArabTeX (package) . 36, 41, 198, 440, 443, 480,
 \hookrightarrow [198, 199]
ARADIAN, Achod André 240
armenian (language option) 36, 198, 444
armenian.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 444
ArmTeX (package) 41, 198, 440, 444, 566,
 \hookrightarrow [114]
ÁRNASON, Einar 240, 483, \hookrightarrow [52]
ARNOLD, Tim 240
ARSENEAU, Donald 29, 49, 85, 219, 234, 240, 255,
260, 266, 281, 284, 287, 563, 566, 569,
581, 589, \hookrightarrow [8–14, 335]
article (class) 24, 34, 35, 56, 58, 68, 97, 103, 125,
141, 190, 191, 198, 202, 204, 209, 210,
214, 215, 221, 222, 225, 263, 272, 305,
416, \hookrightarrow [204]

ASLASKEN, Helmer 240, \hookrightarrow [15, 16]
ASPINALL, David 240
ÅSSEN, Ivar 240, 502
\AtBeginDocument (command) . . 72, 164, 165,
167, 198, 256–259, 274, 303, 328, 362,
388, 394, 415, 416
\AtBeginDocument . . **2761, 2787, 2804, 2806,**
2808, 2810, 2812, 2814, 2816, 2818,
2820, 2822, 2824, 2826, 2828, 3174,
3874, 4540, 5502, 5922, 5955, 6125,
6445, 6632, 7339, 7361, 7662
\AtEndDocument (command) 199, 388, 397, 415,
430
\AtEndDocument **2767, 6244, 6445, 6714, 7338,**
7339, 7663
australian (language option) 36, 445
australian.mld (file) 227, 228, 445
austrian (language option) 36, 445
austrian.mld (file) 227, 228, 445
\author 2028
\ayin 8996, 9003, 9010

B

babel (package) 36, 41, 72, 120,
198, 199, 204, 232, 440–442, 446, 447,
450–452, 455, 457–462, 465–472, 481,
483–485, 489–494, 498–503, 505–507,
510, 514–519, 521, 523, 525, 564, 565,
573, 582, \hookrightarrow [43, 45, 63]
BACHMANN, Philipp 240
BADENES, Gonçal 240, 455, \hookrightarrow [53]
bahasa (language option) 36, 445
bahasa.dtx (file) 446
bahasa.mld (file) 227, 228, 445
bahasai (language option) . . . 36, 445, 446, 483
bahasai.mld (file) . . . 227, 228, 445, 446, 483
bahasam (language option) . . . 36, 446, 494, 497
bahasam.dtx (file) 446
bahasam.mld (file) . . . 227, 228, 446, 494, 497
BALGARENSKY, Marin 240
bangla (language option) 36, 199, 447, 568
bangla.mld (file) 227, 228, 447
BangTeX (package) 41, 199, 440, 447, 578,
 \hookrightarrow [263]
\baselinestretch 1537
basque (language option) 36, 447
basque.dtx (file) 447
basque.mld (file) 227, 228, 447
BASSO, Pierre 240, \hookrightarrow [18]
BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov 240, 498, \hookrightarrow [19]
BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 240
BAUSUM, David 240, \hookrightarrow [20, 21]

- BAYART, Benjamin . . . 46, 235, 240, 352, 569, 571,
 ↪[22, 23]
 BAYET, Thierry 240, ↪[23]
 \bcg 8038–8040, 8042–8044, 8046–8048
 BECCARI, Claudio 240, 485, 489, 490,
 ↪[24, 25, 54, 62]
 BEFFARA, Emmanuel 58, 240, ↪[26]
 \beforeminilof (command) 83, 283
 \beforeminilof **3128, 3346, 7638**
 \beforeminilot (command) 83, 286
 \beforeminilot **3128, 3412, 7638**
 \beforeminitoc (command) 45, 83, 280
 \beforeminitoc **3128, 3278, 7638**
 \beforepartlof (command) 45, 83, 312, 566
 \beforepartlof **3121, 4086, 7629**
 \beforepartlot (command) 45, 83, 314, 566
 \beforepartlot **3121, 4159, 7629**
 \beforeparttoc (command) 45, 83, 234, 272,
 309, 428, 566
 \beforeparttoc **3121, 4014, 7629**
 \beforesectlof (command) 83, 334
 \beforesectlof **3131, 4672, 7647**
 \beforesectlot (command) 83, 336
 \beforesectlot **3131, 4737, 7647**
 \beforesecttoc (command) 83, 331
 \beforesecttoc **3131, 4607, 7647**
 BELET, Benoît 240, ↪[244]
 BELMOUHOB, Rachid 240, ↪[27]
 below (option of placeins) 29, 30, 177
 BÉRCES, József 240, 493, 494, ↪[55]
 BERDNIKOV, Alexander 240, ↪[28–31]
 BERGER, Jens 240, ↪[32]
 BERRY, Karl 240, ↪[1, 2, 33, 34]
 \bet 9000, 9007, 9014
 BEYENE, Berhanu 240, 462, 463, ↪[35]
 BEZOS, Javier 85, 240, 469, 475, 517, 519,
 ↪[36–39]
 \bfseries (command) 218
 \bfseries 1466, 1468, 1492, 1495,
 1517, 1522, 1526, 1529, 1771, 1774,
 1819, 1822, 2024, 2331–2335, 2337–
 2340, 3229, 3238, 3905, 3914, 3918,
 3928, 4562, 4570
 Bg5.cap (file) 456
 Bg5.cpx (file) 456
 \bibitem 2296, 2304, 2511
 \bibliography (command) 48, 138
 \bibliography **1, 531, 825**
 \bibliographystyle 530, 824
 bibtopic (package) 57, 199, ↪[18]
 bibtotoc (option of KOMA-Script) . . . 47, 138
 bibtotocnumbered (option of KOMA-Script) 47
 bibunit (environment) 199
 bibunits (package) 57, 199, 216, ↪[155]
 bicig (language option) 36, 213, 448, 449, 521
 bicig.mld (file) 227, 228, 448, 521
 bicig2 (language option) 36, 449, 522
 bicig2.mld (file) 227, 228, 449, 522, 576
 bicig3 (language option) 36, 449, 522
 bicig3.mld (file) 227, 228, 449, 522, 583
 \bigskipamount (command) 28, 78, 249, 421
 \bigskipamount **1, 2663, 7396**
 BILOTTA, Giuseppe 219, 240, ↪[40]
 Bíró, Árpád 240, 493, 494, ↪[55]
 bithe (language option) 36, 213, 450, 497
 bithe.mld (file) 227, 228, 450, 497, 576
 BITOUZÉ, Denis 240, ↪[41]
 BLOCH, Laurent 240
 bo.tex (old example document) 588
 book (class) 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 73,
 108, 128, 190, 191, 199, 202, 204, 206,
 209, 214, 215, 221, 222, 225, 263, 265,
 272, 305, 587, ↪[204]
 book.cls (file) 67
 booktabs (package) 20, ↪[132]
 BOSHPAKOV, Georgi 240, 452, ↪[56]
 BOUGETTE, Patrice 240
 BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 240
 BOYKO, Victor 240, 511, ↪[42]
 BRAAMS, Johannes L. 41, 199, 232, 240, 441,
 459, 460, 471, 484, 501, 502, 525, 564,
 ↪[43–91, 128, 202–205, 241–244]
 BRAUN, Felix 85, 197, 208, 240, ↪[92]
 brazil (language option) 36, 450, 451
 brazil.mld (file) 227, 228, 450, 451
 brazilian (language option) 36, 451
 brazilian.mld (file) 227, 228, 451, 573
 BREEN, Jim 240, ↪[93]
 BREITENLOHNER, Peter 240, ↪[94]
 breton (language option) 36, 451
 breton.dtx (file) 451
 breton.mld (file) 227, 228, 451
 british (language option) 36, 451
 british.mld (file) 227, 228, 451, 573
 bulgarian (language option) 36, 452
 bulgarian.dtx (file) 452
 bulgarian.mld (file) 227, 228, 452, 567
 bulgarianb (language option) 36, 452
 bulgarianb.mld (file) 41, 227, 228, 452, 571
 BURBANK, Mimi 240, ↪[273]
 BURC, Mustafa 240, 521, ↪[57]
 buryat (language option) 36, 453, 454
 buryat.mld (file) 227, 228, 453
 buryat2 (language option) 36, 454
 buryat2.mld (file) 227, 228, 454, 583
 BURYKIN, Alexey 240, ↪[29–31]

C

- `\c@lofdepth` . . . **3174, 3377, 3874**, 4125, 4126, **4540**, 4707, 4708
- `\c@lotdepth` (command) 287
- `\c@lotdepth` . . . **3174, 3443, 3874**, 4198, 4199, **4540**, 4772, 4773
- `\c@minilofdepth` (command) 284
- `\c@minilofdepth` **3377**
- `\c@minilotdepth` (command) 287
- `\c@minilotdepth` **3443**
- `\c@minitocdepth` (command) 281
- `\c@minitocdepth` **3309, 7396**
- `\c@mtc` . . . **3182**, 7311, 7315, 7328, 7332, **7403**
- `\c@mti` (command) 564
- `\c@mti` **3240, 3278, 3346, 3412, 3554, 3573, 3592**
- `\c@page` 2002
- `\c@partlofdepth` 4125
- `\c@partlotdepth` 4198
- `\c@parttocdepth` **4051, 7396**
- `\c@ptc` . . . **3182**, 7305, 7309, 7323, 7327, **7403**
- `\c@pti` . . . **3930, 3968, 4021, 4093, 4166, 4250, 4269, 4288**
- `\c@secnumdepth` 1465, 4812, 4825, 4834, 7792, 7810
- `\c@sectlofdepth` **4705**
- `\c@sectlotdepth` **4770**
- `\c@secttocdepth` **4640, 7396**
- `\c@stc` . . . **3182**, 7316, 7320, 7333, 7337, **7403**
- `\c@sti` **4571, 4609, 4675, 4740, 4864, 4883, 4902**
- `\c@tocdepth` (command) 281, 284
- `\c@tocdepth` . . 3032, **3309**, 3481, 3494, **4051, 4640, 4705, 4770**
- canadian (language option) 36, 454, 569
- canadian.mld (file) 227, 228, 454
- canadien (language option) 36, 454, 569
- canadien.mld (file) 227, 228, 454
- captcont (package) 50, 73, 85, 178, 199, 237, 258, 407, 584, \hookrightarrow **[108]**
- caption (package) 51, 69, 85, 165, 166, 200, 236, 258, 408, 575, \hookrightarrow **[296]**
- `\caption` (command) 27, 207, 562
- `\caption` 67, 70, 73, 76, 85, 88, 91, 94, 102, 105, 108, 111, 129, 132, 135, 138, 145, 148, 153, 156, 163, 166, 169, 172, 449, 452, 470, 473, 514, 517, 523, 526, 551, 554, 560, 563, 575, 578, 584, 587, 660, 663, 680, 683, 719, 722, 728, 731, 746, 749, 768, 771, 808, 811, 817, 820, 840, 843, 849, 852, 862, 865, 871, 874, 1028, 1041, 1083, 1109, 1140, 1296, 1302, 1315, 1356, 1380, 1405, 1860, 1864, 1869, 1873, 1880, 1885, 1889, 1908, 1912, 1917, 1921, 1928, 1933, 1937, 1963, 1971, 1982, 1990, 2362, 2409, 2635
- caption2 (package) 51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 259, 408, 575, \hookrightarrow **[294, 295]**
- `\captions` (command) 72
- captions.dn (file) 482
- CARCAGNO, Samuele 240, \hookrightarrow **[95]**
- CARDI, Olivier 240
- CARELLA, David 240, \hookrightarrow **[96]**
- CARLISLE, David P. 26, 225, 240, 293, 562, \hookrightarrow **[58, 97–101, 242–244, 246]**
- CARMODY, Kevin 240, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow **[265]**
- CARRIBA, Manuel 240, 469, \hookrightarrow **[59, 60]**
- CASPAR, Régis 240
- castillan (language option) 36, 455, 517
- castillan.mld (file) 227, 228, 455
- castillian (language option) 36
- castillian.mld (file) 227, 228, 455, 573
- catalan (language option) 36, 455, 517
- catalan.dtx (file) 455
- catalan.mld (file) 227, 228, 455
- CATALOG (file) 200, 227, 228, 590
- ccaption (package) 51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 259, 408, 575, \hookrightarrow **[329]**
- `\centering` 1961, 1969, 1980, 1988, 2350, 2402, 2578, 2599, 3976
- GervanT_EX (package) 41, 519, \hookrightarrow **[36]**
- `\cftpagenumbersoff` 215, 1447, 1448, 3051–3055, 3062–3065, 3074–3079, 3081, 3083, 3085, 3087, 3089, 3091
- `\cftpagenumberson` . 3045–3049, 3057–3060, 3067–3072, 3080, 3082, 3084, 3086, 3088, 3090
- `\cftsecfont` 216, 2210, 2219
- `\cftsecindent` 1440, 1442
- `\cftsecnumwidth` 1441, 1443
- `\cftsetrmarg` 2020
- `\cftsubsecfont` 2211–2213, 2220–2222
- `\cftsubsecindent` . . 1442, 1443, 1445, 2019
- `\cftsubsecnumwidth` 1444, 1446
- `\cftsubsubsecindent` 1445, 1446
- ch0.tex (old example document) 586, 588
- `\ch@pt@c` 7773, 7777, 7779, 7785, 7787
- CHANG, Winston 240, \hookrightarrow **[102]**
- `\chapbegin` (command) 291
- `\chapbegin` **3539**
- `\chapter` (command) . . . 24–27, 34, 35, 44, 46, 48–50, 56, 60, 62, 63, 65, 67, 75, 80, 132, 147, 152, 153, 158, 159, 161, 164, 198, 199, 204, 221, 222, 263, 265, 267, 272, 273, 275, 277, 278, 282, 285, 288, 289, 294, 295, 304–306, 308, 309, 311,

- 312, 314–316, 328, 381, 394, 395, 416, 561
- `chapter` (counter) 253
- `\chapter` **1**, 13, 20, 35, 42, 63, 78, 96, 126, 140, 159, **176**, 191, 196, 201, 218, 221, 241, 248, 258, 267, 303, 304, 307, 308, 313, 314, 343, 440, 475, 490, 504, 541, 565, 890, 897, 904, 1117, 1166, 1214, 1283, 1319, 1341, 1361, 1393, 1408, 1555, 1632, 1660, 1702, 1706, 1712, 1714, 1718, 1725, 1729, 1749, 1779, 1827, 1904, 1924, 1955, 1974, 2036, 2113, 2184, 2194, 2230, 2251, 2344, 2395, 2415, 2430, 2435, 2440, 2446, 2455, 2478, 2480, 2484, 2488, 2492, 2496, 2498, 2592, 2846, **2939**, **2966**, **2967**, **3121**, **3134**, 3190, **3201**, **3262**, **3330**, **3396**, **3474**, **3621**, **4345**, 5991, 6016, 6034, 6059, **6632**, **6651**, **7346**, **7656**
- `\chapter*` (command) . . . 32, 33, 68, 84, 89, 93, 221, 234, 265, 275, 561, 566, 567
- `\chapter@mtcql` 5327, 5354, 5362, 5368, 5374, 5383, 5390
- `\chapterbegin` . **3469**, **3703**, **3768**, **3829**, **7502**
- `chapterbib` (package) . 57, 200, 201, 216, \hookrightarrow **[13]**
- `\chapterend` (command) 61, 561, 562
- `\chapterend` . . **3469**, **3703**, **3768**, **3829**, **7502**
- `\chapterfont` 2024
- `\chaptermark` 7797
- `\chapternumberline` 7814, 7817
- `\chardef` 2976
- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 240, \hookrightarrow **[41, 189, 244, 304]**
- CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal 240, \hookrightarrow **[103]**
- checkfiles** (default option) . . . 28, 31, 57, 148, 167–169, 201, 218, 234, 380, 567
- CHEN, Pehong 240, \hookrightarrow **[104]**
- CHEONG, Otfried 240, \hookrightarrow **[105]**
- CHEVALIER, Céline 240, \hookrightarrow **[7]**
- `chinese1` (language option) 36, 456
- `chinese1.mld` (file) 227, 228, 456, 570
- `chinese1.mlo` (file) 227, 228, 456
- `chinese2` (language option) 36, 456
- `chinese2.mld` (file) 227, 228, 456, 570
- `chinese2.mlo` (file) 227, 228, 456
- CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana 240, 516, \hookrightarrow **[61]**
- CHOU, Pai H. 240, \hookrightarrow **[106]**
- `cite` (package) 591, \hookrightarrow **[10]**
- `\cite` (command) 49, 77, 200, 219
- `\cite` **1**, 456, 667, 753, 2285, 2286
- CJK (package) 36, 41, 201, 202, 223, 225, 440, 456, 476–479, 486–488, 520, \hookrightarrow **[15, 16, 106, 130, 216, 217, 269]**
- Classes
- `amsart` 50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 570, \hookrightarrow **[6]**
- `amsbook` . . 49, 63, 85, 155, 197, 198, 393, 570, \hookrightarrow **[6]**
- `amsproc` . . 50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 570, \hookrightarrow **[6]**
- `article` . 24, 34, 35, 56, 58, 68, 97, 103, 125, 141, 190, 191, 198, 202, 204, 209, 210, 214, 215, 221, 222, 225, 263, 272, 305, 416, \hookrightarrow **[204]**
- `book` . 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 73, 108, 128, 190, 191, 199, 202, 204, 206, 209, 214, 215, 221, 222, 225, 263, 265, 272, 305, 587, \hookrightarrow **[204]**
- `jura` 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 208, 389, 394, 581, \hookrightarrow **[92]**
- `letter` . 24, 56, 191, 202, 209, 222, \hookrightarrow **[205]**
- `ltnews` 24, 202, 210, \hookrightarrow **[180]**
- `ltxdoc` 24, 202, 210, \hookrightarrow **[99]**
- `memoir` 49, 62, 69, 85, 102, 132, 133, 151–153, 156, 188, 194, 211, 214, 215, 226, 234, 236, 251, 259, 269, 392, 434, 568, 574–576, \hookrightarrow **[331, 332, 334]**
- `proc` 24, 202, 221, 222, \hookrightarrow **[203]**
- `report` 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 71, 73, 108, 125, 190, 191, 202, 204, 206, 209, 214, 215, 221, 222, 225, 263, 265, 272, 305, 587, \hookrightarrow **[204]**
- `scrartcl` . 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 155, 208, 209, 221, 222, \hookrightarrow **[191, 252, 281]**
- `scrbook` 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 120, 126, 155, 208, 209, 214, 215, 221, 222, \hookrightarrow **[191, 252, 281]**
- `scrlettr` 208, 209, \hookrightarrow **[191, 252, 281]**
- `scrlltr2` 208, 209, \hookrightarrow **[191, 252, 281]**
- `scrreprt` . 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 137, 155, 208, 209, 215, 221, 222, \hookrightarrow **[191, 252, 281]**
- `slides` 202, \hookrightarrow **[236]**
- `\cleardoublepage` (command) . 45, 46, 69, 83, 128, 272, 273, 308
- `\cleardoublepage` . . 1984, 2000, **3125**, **3138**
- `\clearpage` (command) . . 45, 46, 69, 272, 308
- CLEGG, Marian 240
- `\closeout` 2915, 2918, **2990**, 3611–3613, **3625**, **3656**, **3703**, **3731**, **3768**, **3792**, **3829**, 4307–4309, 4327, 4341, 4412, 4436, 4472, 4496, 4532, 4921–4923, 4942, **4961**, 5013, 5038, 5073, 5098, 5133, 7297, 7300
- `\clubpenalty` (command) 563
- `cmcyralt` (package) 511, 512, \hookrightarrow **[42, 165]**
- `cmcyralt.sty` (file) 512
- `cmk` (script) 202, 206, 212, 227–229, 591

- COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . . . 31, 50, 73, 85, 240,
 \hookrightarrow [107–109]
 CODIGNO, Maurizio 240, 485, \hookrightarrow [62]
 \coffee (command) 295
 \coffee **3653, 4345, 4945**
 \coffeefont (command) 277
 \coffeefont . . . **3239, 3480, 3493, 3865, 7572**
 \coffeeline (command) 212, 379
 \coffeeline **6121, 7712**
 color (package) 114, \hookrightarrow [101]
 \colorbox 1506
 \columnbreak 1494, 1511
 \columnsep 1502
 \columnseprule 1501
 \columnwidth . . . **3205, 3278, 3326, 3346, 3412,**
3898, 4038, 4105, 4182, 4548, 4624,
4689, 4754, 5184
 Commands
 @@dominitoc 291
 @Undottedtoctline 289
 @Undottedtoctlinep 289
 @caption 562
 @chapter 49, 265, 288, 395
 @dominitoc 291
 @dominitoc@used@true 291
 @dosectlot 572
 @dotsep 42, 43, 361
 @dottedtoctline . . 67, 68, 268, 289, 310,
 313, 316, 333, 335, 338
 @fileswfalse 569
 @gobble 569
 @gobblethree 382
 @gobbletwo 424
 @ifnextchar 279, 282, 285, 423
 @ifundefined 265, 266, 276, 302, 350

 @longextensions@false 267
 @longextensions@true 267
 @minilof@used@true 282
 @minilot@used@true 285
 @minitoc@used@true 279
 @mtc@FEfalse 261
 @mtc@FEtrue 261
 @namedef 352
 @nameuse 352
 @newread 563
 @part 49, 262, 317, 394
 @pnumwidth 42, 43
 @pnumwith 361
 @pt 568
 @schapter 49, 265, 288, 395
 @sect 49, 264, 339, 340, 395
 @spart 49, 262, 317, 394
 @ssect 49, 264, 339, 395
 @starttoc 267, 274
 @tocfile 279, 282, 285
 @tocmarg 42, 43, 361
 @undottedtoctline 268
 \addappheadtotoc 61, 102
 \addcoffeeline 212, 379
 \addcontentsline . . 32, 48, 60, 192, 193
 \addst@rred 288
 \addstarred 566
 \addstarredchapter . . 32, 192, 233, 288
 \addstarredpart 32, 192, 288
 \addstarredsection . . 32, 192, 275, 288
 \addto 72
 \addtocontents 60, 61
 \addtocounter 32, 47
 \adjustmtc 32, 33, 48, 60, 61, 84, 94, 138,
 197, 265, 276, 574
 \adjustptc 32, 84, 89, 197, 236, 263, 304,
 574
 \adjuststc 32, 60, 84, 101, 197, 264, 329,
 574
 \afterminilof 83, 284
 \afterminilot 83, 287
 \afterminitoc 83, 281
 \afterpartlof 45, 83, 314, 566
 \afterpartlot 45, 83, 316, 566
 \afterparttoc 45, 83, 311, 566
 \aftersectlof 83, 336
 \aftersectlot 83, 338
 \aftersecttoc 83, 333
 \appendix 60
 \AtBeginDocument 72, 164, 165, 167, 198,
 256–259, 274, 303, 328, 362, 388, 394,
 415, 416
 \AtEndDocument 199, 388, 397, 415, 430
 \beforeminilof 83, 283
 \beforeminilot 83, 286
 \beforeminitoc 45, 83, 280
 \beforepartlof 45, 83, 312, 566
 \beforepartlot 45, 83, 314, 566
 \beforeparttoc . . 45, 83, 234, 272, 309,
 428, 566
 \beforesectlof 83, 334
 \beforesectlot 83, 336
 \beforesecttoc 83, 331
 \bfseries 218
 \bibliography 48, 138
 \bigskipamount 28, 78, 249, 421
 \c@lotdepth 287
 \c@minilofdepth 284
 \c@minilotdepth 287
 \c@minitocdepth 281

- \c@mti 564
- \c@tocdepth 281, 284
- \caption 27, 207, 562
- \captions 72
- \chapbegin 291
- \chapter 24–27, 34, 35, 44, 46, 48–50, 56, 60, 62, 63, 65, 67, 75, 80, 132, 147, 152, 153, 158, 159, 161, 164, 198, 199, 204, 221, 222, 263, 265, 267, 272, 273, 275, 277, 278, 282, 285, 288, 289, 294, 295, 304–306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 314–316, 328, 381, 394, 395, 416, 561
- \chapter* 32, 33, 68, 84, 89, 93, 221, 234, 265, 275, 561, 566, 567
- \chapterend 61, 561, 562
- \cite 49, 77, 200, 219
- \cleardoublepage . 45, 46, 69, 83, 128, 272, 273, 308
- \clearpage 45, 46, 69, 272, 308
- \clubpenalty 563
- \coffee 295
- \coffeeont 277
- \coffeeline 212, 379
- \contentsline . . 58, 263–265, 290, 291
- \count@ 421
- \csname 302, 353, 355
- \decrementmtc . . . 33, 84, 197, 276, 574
- \decrementptc 33, 84, 197, 236, 304, 574
- \decrementstc . . . 33, 84, 197, 329, 574
- \def 71
- \df@mtlf 277
- \df@mtilt 277
- \df@mtitc 277
- \dimen@ 421
- \do@mtlf 277
- \do@mtilt 277
- \do@mtitc 277
- \documentclass 27, 28, 31, 75, 120, 195, 202, 206, 221
- \dominilof . . 26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83, 153, 159, 171, 176, 221, 282, 290, 291, 317
- \dominilot . . 26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83, 154, 159, 171, 176, 221, 285, 290, 291, 317
- \dominitoc 26, 27, 38, 39, 47, 52, 57, 75, 80, 83, 139, 152, 153, 160, 171, 175, 221, 225, 232, 235, 279, 290, 291, 317, 340, 416, 562, 564, 570, 571
- \dominitoc@ 291
- \dopartlof . . 27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83, 154, 160, 171, 175, 221, 317–319
- \dopartlot . . 27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83, 154, 160, 172, 175, 221, 317–319
- \doparttoc . 27, 31, 38, 39, 50, 60, 79, 83, 152, 160, 172, 175, 221, 267, 317, 318, 396, 397, 399
- \dosectlof . . 27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83, 154, 160, 172, 176, 221, 251, 340, 341
- \dosectlot 27, 28, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 154, 161, 172, 176, 221, 251, 267, 341, 342
- \dosecttoc . . 27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83, 152, 161, 172, 176, 221, 329, 340, 341
- \edef 302
- \else 250
- \empty . . . 45, 46, 83, 272, 425, 428, 563
- \endcsname 302, 353, 355
- \endmtc@verse 278
- \endmtchideinmainlof . . . 66, 84, 214
- \endmtchideinmainlot 66, 84, 125, 126, 214
- \endptc@verse 307
- \enlargethispage 54
- \expandafter 353
- \fake@starttoc 274
- \fakelistoffigures . 27, 28, 31, 78–81, 173, 174, 274
- \fakelistoftables 27, 28, 31, 50, 78–81, 173, 174, 274
- \faketableofcontents . . 27, 28, 31, 50, 52, 78–81, 89, 173–175, 274, 396, 401, 562
- \fi 226, 250, 418
- \figure 298
- \firstchapteris 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 200, 206, 276, 411, 564, 565
- \firstpartis . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 206, 304, 411
- \firstsectionis 26, 47, 51, 84, 159, 170, 197, 206, 329, 412
- \FloatBarrier 29, 206, 220, 574
- \footnotesize 218
- \frontmatter 75
- \gdef 260
- \gobbleopt@ 423
- \hline 310, 312, 315, 332, 334, 337
- \hrule 276, 568
- \Huge 218
- \huge 218
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ 373
- \if@mtc@hints@ 250
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ 251
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ 251
- \if@mtc@insellang@ 378, 379
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ 269
- \if@mtc@misslang 382
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ . . . 574
- \if@mtc@setrules@act@ 574

- \if@mtcfixglossary@ 376
- \if@partlof@used@ 311
- \if@partlot@used@ 314
- \if@parttoc@used@ 308
- \if@realch 562
- \if@sectlof@used@ 333
- \if@sectlot@used@ 336
- \if@secttoc@used@ 331
- \ifcase 206, 226, 418
- \iffTR 573
- \ifmtcsecondpart 583
- \ifnum 339
- \ifundottedmtc 289, 578
- \incrementmtc 33, 84, 197, 276, 574
- \incrementptc 33, 84, 197, 236, 304, 574
- \incrementstc 33, 84, 197, 329, 574
- \itemindent 278, 307
- \itemsep 278, 307
- \itshape 218
- \jobname 206, 208, 261, 267, 268, 279, 282, 285, 290, 291, 298, 300, 404, 414, 418, 586
- \kern 276, 563
- \kernafterminilof 74, 82
- \kernafterminilot 74, 82
- \kernafterminitoc 74, 82, 591
- \kernafterpartlof 74, 82
- \kernafterpartlot 74, 82
- \kernafterparttoc 74, 82, 237
- \kernaftersectlof 74, 82
- \kernaftersectlot 74, 82
- \kernaftersecttoc 74, 82
- \ktightmtcfalse 39, 78
- \ktightmtctrue 39, 78
- \l@chapter 67, 266, 288, 310
- \l@coffee 379
- \l@paragraph 68, 351
- \l@part 67, 263
- \l@section 67, 68, 264, 351
- \l@subparagraph 68
- \l@subsection 67, 317
- \l@subsubsection 67
- \l@xchapter 265, 266, 288
- \l@xpart 263, 317
- \l@xsect 264
- \l@xsection 586
- \LANG 206, 418
- \LARGE 218
- \Large 218
- \large 218
- \let 70, 566
- \linebreak 55
- \linewidth 42
- \list 278
- \list{} 307
- \listoffigures 20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 63, 78–81, 173, 174, 267
- \listoftables 20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 50, 63, 78–81, 138, 173, 174, 267
- \listparindent 278, 307
- \mainmatter 75
- \makeatletter 68, 210
- \makeatother 68, 210
- \MakeUpperCase 584
- \markboth 68, 308, 572, 584
- \markright 68
- \mdseries 218
- \MessageBreak 578
- \minilof 20, 27, 31, 34, 38, 39, 80, 83, 171, 173, 208, 278, 282, 285, 333, 563
- \minilof@ 282, 289
- \minilot 20, 27, 31, 34, 38, 39, 80, 83, 171, 173, 208, 278, 285, 336, 563
- \minilot@ 285
- \minitoc 20, 26, 27, 29, 32, 34, 35, 38, 39, 52, 55, 63, 75, 80, 83, 112, 171, 173, 208, 232, 235, 278, 279, 282, 291, 308, 331, 562–564, 570, 571
- \minitoc@ 277, 279, 289
- \minitocno 561, 562
- \minitocyes 561
- \MLF@contentsline 298
- \MLF@next 298
- \mlf@setform 284, 363
- \MLF@test 299
- \mlffont 33, 34, 80, 283
- \mlfpagenumbers 43, 82
- \mlfrule 43, 82, 570
- \mlfSfont 33, 34, 40, 80, 576
- \mlftitle 34, 35, 80, 440
- \MLT@contentsline 300
- \MLT@next 301
- \mlt@setform 287, 363
- \MLT@test 301, 302
- \mltfont 33, 34, 80, 286
- \mltpagenumbers 43, 82
- \mltrule 43, 82, 570
- \mltSfont 33, 34, 80, 576
- \mlttitle 34, 35, 80, 440
- \mtc@admisslanguage 382
- \mtc@BBR 266
- \mtc@CkFile 261, 279, 283, 286
- \MTC@contentsline 294, 297, 302, 303
- \mtc@featparam@ 371
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev 371
- \mtc@featparam@third 371
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev 364

- \mtc@glofix@level 376
- \mtc@hints@beginndoc 388, 396
- \mtc@hints@chapter 394
- \mtc@hints@enddoc 388, 397, 412
- \mtc@hints@part 394
- \mtc@hints@section 394
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . 255, 281,
284, 287, 569
- \mtc@ifmtarg 260, 263–265
- \mtc@ixfix@level 377
- \mtc@level@abbrev 355
- \mtc@listmisslanguages 382
- \mtc@maf 414, 415
- \mtc@maf@long 414
- \mtc@maf@short 414
- \mtc@mta@abbrev 354
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev 372
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev 358
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev 359
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev 364
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev 370, 371
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev 366
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev 368
- \MTC@next 296
- \mtc@onebacksect 264
- \mtc@pnsw@abbrev 366
- \mtc@rule 276, 563
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev 369
- \mtc@savetocdepth 373
- \mtc@setform 281, 362
- \mtc@setlangopt 384
- \mtc@setlangoptm 384
- \mtc@setlangopto 384
- \mtc@string 266
- \mtc@strutbox 568
- \MTC@test 296, 297
- \mtc@toks 266, 294, 321, 324, 326
- \mtc@verse 278
- \mtc@While 261
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline 303
- \MTC@WriteContentsline 302, 321, 324,
326
- \mtc@zrule 266, 568
- \mtcaddchapter . . 33, 47, 48, 50, 63, 67,
68, 84, 89, 93, 138, 139, 193, 197, 214,
234, 265, 567
- \mtcaddpart 33, 69, 84, 89, 193, 197, 263,
567
- \mtcaddsection . . 33, 50, 67, 68, 84, 97,
193, 197, 214, 237, 264, 567, 579
- \mtcfixglossary 84, 158, 159, 179, 187,
197, 236, 237, 376, 432, 572, 579, 581
- \mtcfixindex . 48, 84, 95, 101, 158, 159,
179, 188, 197, 235–237, 377, 432, 570,
571, 579, 581
- \mtcfont 27, 33–35, 80, 280
- \mtcgapafterheads 73, 79, 214, 237, 584
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . . 73, 79, 214, 237,
584
- \mtchideinmainlof 65, 84, 214
- \mtchideinmainlot 65, 84, 125, 126, 214
- \mtcindent . 27, 42, 80, 87, 249, 276, 278
- \mtcloadmlo . . . 189, 236, 378, 427, 574
- \mtcwarn@true 573
- \mtcpagenumbers 43, 82, 564
- \mtcPfont 33, 35, 68, 80, 563
- \mtcprepare . . 27, 39, 83, 157, 208, 221,
237, 350, 424, 581
- \mtcrule 43, 82, 564
- \mtcselectlanguage 35, 37,
38, 67, 72, 78, 146, 149, 180, 181, 189,
234, 236, 378, 384, 427, 440, 567, 574
- \mtcsetdepth . 27, 28, 31, 41, 63, 78–81,
149, 182, 236, 372, 572
- \mtcsetfeature 45, 46, 78, 83, 150, 182,
186, 197, 199, 206, 223, 235, 274, 369,
370, 571
- \mtcsetfont . . 27, 28, 31, 40, 61–63, 68,
70, 71, 75, 78, 146, 150, 183, 187, 235,
277, 354, 357, 358, 569, 576, 580
- \mtcsetformat . 42, 43, 78, 90, 150, 183,
184, 187, 235, 281, 284, 287, 310, 313,
316, 333, 335, 338, 360–363, 570, 571
- \mtcsetpagenumbers 44, 75, 78, 82, 184,
185, 235, 237, 365, 367, 570, 578
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ 365, 366
- \mtcsetrules . 44, 78, 82, 185, 235, 237,
367, 570, 578
- \mtcsetrules@ 368
- \mtcsettitle . 35, 37, 38, 40, 63, 67, 78,
146, 150, 186, 235, 359, 372, 570, 571
- \mtcsettitlefont . 40, 62, 63, 78, 150,
186, 235, 277, 358, 359, 569
- \mtcSfont 27, 33, 35, 61, 68, 80, 563
- \mtcskip . 27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 568, 572
- \mtcskipamount 27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 421,
568
- \mtcSPfont 33, 35, 68, 80, 81, 563
- \mtcSSfont . . 33, 35, 40, 68, 80, 425, 563
- \mtcSSSfont . . . 33, 35, 63, 68, 80, 563
- \mtctitle 34, 35, 40, 63, 80, 440
- \mtifont . 34, 35, 80, 280, 283, 286, 563
- \name 587
- \newcommand 42
- \newcommand* 67
- \newif 250

- \newread 266, 563
- \newwrite 232, 267
- \noindent 563
- \nomlfpagenumbers 43, 82
- \nomlfrule 43, 82, 570
- \nomltpagenumbers 43, 82
- \nomltrule 43, 82, 570
- \nomtcpagenumbers ... 43, 82, 564, 568
- \nomtcrule 43, 82, 564, 566
- \nopagebreak 563
- \noplfpagenumbers 43, 82
- \noplfrule 43, 82, 570
- \nopltpagenumbers 43, 82
- \nopltrule 43, 82, 570
- \noptcpagenumbers 43, 82
- \noptcrule 43, 82
- \normalsize 34, 218
- \noslfpagenumbers 43, 82
- \noslfrule 43, 82, 570
- \nosltpagenumbers 43, 82
- \nosltrule 43, 82, 570
- \nostcpagenumbers 43, 82
- \nostcrule 43, 82
- \numwidth 42
- \or 226, 418
- \outer 266
- \PackageError 215, 235
- \PackageInfo 215, 235, 569, 573
- \PackageWarning ... 215, 235, 569, 573
- \PackageWarningNoLine 215
- \pagestyle 46
- \par 577
- \paragraph 204, 222
- \parsep 39, 278, 307
- \parskip 39, 249, 278, 307
- \part . 25, 31, 48, 49, 56, 60, 79, 151, 158,
161, 165, 179, 198, 199, 204, 221, 222,
262, 267, 288, 289, 304, 308, 311, 314,
317, 320, 324, 326, 394, 415
- \part* . 68, 69, 84, 89, 262, 275, 317, 567
- \partbegin 60, 317
- \partlof 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 171, 173,
208, 305, 308, 311, 563, 564
- \partlof@ 311
- \partlot 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 172, 174,
208, 305, 308, 314, 563, 564
- \partlot@ 314
- \partoc 308
- \partopsep 307
- \parttoc ... 20, 31, 34, 35, 38, 39, 50,
60, 79, 83, 89, 172, 174, 208, 305, 308,
396, 397, 399, 401, 563, 564, 567, 568
- \parttoc@ 308
- \PLF@contentsline 324
- \PLF@next 324
- \plf@setform 313, 362
- \PLF@test 325
- \plffont 34, 37, 70, 79
- \plfpagenumbers 43, 82
- \plfrule 43, 82, 570
- \plfSfont 34, 37, 70, 79, 576
- \plftitle 34, 37, 79, 440
- \PLT@contentsline 326
- \PLT@next 327
- \plt@setform 316, 363
- \PLT@test 327
- \pltfont 34, 37, 70, 79
- \pltpagenumbers 43, 82
- \pltrule 43, 82, 570
- \pltSfont 34, 37, 70, 79, 576
- \plttitle 34, 37, 79, 440
- \printglossary 48
- \printindex 48
- \protect 55, 58, 565
- \ProvidesFile 590
- \ProvidesPackage 147
- \PTC@contentsline 320
- \PTC@next 322
- \ptc@rule 304
- \ptc@setform 310, 362
- \PTC@test 323
- \ptc@verse 307
- \ptcCfont ... 31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79, 305
- \ptcfont . 31, 34, 35, 37, 40, 69–71, 79
- \ptcindent 31, 79, 307
- \ptcpagenumbers 43, 82
- \ptcPfont 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptcrule 43, 82
- \ptcSfont 31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptcSPfont 35, 37, 69–71, 79
- \ptcSSfont 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptcSSSfont 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptctitle 34, 37, 79, 440, 517
- \ptifont 34, 37, 40, 63, 79, 570
- \quad 33
- \raggedright 563
- \relax . 288, 317, 418, 424, 425, 428, 563
- \renewcommand 27, 28, 31, 34, 35, 37, 38,
42, 61, 62, 67, 70, 71, 73, 74, 250, 425,
428
- \renewcommand* 68
- \reset@font 57, 268, 563
- \rmfamily 218
- \rule 568
- \samepage 563
- \scriptsize 218
- \scshape 218

- \sectbegin 340
- \sectend 61, 340
- \sectfont 121
- \section . . 24, 25, 28, 30, 48, 49, 63, 81,
147, 152, 158, 159, 161, 167, 198, 199,
204, 220–222, 263, 264, 267, 288, 289,
328, 331, 333, 336, 339, 343, 346, 348,
381, 394, 395, 416, 561
- \section* . . 32, 68, 84, 234, 264, 275, 567
- \sectlof . 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 172,
174, 208, 330, 333, 397, 563–565
- \sectlof@ 333
- \sectlot . 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 172,
174, 208, 330, 336, 397, 563, 564
- \sectlot@ 336
- \secttoc . 28, 34, 35, 38, 39, 81, 83, 172,
175, 208, 329–331, 563, 564
- \secttoc@ 331
- \setcounter . . 28, 31, 56, 60, 79–81, 373
- \setlength 28, 31, 73
- \sffamily 218
- \SHORTEXT 563
- \shorttoc 19
- \SLF@contentsline 346
- \SLF@next 346
- \slf@setform 335, 363
- \SLF@test 347
- \slffont 34, 37, 81
- \slfpagenumbers 43, 82
- \slfrule 43, 82, 570
- \slfSfont 34, 37, 81, 576
- \slftitle 34, 38, 81, 440
- \slshape 218
- \SLT@contentsline 348
- \SLT@next 348
- \slt@setform 338, 363
- \SLT@test 349
- \sltfont 34, 37, 81
- \sltname 566
- \sltpagenumbers 43, 82
- \sltrule 43, 82, 570
- \sltSfont 34, 37, 81, 576
- \sltttitle 34, 38, 63, 81, 440
- \small 218
- \space 33
- \special 207, 208
- \starchapter 295
- \starsection 339
- \STC@contentsline 343
- \STC@next 344
- \stc@rule 329
- \stc@setform 333, 362
- \STC@test 345
- \stcfont 28, 34, 35, 37, 81
- \stcindent 28, 81, 329
- \stcpagenumbers 43, 82
- \stcPfont 35, 37, 81
- \stcrule 43, 82
- \stcSPfont 35, 37
- \stcSSfont 28, 35, 37, 81
- \stcSSSfont 35, 37, 81
- \stctitle 34, 38, 81, 440
- \stepcounter 32, 262, 264, 265
- \stifont 34, 38, 81
- \subparagraph 204, 222
- \subsection 204, 222, 339, 561
- \subsubsection 204, 222
- \table 301
- \tableofcontents 20, 27, 28, 31,
47, 50, 55, 60, 62, 75, 78–81, 173–175,
234, 267, 274, 396, 401, 567, 571
- \tableofcontents* 132
- \textbf 218
- \textit 218
- \textmd 218
- \textrm 218
- \textsc 218
- \textsf 218
- \textsl 218
- \texttt 218
- \textup 218
- \textwidth 587
- \tf@mtc 249, 266, 414
- \The@chapter 567
- \The@mtc 276, 567
- \themtc 276
- \Thepart 304
- \theptc 304
- \thispageminilofstyle 83, 283
- \thispageminilotstyle 83, 286
- \thispageminitocstyle 83, 280
- \thispagepartlofstyle 45, 83, 566
- \thispagepartlotstyle 45, 83, 566
- \thispageparttocstyle 45, 83, 272, 566
- \thispagesectlofstyle 83
- \thispagesectlotstyle 83
- \thispagesecttocstyle 83
- \thispagestyle 45, 46, 83, 272
- \tightmtcfalse 39, 78
- \tightmtctrue 39, 78
- \tiny 218
- \topsep 278, 307
- \ttfamily 218
- \typeout 569
- \undottedmtcfalse 78
- \undottedmtctrue 78
- \upshape 218

- `\usepackage` 26–29, 31, 75, 194, 197, 220, 221, 420, 439
- `\vrule` 568
- `\vspace*` 563
- `\widowpenalty` 563
- `\xchapter` 298, 300
- `\xdef` 373
- `\ychapter` 572
- `\ypart` 572
- `\ysection` 572
- `\z@` 568
- comment (package) [↔](#)[127]
- `\contentsline` (command) . 58, 263–265, 290, 291
- `\contentsline` 1, 2932, 2958, 2969, 3539, 3703, 3768, 3829, 3845, 4405, 4465, 4525, 5006, 5066, 5126
- COOK, David B. 240
- `\copy` 2981, 2985
- CORFF, Oliver . 240, 497, 526, 527, [↔](#)[110–113]
- CORNET, Emmanuel . 240, [↔](#)[7]
- `\count@` (command) 421
- `\count@` 7396
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash . 240, [↔](#)[23]
- Counters
 - chapter 253
 - mtc . 84, 262, 265, 274, 276, 294, 295, 298, 300, 354, 567
 - part 252, 253
 - ptc . 84, 262, 263, 274, 304, 317, 320, 324, 326
 - section 253
 - stc . 84, 262, 264, 274, 329, 343, 346, 348, 567
- `cri.tex` (old example document) . . . 586, 588
- croatian (language option) 36, 457
- `croatian.dtx` (file) 457
- `croatian.mld` (file) 227, 228, 457
- `\csname` (command) 302, 353, 355
- `\cyr` 8142, 8144, 8147, 8151, 8153, 8156, 8160, 8162, 8165, 8174, 8176, 8178, 8181, 8183, 8185, 8188, 8190, 8192, 9502, 9504, 9506, 9508, 9512, 9514, 9516, 9518, 9522, 9524, 9526, 9528, 9876, 9879, 9882, 9885, 9889, 9891, 9894, 9898, 9900, 9903, 10026, 10028, 10032, 10034, 10035, 10038, 10040, 10231, 10232, 10234, 10237, 10238, 10240, 10243, 10244, 10246
- `\CYRA` 9502, 9512, 9522
- `\CYRa` 9879, 9883, 9886, 9889, 9892, 9895, 9898, 9901, 9904
- `\cyra` 8142, 8145, 8148, 8151, 8154, 8157, 8160, 8163, 8166, 8174, 8178, 8181, 8185, 8188, 8192, 9502, 9504, 9507, 9509, 9512, 9514, 9517, 9519, 9522, 9524, 9527, 9529, 9876, 10026, 10029, 10032, 10035, 10038, 10041, 10233, 10235, 10239, 10241, 10245, 10247
- `\CYRb` 9886, 9895, 9904
- `\cyrb` 8148, 8157, 8166, 8178, 8185, 8192, 10029, 10035, 10041, 10235, 10241, 10247
- `\CYRc` 9883, 9886, 9892, 9895, 9901, 9904
- `\cyrc` 8148, 8157, 8166, 8178, 8185, 8192, 10029, 10035, 10041, 10233, 10235, 10239, 10241, 10245, 10247
- `\cyrch` 9504, 9514, 9524
- `\cyrd` 8142, 8151, 8160, 8174, 8181, 8188, 9876, 10026, 10032, 10038
- `\CYRe` 9879, 9889, 9898
- `\cyre` 8142, 8145, 8148, 8151, 8154, 8157, 8160, 8163, 8166, 8174, 8181, 8188, 9876, 10028, 10029, 10034, 10035, 10040, 10041, 10232, 10234, 10238, 10240, 10244, 10246
- `\cyrerev` 9508, 9518, 9528
- `\CYRF` 8176, 8183, 8190
- `\cyrf` 8145, 8154, 8163
- `\CYRG` 9504, 9514, 9524
- `\CYRg` 9879, 9889, 9898
- `\cyr g` 8145, 8154, 8163, 8176, 8183, 8190, 9502, 9504, 9506–9509, 9512, 9514, 9516–9519, 9522, 9524, 9526–9529
- `\CYRH` 9508, 9518, 9528
- `\cyrhrdsn` 8142, 8144, 8147, 8151, 8153, 8156, 8160, 8162, 8165, 8174, 8181, 8188
- `\CYRi` 9879, 9882, 9883, 9885, 9886, 9889, 9891, 9892, 9894, 9895, 9898, 9900, 9901, 9903, 9904
- `\cyri` 8142, 8144, 8145, 8147, 8148, 8151, 8153, 8154, 8156, 8157, 8160, 8162, 8163, 8165, 8166, 8174, 8176, 8178, 8181, 8183, 8185, 8188, 8190, 8192, 9504, 9506, 9508, 9514, 9516, 9518, 9524, 9526, 9528, 9876, 10028, 10029, 10034, 10035, 10040, 10041, 10235, 10241, 10247
- `\cyrii` 10231–10234, 10237–10240, 10243–10246
- `\CYRishrt` 9883, 9892, 9901
- `\cyrishrt` 9506, 9508, 9516, 9518, 9526, 9528, 10233, 10239, 10245
- `\cyrje` 10026, 10032, 10038
- `\CYRk` 9882, 9885, 9891, 9894, 9900, 9903

- `\cyrk` 8144,
 8147, 8153, 8156, 8162, 8165, 10028,
 10034, 10040, 10232, 10234, 10238,
 10240, 10244, 10246
`\CYRl` 9879, 9883, 9886, 9889, 9892, 9895, 9898,
 9901, 9904
`\cyr1` 8148, 8157, 8166, 8178, 8185, 8192, 9502,
 9507, 9509, 9512, 9517, 9519, 9522,
 9527, 9529, 10028, 10029, 10034,
 10035, 10040, 10041, 10232–10235,
 10238–10241, 10244–10247
`\cym` 10231, 10237, 10243
`\CYRn` 9879, 9889, 9898
`\cyrn` 8142, 8145, 8148, 8151, 8154, 8157, 8160,
 8163, 8166, 8174, 8181, 8188, 9506,
 9508, 9516, 9518, 9526, 9528, 9876
`\CYRO` 9879, 9889, 9898
`\CYRo` 9882, 9885, 9891, 9894, 9900, 9903
`\cyro` 9876
`\CYRp` 10232, 10234, 10238, 10240, 10244, 10246
`\CYRp` 9882, 9885, 9891, 9894, 9900, 9903
`\cyrp` 8144, 8147, 8153, 8156, 8162, 8165
`\CYRr` 9883, 9892, 9901
`\cyrR` 8142, 8145, 8151, 8154, 8160, 8163, 8174,
 8176, 8181, 8183, 8188, 8190, 9504,
 9506, 9514, 9516, 9524, 9526, 9876,
 10026, 10032, 10038, 10232–10234,
 10238–10240, 10244–10246
`\CYRS` 8142, 8144,
 8147, 8151, 8153, 8156, 8160, 8162,
 8165, 8174, 8181, 8188, 9876, 9882,
 9885, 9891, 9894, 9900, 9903, 10026,
 10028, 10032, 10034, 10038, 10040
`\CYRs` 9882, 9883, 9885, 9891, 9892, 9894, 9900,
 9901, 9903
`\cyrS` 8144,
 8147, 8153, 8156, 8162, 8165, 9507–
 9509, 9517–9519, 9527–9529, 10231,
 10233, 10237, 10239, 10243, 10245
`\cyrSftsn` 10235, 10241, 10247
`\CYRT` 8178, 8185, 8192, 10029, 10035, 10041
`\CYRt` 9883, 9886, 9892, 9895, 9901, 9904
`\cyrT` 8145,
 8148, 8154, 8157, 8163, 8166, 9507–
 9509, 9517–9519, 9527–9529, 10231,
 10233, 10235, 10237, 10239, 10241,
 10243, 10245, 10247
`\cyru` 8145, 8154, 8163, 8176, 8183, 8190, 9502,
 9506, 9512, 9516, 9522, 9526
`\CYRv` 9879, 9889, 9898
`\cyrY` 9508, 9518, 9528
`\CYRyu` 9883, 9892, 9901
`\cyrYU` 10233, 10239, 10245
`\CYRZ` 9506, 9516, 9526, 10231, 10237, 10243
`\cyrzh` 8142, 8151,
 8160, 8174, 8181, 8188, 9507, 9509,
 9517, 9519, 9527, 9529, 9876, 10026,
 10032, 10038
`\cz` 9780, 9781, 9784, 9785, 9788, 9789
 czech (language option) 36, 457
 czech.dtx (file) 457
 czech.mld (file) 227, 228, 457
- ## D
- DACHIAN, Sergueï 198, 240, 444, ⇨[114]
DAERR, Adrian 240
`\dal` . 7921, 7925, 7929, 8547, 8549, 8551, 8553,
 8555, 8557
DALALYAN, Arnak 198, 240, 444, ⇨[114]
DALY, Patrick W. 240, ⇨[115–118, 192]
DANIELSSON, Holger 240, ⇨[269–271]
 danish (language option) 36, 458
 danish.dtx (file) 458
 danish.mld (file) 227, 228, 458
 dblacnt (package) 580, ⇨[240]
`\DeclareOption` **6129, 6133, 6135, 6137, 6138,**
 6142, 6160, 6168, 6214, 6266, 6443
`\decrementmtc` (command) . . 33, 84, 197, 276,
 574
`\decrementmtc` **1, 2445, 3205, 7489**
`\decrementptc` (command) . . 33, 84, 197, 236,
 304, 574
`\decrementptc` **1, 3880, 7489**
`\decrementstc` (command) . . 33, 84, 197, 329,
 574
`\decrementstc` **1, 4548, 7489**
`\def` (command) 71
DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas 240, 450, ⇨[81]
DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 240
DEPARDIEU, Éric 240, ⇨[23]
Depth counters
 `lofdepth` 31, 210, 274, 303, 328
 `lotdepth` 31, 210, 274, 287, 303, 328
 `minilofdepth` 31, 203, 211, 274, 284
 `minilotdepth` 31, 203, 211, 287
 `minitocdepth` 20, 26, 27, 31, 41, 63, 68,
 80, 203, 211, 276, 281, 561
 `partlofdepth` 31, 203, 220, 303, 313
 `partlotdepth` 31, 203, 220, 303, 316
 `parttocdepth` 20, 31, 79, 203, 220, 304,
 310
 `secnumdepth` 203, 204
 `sectlofdepth` 31, 203, 222, 328, 335
 `sectlotdepth` 31, 63, 203, 222, 328, 338
 `secttocdepth` 28, 31, 81, 203, 222, 329,
 332

- tocdepth 31, 60, 68, 79–81, 203, 224, 276,
 281, 284, 373, 561, 572
 De Rydt, Ben 240
 DESGRAUPES, Bernard 240, ⇨[119–121]
 DESPRAIRIES, Cécile . 240, ⇨[27, 146, 291, 320]
 DESREUX, Sébastien 240, ⇨[7]
 Devanāgarī (package) . . 41, 204, 207, 440, 458,
 482, ⇨[265]
 devanagari (language option) 36, 207, 458, 481
 devanagari.mld (file) 227, 228, 238, 458, 481,
 587
 devanagari.sty (file) 204, 458
 \df@mtic 3278, 3346, 3412
 \df@mtilf (command) 277
 \df@mtilf 3240, 3245, 3353, 3573
 \df@mtilt (command) 277
 \df@mtilt 3240, 3245, 3419, 3592
 \df@mtitc (command) 277
 \df@mtitc 3240, 3245, 3285, 3554
 \df@pti 4021, 4093, 4166
 \df@ptilf 3983, 4099, 4269
 \df@ptilt 3983, 4172, 4288
 \df@ptitc 3983, 4027, 4250
 \df@sti 4609, 4675, 4740
 \df@stilf 4576, 4681, 4883
 \df@stilt 4576, 4746, 4902
 \df@stitc 4576, 4616, 4864
 DILLER, Antoni R. 240, ⇨[122]
 \dimen@ (command) 421
 \dimen@ 7396
 \divide 2564
 \dn 8339–8341, 8343–8345, 8347–8349,
 9062–9064, 9066–9068, 9070–9072
 \do@mtilf (command) 277
 \do@mtilf 3240, 3245, 3348–3353, 3355, 3365,
 3369
 \do@mtilt (command) 277
 \do@mtilt 3240, 3245, 3414–3419, 3421, 3431,
 3435
 \do@mtitc (command) 277
 \do@mtitc 3240, 3245, 3278, 3346, 3412
 \do@ptilf 3983, 4093, 4105
 \do@ptilt 3983, 4166, 4182
 \do@ptitc 3983, 4021, 4038
 \do@stilf 4576, 4675, 4689
 \do@stilt 4576, 4740, 4754
 \do@stitc 4576, 4609, 4624
 doc (package) 20, ⇨[239]
 docmfp (package) ⇨[330]
 docstrip (package) 20, ⇨[209, 241]
 document (environment) 49, 75, 221
 \documentclass (command) 27, 28, 31, 75, 120,
 195, 202, 206, 221
 \documentclass 2,
 53, 116, 177, 205, 228, 283, 318, 413,
 414, 625, 880, 915, 1169, 1170, 1427,
 1625, 1677, 1736, 1757, 1797, 1845,
 1895, 1943, 1995, 2170, 2206, 2241,
 2315, 2375, 2424, 2467, 2518, 2554
 \dominilof (command) . 26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83,
 153, 159, 171, 176, 221, 282, 290, 291,
 317
 \dominilof 1,
 59, 122, 432, 1200, 1950, 2341, 2589,
 3330, 3539, 3544, 3577, 5142, 6777,
 6861, 7365, 7515
 \dominilof@ 3548, 3573
 \dominilot (command) . 26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83,
 154, 159, 171, 176, 221, 285, 290, 291,
 317
 \dominilot 1,
 60, 123, 433, 1201, 1901, 3396, 3539,
 3549, 3596, 5142, 6786, 6870, 7365,
 7515
 \dominilot@ 3553, 3592
 \dominitoc (command) . 26, 27, 38, 39, 47, 52,
 57, 75, 80, 83, 139, 152, 153, 160, 171,
 175, 221, 225, 232, 235, 279, 290, 291,
 317, 340, 416, 562, 564, 570, 571
 \dominitoc 1, 10, 213,
 239, 341, 431, 887, 1199, 1553, 1630,
 1692, 1746, 1765, 1813, 1949, 2033,
 2181, 2227, 2249, 2387, 2429, 2473,
 3262, 3539, 3558, 5142, 6768, 6852,
 7365, 7515
 \dominitoc@ (command) 291
 \dominitoc@ 3539, 3543, 3554
 \dopartlof (command) . 27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83,
 154, 160, 171, 175, 221, 317–319
 \dopartlof 1, 640, 940, 1203, 4235, 4247, 4273,
 5142, 6748, 6832, 7362, 7509
 \dopartlof@ 4248, 4269
 \dopartlot (command) . 27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83,
 154, 160, 172, 175, 221, 317–319
 \dopartlot 1, 640, 941, 1204, 4235, 4247, 4292,
 5142, 6757, 6841, 7362, 7509
 \dopartlot@ 4249, 4288
 \doparttoc (command) 27, 31, 38, 39,
 50, 60, 79, 83, 152, 160, 172, 175, 221,
 267, 317, 318, 396, 397, 399
 \doparttoc 1, 10,
 187, 299, 640, 939, 1202, 1691, 1764,
 1812, 4235, 4247, 4254, 5142, 6739,
 6823, 7362, 7509
 \doparttoc@ 4247, 4250
 Dorj, Dorjpalam . . 240, 497, 526, 527, ⇨[113]

`\dosectlof` (command) . 27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83,
 154, 160, 172, 176, 221, 251, 340, 341
`\dosectlof 1`, 641, 937, **2688**, **4853**, **4861**, 4887,
5142, 6723, 6806, 6890, **7368**, **7521**
`\dosectlof@` 4862, **4883**
`\dosectlot` (command) 27, 28, 38,
 39, 50, 81, 83, 154, 161, 172, 176, 221,
 251, 267, 341, 342
`\dosectlot 1`, 641, 938, 1853, **2688**, **4857**, **4861**,
 4906, **5142**, 6725, 6815, 6899, **7368**,
7521
`\dosectlot@` 4863, **4902**
`\dosecttoc` (command) . 27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83,
 152, 161, 172, 176, 221, 329, 340, 341
`\dosecttoc 1`, 641, 936, 2531, **4849**, **4861**, 4868,
5142, 6797, 6881, **7368**, **7521**
`\dosecttoc@` 4861, **4864**
`\dotfil` 424, 426, 633, 635
`\dotfill` 425, 634
dotted (default option) . . 44, 77, 233, 380, 566
 DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. . . 24, \hookrightarrow [23, 123–125]
 DUCHIER, Denys 240, \hookrightarrow [241]
 DUDING, Lyndon 61, 240
 DUNG, Ta Quang 240
`duplex2v.pro` (file) 591
 dutch (language option) 36, 459
 dutch.dtx (file) 441, 459
 dutch.mld (file) 227, 228, 459

E

`\e@mti` **3240**, **3278**, **3346**, **3412**, **3554**, **3573**, **3592**
`\e@pti` . . . **3930**, **3937**, **4021**, **4093**, **4166**, **4250**,
4269, **4288**
`\e@sti` **4571**, **4609**, **4675**, **4740**, **4864**, **4883**, **4902**
`\edef` (command) 302
`\edef` 3615, 3709, 3723, 3774, 3784, 3835, 4311,
 4410, 4420, 4470, 4480, 4530, 4816,
 4925, 5011, 5021, 5071, 5081, 5131,
 5296, 5314, 5431, 5472, 5596, 5613,
 5672, 5691, 5748, 5766, 5823, 5841,
 5842, 5882, 6167
 ÈEHAAJ, Marko 240, 515
 EIJKHOUT, Victor . . . 240, \hookrightarrow [63, 126–128, 202]
 ELS, Danie 240, \hookrightarrow [132]
`\else` (command) 250
`\em` 2300, 2307
`emk` (script) 204, 208, 221, 227–230, 576
`\emph` 2075, 2077, 2145, 2156
`\empty` (command) 45, 46, 83, 272, 425, 428, 563
`\empty` 2210,
 2211, 2219, 2220, 3122–3124, 3128–
 3133, 3135–3137, 3141–3146, 3148–

3150, 3154–3159, 6163, **7539**, 7574,
 7577, 7578, 7629–7655, 7686, 7697,
 7708, 7718, 7720, 7722–7728
`en-mtc.bst` (file) 204, 227–229, 238, 587
`\endcsname` (command) 302, 353, 355
`\endlist` 3261, 3999, 4592
`\endmtc@verse` (command) 278
`\endmtc@verse` 333, 337, 3261
`\endmtchideinmainlof` (command) 66, 84, 214
`\endmtchideinmainlof` 149
`\endmtchideinmainlot` (command) . . 66, 84,
 125, 126, 214
`\endmtchideinmainlot` 157, 1881, 1929
`\endptc@verse` (command) 307
`\endptc@verse` **3989**
`\endstc@verse` 4592
english (default language option) . 36, 77, 412,
 442, 445, 451, 454, 459, 500, 522, 524,
 569
 english.dtx (file) 459, 460
 english.mld (file) . 35–38, 149, 190, 226–228,
 383, 384, 440, 442, 445, 451, 454, 459,
 500, 522, 524, 565, 567, 587, 589
 english1 (language option) 36, 460
 english1.mld (file) 227, 228, 460, 582
 english2 (language option) 36, 460
 english2.mld (file) 227, 228, 460, 582
`\enlargethispage` (command) 54
`\enlargethispage` **1**
 Environments
 abstract 50, 67
 appendices 60, 102, 198, 214
 bibunit 199
 document 49, 75, 221
 figure 200, 223
 filecontents 41, 206, 378, 440
 margincap 210
 minipage 134, 561
 mtc@verse 89, 90, 278, 280, 281, 284, 287,
 362, 363
 mtchideinmainlof . 63, 65, 84, 179, 188,
 197, 214, 235, 374, 431, 570, 573, 574,
 583, 584
 mtchideinmainlot . 63, 65, 84, 180, 189,
 197, 214, 235, 374, 375, 431, 570, 573,
 574, 583, 584
 mtchideinmaintoc 63, 84, 113, 114, 180,
 189, 197, 214, 235, 373, 431, 570, 583
 multicols 87, 90, 115
 pageUn 115
 ptc@verse . . 307, 310, 313, 316, 362, 363
 quote 577

- samepage . . . 280, 281, 283, 284, 286, 287,
 309, 311, 312, 314–316, 331, 333, 334,
 336–338, 563
 stc@verse . . . 330, 332, 333, 335, 338, 362,
 363, 572
 subappendices 198
 table 200, 223
 tabular 280, 283, 286, 310, 312, 315, 332,
 334, 337
 verse 33, 278, 307, 330, 561
 wrapfigure 134, 215, 225
 wraptable 225
 E_{SAHBOD}, Behdad 240, 464, ↪[129]
 esperant (language option) 36, 461
 esperant.mld (file) 227, 228, 461
 esperanto (language option) 36, 461
 esperanto.dtx (file) 461
 esperanto.mld (file) 227, 228, 461
 ESSER, Thomas 240
 estonian (language option) 36, 462, 567
 estonian.dtx (file) 462
 estonian.mld (file) 227, 228, 462
 ε -T_{EX} (package) ↪[94, 234]
 \eth@doaltchar 8476, 8477, 8479, 8480, 8484,
 8485, 8487, 8488, 8492, 8493, 8495,
 8496
 ethiop (package) 41, 440, 462, 463, ↪[35]
 ethiopia (language option) 36, 462, 463
 ethiopia.mld (file) 227, 228, 462, 463
 ethiopian (language option) 36, 204, 463
 ethiopian.mld (file) 227, 228
 ethiopian2 (language option) 36, 463
 ethiopian2.mld (file) 227, 228, 463, 580
 ethopian.mld (file) 463
 ETIENNE, Gilhooly 240, ↪[146]
 EVERITT, Karl F. 240, 567
 Examples
 mtc-2c.pdf 228
 mtc-2c.tex 87, 213, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-2nd.pdf 228
 mtc-2nd.tex 88, 214, 227, 228, 255, 468,
 588
 mtc-3co.pdf 228
 mtc-3co.tex 89, 214, 227, 228, 238, 591
 mtc-add.bib 214, 227, 588
 mtc-add.pdf 228
 mtc-add.tex 48, 92, 93, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-ads.pdf 228
 mtc-ads.tex 48, 97, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-amm.pdf 228
 mtc-amm.tex 102, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-apx.pdf 228
 mtc-apx.tex 64, 87, 103, 214, 227, 228,
 584, 588
 mtc-art.pdf 228
 mtc-art.tex 103, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-bk.pdf 228
 mtc-bk.tex 108, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-bo.pdf 228
 mtc-bo.tex 114, 214, 227, 228, 585, 588
 mtc-ch0.pdf 228
 mtc-ch0.tex 118, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-cri.fko 214
 mtc-cri.pdf 228
 mtc-cri.tex 120, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-fko.pdf 228
 mtc-fko.tex 120, 227, 228, 239, 591
 mtc-fol.pdf 228
 mtc-fol.tex 121, 123, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-fo2.pdf 228
 mtc-fo2.tex 123, 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-gap.pdf 228
 mtc-gap.tex 73, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228,
 588
 mtc-hi1.pdf 228
 mtc-hi1.tex 65, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228,
 588
 mtc-hi2.pdf 228
 mtc-hi2.tex 66, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228,
 588
 mtc-hia.pdf 228
 mtc-hia.tex 125, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-hir.pdf 228
 mtc-hir.tex 125, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-hop.pdf 228
 mtc-hop.tex 126, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-liv.pdf 228
 mtc-liv.tex 128, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-mem.pdf 228
 mtc-mem.tex 132, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-mm1.pdf 228
 mtc-mm1.tex 132, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-mu.pdf 228
 mtc-mu.tex 133, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-sbf.pdf 228
 mtc-sbf.tex 135, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-scr.pdf 228
 mtc-scr.tex 137, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-syn.pdf 228
 mtc-syn.tex 138, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-tbi.pdf 228
 mtc-tbi.tex 140, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-tlc.pdf 228
 mtc-tlc.tex 141, 215, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-tlo.pdf 228
 mtc-tlo.tex 75, 87, 142, 215, 227, 228,
 589

- mtc-tsf.pdf 228
- mtc-tsf.tex . . . 142, 215, 227, 228, 588
- \ExecuteOptions **7257**
- \expandafter (command) 353
- \ext@subfigure 2321
- Extensions
 - .F 51, 195, 282
 - .G 51, 195, 318
 - .H 51, 196, 340
 - .M 51, 196, 279
 - .P 51, 196, 318
 - .S 51, 196, 340
 - .T 51, 197, 285
 - .U 51, 197, 318
 - .V 51, 197, 341
 - .aux 52, 55, 57, 60, 195, 199, 255
 - .bst . . . 204, 207, 225, 227–229, 238, 587
 - .cls 195
 - .dtx 41, 195, 196, 230, 236, 440, 514, 572
 - .ins 195, 196, 230, 236
 - .ist . . . 206, 212, 227–229, 572, 573, 575
 - .lan 206, 212, 227–229, 418
 - .lof . 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 263–266, 290, 291, 299, 318, 325, 340, 347, 431, 567
 - .log . . 29, 31, 48, 49, 52, 54, 77, 139, 145, 146, 157, 163, 194, 196, 207, 249, 251, 266, 267, 388, 411, 412, 440, 569, 590
 - .lot . 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 263–265, 267, 290, 291, 301, 318, 327, 341, 349, 431, 565, 567
 - .maf . 49, 77, 148, 196, 210, 236, 382, 414, 575
 - .mld . . 19, 35, 36, 41, 67, 72, 78, 149, 157, 163, 180, 189, 191, 196, 198, 201, 226, 228, 232, 233, 235, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382–384, 436, 439, 440, 468, 565, 567, 569, 573, 574, 579, 582, 589, 590
 - .mlf 26, 51, 196, 282, 290
 - .mlo 19, 36, 41, 67, 149, 158, 163, 181, 196, 201, 202, 206, 226, 228, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382, 384, 436, 440, 495, 574, 582, 589, 590
 - .mlt 26, 51, 196, 285, 290
 - .mtc . 26, 48, 51, 55, 56, 58, 196, 261, 267, 268, 279, 290, 414, 561
 - .mtc1 267, 414, 586
 - .pdf 228
 - .plf 29, 51, 196, 318
 - .plt 29, 51, 196, 318
 - .pre 212, 227–229, 576, 581
 - .ptc 29, 51, 196, 318
 - .slf 28, 51, 196, 340
 - .slt 28, 51, 196, 341
 - .stc 28, 51, 196, 340
 - .sty . . . 197, 219, 226, 229, 230, 232, 565
 - .tar 230
 - .tex 146, 197
 - .tgz 230
 - .toc 26, 47, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173–175, 197, 199, 232, 263–266, 274, 275, 290, 291, 296, 318, 322, 340, 345, 431, 562, 565, 567
 - .zip 230
- F**
- \f@rhdr 7781, 7787, 7789, 7797, 7825
- \f@rtoc . . 7780, 7785, 7814, 7817, 7820, 7823, 7825
- \fa 7919, 7923, 7927, 8547, 8551, 8555
- FABIAN, Mike 240, ⇨[130]
- FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 240, ⇨[131]
- \fake@starttoc (command) 274
- \fake@starttoc **3160**
- \fakelistoffigures (command) . 27, 28, 31, 78–81, 173, 174, 274
- \fakelistoffigures . 943, 1206, 1952, **3160**, **6703**, 6925, 6960, 6995, **7489**
- \fakelistoftables (command) 27, 28, 31, 50, 78–81, 173, 174, 274
- \fakelistoftables . . 944, 1207, **3160**, **6703**, 6936, 6971, 7006, **7489**
- \faketableofcontents (command) 27, 28, 31, 50, 52, 78–81, 89, 173–175, 274, 396, 401, 562
- \faketableofcontents . 188, 300, 942, 1205, 1554, 2532, **3160**, **6703**, 6914, 6949, 6984, **7489**
- farsi (language option) 198, 205
- farsi.ldf (file) 198, 465
- farsi.sty (file) 205, 464
- farsi1 (language option) 36, 464
- farsi1.mld (file) 227, 228, 464, 574
- farsi1.mlo (file) 227, 228, 464, 574
- farsi2 (language option) 36, 464
- farsi2.mld (file) 227, 228, 464, 574
- farsi2.mlo (file) 227, 228, 464, 574
- farsi3 (language option) 36, 465
- farsi3.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 465, 586
- FarsiTeX (package) . 41, 205, 440, 464, ⇨[129]
- \fbox 2351, 2356, 2359, 2361, 2573
- \fboxrule 2571
- \fboxsep 2571
- FEAR, Simon 240, ⇨[132]
- FENN, Jürgen 240, ⇨[133, 302, 303]
- FERGUSON, Michael J. 240, ⇨[134]

- FESSLER, Jeff 240
 \fi (command) 226, 250, 418
 \figbox . . . 2572, 2602, 2607, 2612, 2617, 2622,
 2627, 2632
 \figure (command) 298
 figure (environment) 200, 223
 \figure **3743, 4439, 5041**
 \figure@mtcck . . 5333, 5339, 5349, 5355, 5369,
 5376, 5392
 filecontents (environment) . 41, 206, 378, 440
 Files
 /tmp/'whoami'.imk 229
 /tmp/'whoami'.rmk 230
 /tmp/'whoami'.tmk 229, 230
 /tmp/'whoami'/OLD 586
 \jobname.lan 418
 \jobname.mtc 267
 \jobname.mtc1 267
 acadian.mld 227, 228, 440
 acadien.mld 227, 228, 441
 afrikaan.mld 227, 228, 441, 442
 afrikaans.mld 227, 228, 442
 albanian.dtx 442
 albanian.mld 227, 228, 442
 american.mld . . . 227, 228, 384, 442, 567
 amsart.cls 198
 amsbook.cls 198
 amsproc.cls 198
 arab.mld . . . 198, 227, 228, 443, 444, 565
 arab2.mld 198, 227, 228, 443, 583
 arabi.mld 198, 227, 228, 444, 586
 arabic.ldf 198
 arabic.mld 198, 227, 228, 444
 armenian.mld 198, 227, 228, 444
 australian.mld 227, 228, 445
 austrian.mld 227, 228, 445
 bahasa.dtx 446
 bahasa.mld 227, 228, 445
 bahasai.mld . . . 227, 228, 445, 446, 483
 bahasam.dtx 446
 bahasam.mld . . . 227, 228, 446, 494, 497
 bangla.mld 227, 228, 447
 basque.dtx 447
 basque.mld 227, 228, 447
 Bg5.cap 456
 Bg5.cpx 456
 bicig.mld 227, 228, 448, 521
 bicig2.mld 227, 228, 449, 522, 576
 bicig3.mld 227, 228, 449, 522, 583
 bithe.mld 227, 228, 450, 497, 576
 book.cls 67
 brazil.mld 227, 228, 450, 451
 brazilian.mld 227, 228, 451, 573
 breton.dtx 451
 breton.mld 227, 228, 451
 british.mld 227, 228, 451, 573
 bulgarian.dtx 452
 bulgarian.mld 227, 228, 452, 567
 bulgarianb.mld . . 41, 227, 228, 452, 571
 buryat.mld 227, 228, 453
 buryat2.mld 227, 228, 454, 583
 canadian.mld 227, 228, 454
 canadien.mld 227, 228, 454
 captions.dn 482
 castillan.mld 227, 228, 455
 castillian.mld 227, 228, 455, 573
 catalan.dtx 455
 catalan.mld 227, 228, 455
 CATALOG 200, 227, 228, 590
 chinese1.mld 227, 228, 456, 570
 chinese1.mlo 227, 228, 456
 chinese2.mld 227, 228, 456, 570
 chinese2.mlo 227, 228, 456
 cmcyralt.sty 512
 croatian.dtx 457
 croatian.mld 227, 228, 457
 czech.dtx 457
 czech.mld 227, 228, 457
 danish.dtx 458
 danish.mld 227, 228, 458
 devanagari.mld . . 227, 228, 238, 458, 481,
 587
 devanagari.sty 204, 458
 duplex2v.pro 591
 dutch.dtx 441, 459
 dutch.mld 227, 228, 459
 en-mtc.bst 204, 227–229, 238, 587
 english.dtx 459, 460
 english.mld . . . 35–38, 149, 190, 226–228,
 383, 384, 440, 442, 445, 451, 454, 459,
 500, 522, 524, 565, 567, 587, 589
 english1.mld 227, 228, 460, 582
 english2.mld 227, 228, 460, 582
 esperant.mld 227, 228, 461
 esperanto.dtx 461
 esperanto.mld 227, 228, 461
 estonian.dtx 462
 estonian.mld 227, 228, 462
 ethiopia.mld 227, 228, 462, 463
 ethiopian.mld 227, 228
 ethiopian2.mld . . . 227, 228, 463, 580
 ethopian.mld 463
 farsi.ldf 198, 465
 farsi.sty 205, 464
 farsi1.mld 227, 228, 464, 574
 farsi1.mlo 227, 228, 464, 574
 farsi2.mld 227, 228, 464, 574

- farsi2.mlo 227, 228, 464, 574
- farsi3.mld 198, 227, 228, 465, 586
- finnish.dtx 465, 466
- finnish.mld 227, 228, 465
- finnish2.mld 227, 228, 466, 572
- fminitoc.bib 206, 227–229, 569
- fminitoc.dtx 59, 206, 226–230, 418, 573
- fminitoc.ins 229
- fminitoc.ist 206, 227–229, 573
- fminitoc.lan 206, 227–229, 418
- fminitoc.pdf 206, 227–229, 569
- fminitoc.ps 206
- fr-mtc.bst 207, 227–229, 238, 587
- franc.sty 227
- francais.mld 227, 228, 466
- frbib.sty 227
- french.mld 35, 37, 38, 227, 228, 440, 441, 454, 466, 467, 469, 573, 579
- french1.mld 227, 228, 467, 582
- french2.mld .88, 227, 228, 255, 468, 582, 585
- frenchb.dtx 467, 468
- frenchb.mld 227, 228, 469
- frenchle.mld 227, 228, 469
- frchpro.mld 227, 228, 469
- frnew.sty 227
- frplain1.bst 238, 587
- galician.dtx 469
- galician.mld 227, 228, 469, 591
- german.mld 227, 228, 445, 470
- germanb.dtx 471
- germanb.mld 227, 228, 471
- germanb2.mld 227, 228, 471, 575
- greek-mono.mld 198, 227, 228, 472, 570
- greek-polydemo.mld 198, 227, 228, 473, 570
- greek-polykatha.mld 198, 227, 228, 474, 570
- greek.dtx 472
- greek.mld 227, 228, 472
- guarani.ldf 207, 475
- guarani.mld 227, 228, 475, 574
- hangul-u8.mld 227, 228, 478
- hangul-u8.mlo 227, 228, 478
- hangul.cap 476
- hangul.cpx 476
- hangul1.mld 227, 228, 476, 570
- hangul1.mlo 227, 228, 476
- hangul2.cap 477
- hangul2.cpx 477
- hangul2.mld 227, 228, 476, 570
- hangul2.mlo 227, 228, 476
- hangul3.mld 227, 228, 477, 570
- hangul3.mlo 227, 228, 477
- hangul4.mld 227, 228, 477, 570
- hangul4.mlo 227, 228, 477
- hanja-u8.mld 227, 228, 479
- hanja-u8.mlo 227, 228, 479, 480
- hanja.cap 479
- hanja.cpx 478
- hanja1.mld 227, 228, 478, 570
- hanja1.mlo 227, 228, 478
- hanja2.mld 227, 228, 479, 570
- hanja2.mlo 227, 228, 479
- hebrew.dtx 481
- hebrew.mld 198, 227, 228, 480, 567
- hebrew2.mld 198, 227, 228, 481
- hindi-modern.mld . 227, 228, 238, 482, 587
- hindi.mld 227, 228, 238, 481, 587
- hungarian.mld 227, 228, 482
- icelandic.dtx 483
- icelandic.mld 227, 228, 483, 567
- indon.mld 227, 228, 483
- indonesian.mld 227, 228, 483
- INSTALL 208, 227, 228, 235, 238, 571, 584, 590
- interlingua.dtx 484
- interlingua.mld 227, 228, 484
- irish.dtx 484
- irish.mld 227, 228, 484, 581
- italian.dtx 485
- italian.mld 227, 228, 485, 579
- italian2.mld 227, 228, 485
- japanese.mld 41, 227, 228, 486
- japanese.mlo 227, 228, 486
- japanese2.mld 227, 228, 486, 570
- japanese2.mlo 227, 228, 486
- japanese3.mld . 227, 228, 487, 570, 579
- japanese3.mlo 227, 228, 487
- japanese4.mld 227, 228, 487, 570
- japanese4.mlo 227, 228, 487
- japanese5.mld 227, 228, 488, 570
- japanese5.mlo 227, 228, 488
- japanese6.mld . 227, 228, 238, 488, 589
- japanese6.mlo . 227, 228, 238, 488, 589
- JIS.cap 486
- JIS.cpx 487
- kanlel.sty 489
- kannada.mld ... 227, 228, 489, 581, 592
- khalkha.mld 227, 228, 489, 576
- lamed.eps 227–229, 583
- lamed.pdf 227–229, 583
- lamed.tex 227–229, 583
- latex.fmt 57
- latex.tex 57, 563
- latin.dtx 489, 490

- latin.mld 227, 228, 489, 567
- latin2.mld 227, 228, 490, 572
- latvian.ldf 491
- latvian.mld . . . 198, 227, 228, 491, 570
- letton.mld 227, 228, 491, 570
- lhcyralt.sty 512
- lhcyrkoi.sty 513
- lhcyrwin.sty 513
- lithuanian.ldf 491
- lithuanian.mld . . . 227, 228, 491, 579
- lowersorbian.mld . 227, 228, 492, 493, 580
- lsorbian.dtx 492
- lsorbian.mld 227, 228, 493, 581
- magyar.dtx 493, 494
- magyar.mld 227, 228, 482, 493, 582
- magyar2.mld . . . 227, 228, 493, 572, 582
- magyar3.mld . . . 227, 228, 494, 579, 582
- malay.mld 227, 228, 494
- malayalam-keli.mld . 227, 228, 495, 573
- malayalam-omega.mld 227, 228, 495, 581
- malayalam-omega.mlo 227, 228, 495, 581
- malayalam-rachana.mld . 227, 228, 496, 573
- malayalam-rachana2.mld 227, 228, 496, 573
- manju.mld 227, 228, 497, 576
- memoir.cls 211, 259
- meyalu.mld 227, 228, 497
- minitoc-hyper.sty 211
- minitoc-tds.zip 212, 227, 229, 230, 238, 590, 592
- minitoc.bib 211, 227–229, 569
- minitoc.bug . 49, 54, 211, 227, 228, 236, 237, 569, 574, 575, 579, 580, 583
- minitoc.dtx . 59, 206, 208, 211, 226–230, 236, 378, 418, 585
- minitoc.ins 41, 206–208, 212, 215, 226–229, 378, 418, 440, 573, 585
- minitoc.ist 212, 227–229, 572
- minitoc.l 212, 226–228, 576
- minitoc.lan . . . 206, 212, 227–229, 418
- minitoc.pdf 212, 227–229
- minitoc.pre . . . 212, 227–229, 576, 581
- minitoc.ps 212
- minitoc.sty 212, 226–228, 249
- minitoc.sum 212, 227, 228
- minitoc.tex 565, 569
- mongol.mld 227, 228, 497
- mongolb.mld 227, 228, 238, 239, 498, 499, 591
- mongolb.mlo 238, 591
- mongolian.dtx 498
- mongolian.mld . 227, 228, 239, 499, 591
- mtc-apx.tex 592
- mtc-cri.log 120
- mtcglo.ist 575
- mtcmess.sty 226–228
- mtcnorsk.sty 565
- mtcnynorsk.sty 565
- mtcoeff.sty 226–228, 571
- mtcpatchmem.sty 226–228
- mtcswedish.sty 564
- naustrian.mld 227, 228, 499
- newzealand.mld 227, 228, 500
- ngerman.mld 227, 228, 500
- ngermanb.dtx 500, 501
- ngermanb.mld 227, 228, 499, 500
- ngermanb2.mld 227, 228, 501, 575
- norsk.dtx 501, 502
- norsk.mld 227, 228, 501
- norsk2.mld 227, 228, 502, 575
- nynorsk.mld 227, 228, 502
- nynorsk2.mld 227, 228, 503, 575
- OLD 586
- omega-greek.ldf 472–474
- omega-polish.ldf 504
- omega-russian.ldf 509
- omega-spanish.ldf 518
- omega.sty 198
- placeins.sty 29
- placeins.txt 29, 220
- plain.bst 204, 207
- plainurl.bst 238, 587
- polish.dtx 503
- polish.mld 227, 228, 503
- polish2.mld . . . 198, 227, 228, 504, 570
- polski.dtx 504
- polski.mld 227, 228, 504, 581
- portuges.dtx 450, 505
- portuges.mld . . 227, 228, 505, 572, 573
- portugues.mld 572, 573
- portuguese.mld . . . 227, 228, 505, 573
- rapport.doc 520
- README 227, 228
- romanian.dtx 506, 507
- romanian.mld 227, 228, 506
- romanian2.mld . 227, 228, 506, 579, 587
- romanian3.mld . 227, 228, 507, 579, 587
- russian-cca.mld . . . 227, 228, 511, 582
- russian-cca.mlo 227, 228, 511
- russian-ccal.mld . . 227, 228, 512, 582
- russian-ccal.mlo 227, 228, 512
- russian-lh.mld . . . 227, 228, 512, 582
- russian-lh.mlo 227, 228, 512
- russian-lhcyralt.mld . 227, 228, 512, 582

- russian-lhcyralt.mlo . . 227, 228, 512, 513
 - russian-lhcyrkoi.mld . . 227, 228, 513, 582
 - russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo . . 227, 228, 513
 - russian-lhcyrwin.mld . . 227, 228, 513, 582
 - russian-lhcyrwin.mlo . . 227, 228, 513
 - russian.def 511
 - russian.mld 227, 228, 507
 - russian.sty 511, 512
 - russian2m.ldf 508
 - russian2m.mld . . 198, 227, 228, 508, 570
 - russian2o.mld . . 198, 227, 228, 509, 570
 - russianb.dtx 452, 498, 510
 - russianb.mld 227, 228, 510, 581
 - russianc.mld 227, 228, 511
 - samin.dtx 514
 - samin.mld 227, 228, 514, 567
 - scottish.dtx 514
 - scottish.mld 227, 228, 514
 - scrbook.cls 121
 - serbian.dtx 515
 - serbian.mld 227, 228, 515, 580
 - serbianc.mld 41, 227, 228, 515, 570, 580
 - SJIS.cap 487
 - SJIS.cpx 488
 - slovak.dtx 516
 - slovak.mld 227, 228, 516
 - slovene.dtx 517
 - slovene.mld 227, 228, 517
 - spanish.dtx 469, 517–519
 - spanish.mld . . . 227, 228, 455, 517, 581
 - spanish2.mld 227, 228, 518, 572
 - spanish3.mld . . 198, 227, 228, 518, 574
 - spanish4.mld 227, 228, 519, 579
 - swedish.dtx 519
 - swedish.mld 227, 228, 519
 - swedish2.mld 227, 228, 520, 583
 - thai.ldf 520
 - thai.mld 227, 228, 520, 570
 - thai.mlo 227, 228, 520
 - thaicjk.ldf 520
 - titletoc.sty 224
 - tocloft.pdf 75
 - TODO 224, 227, 228
 - turkish.dtx 521
 - turkish.mld 227, 228, 521
 - u8hangul.mld 581
 - u8hangul.mlo 581
 - u8hangul.tex 478
 - u8hanja.mld 581
 - u8hanja.mlo 581
 - u8hanja.tex 479
 - uighur.mld 227, 228, 521, 584
 - uighur2.mld 227, 228, 522, 584
 - uighur3.mld 227, 228, 522, 584
 - UKenglish.mld 227, 228, 522, 573
 - ukraineb.dtx 523
 - ukraineb.mld 227, 228, 522
 - ukrainian.mld . . 227, 228, 522, 523, 580
 - uppersorbian.mld . . 227, 228, 523, 524, 580
 - USenglish.mld 227, 228, 524, 573
 - usorbian.dtx 523
 - usorbian.mld 227, 228, 524, 581
 - vietnam.mld 227, 228, 525, 565
 - vietnamese.mld 227, 228, 525
 - welsh.dtx 525
 - welsh.mld 227, 228, 525
 - while.tip 260
 - win-gn.def 475
 - xalx.mld 227, 228, 489, 526, 576
 - xalx2.mld 227, 228, 526, 583
 - xalx3.mld 227, 228, 527, 583
 - \finalmem 8996, 8998, 9003, 9005, 9010, 9012
 - \finalnun 8995, 9002, 9009
 - finnish (language option) 36, 465
 - finnish.dtx (file) 465, 466
 - finnish.mld (file) 227, 228, 465
 - finnish2 (language option) 36, 466
 - finnish2.mld (file) 227, 228, 466, 572
 - \firstchapteris (command) . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 200, 206, 276, 411, 564, 565
 - \firstchapteris **1, 3205, 7235, 7588**
 - \firstpartis (command) . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 206, 304, 411
 - \firstpartis **1, 3880, 7228, 7588**
 - \firstsectionis (command) . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 159, 170, 197, 206, 329, 412
 - \firstsectionis **1, 4548, 7242, 7588**
 - FISCHER, Ulrike 240
 - flafter (package) . . 29, 220, 413, 583, ⇨[210, 242]
 - FLECK, Jean-Julien 240, ⇨[7]
 - FLIPO, Daniel 240, 467, 468, ⇨[64, 256]
 - float (package) 29, ⇨[221]
 - \FloatBarrier (command) . . 29, 206, 220, 574
 - \FloatBarrier **1**, 1030, 1043, 1085, 1111, 1124, 1142, 1145
 - floatrow (package) 29, ⇨[207]
 - FLÖM, Peter L. 240, ⇨[135–137]
 - flsection (option) 234, 568
 - flsectionb (option) 234, 568
 - \flushbottom 930, 1185
 - FLYNN, Peter 240, ⇨[138–141]
 - fminitoc.bib (file) 206, 227–229, 569

fminitoc.dtx (file) 59, 206, 226–230, 418, 573
 fminitoc.ins (file) 229
 fminitoc.ist (file) 206, 227–229, 573
 fminitoc.lan (file) 206, 227–229, 418
 fminitoc.pdf (file) 206, 227–229, 569
 fminitoc.ps (file) 206
 fmk (script) 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 576
 fncychap (package) .. 50, 72, 85, 177, 206, 237,
 257, 405, 584, ⇨[220]
 fo1.tex (old example document) ... 585, 588
 fo2.tex (old example document) ... 585, 588
 \footnotesize (command) 218
 \footnotesize 2528
 Fox, Jim 240
 \FR 8547–8549, 8551–8553, 8555–8557
 fr-mtc.bst (file) 207, 227–229, 238, 587
 franc (package) 88, 207, 228, 229
 franc.sty (file) 227
 francais (language option) 36, 466
 francais.mld (file) 227, 228, 466
 frbib (package) 207, 228, 229
 frbib.sty (file) 227
 french (language option) 36, 454, 466, 467, 469,
 568, 569
 french.mld (file) 35, 37, 38, 227, 228, 440, 441,
 454, 466, 467, 469, 573, 579
 french1 (language option) 36, 467
 french1.mld (file) 227, 228, 467, 582
 french2 (language option) ... 36, 88, 214, 468
 french2.mld (file) . 88, 227, 228, 255, 468, 582,
 585
 frenchb (language option) 36, 469
 frenchb.dtx (file) 467, 468
 frenchb.mld (file) 227, 228, 469
 frenchle (language option) 36, 469, 568
 frenchle.mld (file) 227, 228, 469
 frenchpro (language option) ... 36, 469, 568
 frenchpro.mld (file) 227, 228, 469
 frnew (package) 88, 207, 228, 229
 frnew.sty (file) 227
 \frontmatter (command) 75
 \frontmatter 212
 frplain1.bst (file) 238, 587
 fullpage (package) 142, ⇨[116]
 \fup 2018, 2042, 2044, 2111
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. 240
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo 240, ⇨[177]
 \fussy 1016, 1282

G

galician (language option) 36, 469, 517
 galician.dtx (file) 469

galician.mld (file) 227, 228, 469, 591
 gaps 73
 gaps.tex (old example document) ... 584, 588
 GARCIA, Federico 240, ⇨[142]
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 240
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 55, 240, ⇨[143]
 \gdef (command) 260
 GELDERMAN, Maarten 240, ⇨[144]
 GENSCHE, Chuck 240, ⇨[145]
 geometry (package) 114, ⇨[306]
 german (language option) 36, 120, 445, 470, 471
 german.mld (file) 227, 228, 445, 470
 germanb (language option) 36, 471, 500
 germanb.dtx (file) 471
 germanb.mld (file) 227, 228, 471
 germanb2 (language option) 36, 471
 germanb2.mld (file) 227, 228, 471, 575
 GHODSI, Mohammad ... 240, 440, 464, ⇨[129]
 GILHOOLY, Helen 240, ⇨[146]
 GLEISZNER, Markus 240, 578
 \glqq 1752
 \gobbleopt@ (command) 423
 \gobbleopt@ 7508, 7509–7527
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali 240
 \goodap 2325
 GOOSSENS, Michel . 240, 564, ⇨[147, 242–244]
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu 240, ⇨[23]
 GRANT, Fraser 240, 484, 514, ⇨[48, 65]
 GRAY, Norman 225, 240, ⇨[148]
 greek (language option) 36, 472
 greek-mono (language option) ... 36, 41, 472
 greek-mono.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 472, 570
 greek-polydemo (language option) . 36, 41, 473
 greek-polydemo.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 473,
 570
 greek-polykatha (language option) 36, 41, 474
 greek-polykatha.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 474,
 570
 greek.dtx (file) 472
 greek.mld (file) 227, 228, 472
 GREGORIO, Enrico 240, ⇨[149]
 GRENON, Loïc 240
 GREITHER, Charles 240, ⇨[291]
 GRINEVA, Olga A. 240, ⇨[28]
 GROT, Sébastien 240
 \grqq 1752
 guarani (package) ... 41, 207, 440, 475, ⇨[38]
 guarani (language option) 36, 207, 475
 guarani.ldf (file) 207, 475
 guarani.mld (file) 227, 228, 475, 574
 GUIGNARD, Micael 240
 GUNN, Marion 240, 484, ⇨[48]
 GURARI, Eitan M. 240, ⇨[147]

H

- \ha 7919, 7923, 7927, 8547, 8551, 8555
- HAFNER, Thomas 240, \hookrightarrow [279]
- HAGEN, Hans 240, \hookrightarrow [136, 150, 151, 154, 172]
- HAMZI, Boumediene 240
- HÀN, Thế Thành 240, 525, 580, 591,
 \hookrightarrow [152–154, 218]
- hangcaption (package) 50, 76, 85, 178, 207, 238,
257, 406, 562, 589, \hookrightarrow [182]
- hangul-u8 (language option) 36, 478
- hangul-u8.mld (file) 227, 228, 478
- hangul-u8.mlo (file) 227, 228, 478
- hangul.cap (file) 476
- hangul.cpx (file) 476
- hangul1 (language option) 36, 476
- hangul1.mld (file) 227, 228, 476, 570
- hangul1.mlo (file) 227, 228, 476
- hangul2 (language option) 36, 476
- hangul2.cap (file) 477
- hangul2.cpx (file) 477
- hangul2.mld (file) 227, 228, 476, 570
- hangul2.mlo (file) 227, 228, 476
- hangul3 (language option) 36, 477
- hangul3.mld (file) 227, 228, 477, 570
- hangul3.mlo (file) 227, 228, 477
- hangul4 (language option) 36, 477
- hangul4.mld (file) 227, 228, 477, 570
- hangul4.mlo (file) 227, 228, 477
- hanja-u8 (language option) 36, 479, 480
- hanja-u8.mld (file) 227, 228, 479
- hanja-u8.mlo (file) 227, 228, 479, 480
- hanja.cap (file) 479
- hanja.cpx (file) 478
- hanja1 (language option) 36, 478
- hanja1.mld (file) 227, 228, 478, 570
- hanja1.mlo (file) 227, 228, 478
- hanja2 (language option) 36, 479
- hanja2.mld (file) 227, 228, 479, 570
- hanja2.mlo (file) 227, 228, 479
- HANSEN, Thorsten 240, \hookrightarrow [155, 156]
- HAPPEL, Patrick 240, \hookrightarrow [157]
- HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 219, 240,
 \hookrightarrow [158–164, 274, 275]
- HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. 240, \hookrightarrow [1, 2]
- HARIN, Alexander 241, 512, \hookrightarrow [165]
- HARRIS, Russel L. 241
- HARRISON, Michael A. 241, \hookrightarrow [104]
- HARTKE, Stephen 241, \hookrightarrow [166]
- \hb@xt@ 3505
- HEAP, Danny 241
- \heba1ef . 9026, 9029, 9036, 9039, 9046, 9049
- \hebayin 9023, 9033, 9043
- \hebbet 9029, 9039, 9049
- \hebfina1mem . . 9023, 9026, 9033, 9036, 9043,
9046
- \hebfina1nun 9022, 9032, 9042
- \hebka1f 9022, 9032, 9042
- \hebla1med 9029, 9039, 9049
- \hebmem . . 9025, 9028, 9035, 9038, 9045, 9048
- \hebnun 9023, 9033, 9043
- \hebre1sh . 9025, 9026, 9028, 9035, 9036, 9038,
9045, 9046, 9048
- hebrew (language option) 36, 198, 480
- hebrew.dtx (file) 481
- hebrew.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 480, 567
- hebrew2 (language option) 36, 481
- hebrew2.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 481
- \hebsha1n . 9025, 9028, 9035, 9038, 9045, 9048
- \hebtav . . 9022, 9025, 9028, 9029, 9032, 9035,
9038, 9039, 9042, 9045, 9048, 9049
- \hebtet 9029, 9039, 9049
- \hebvav . . 9022, 9026, 9029, 9032, 9036, 9039,
9042, 9046, 9049
- \hebyod . . 9023, 9025, 9026, 9028, 9033, 9035,
9036, 9038, 9043, 9045, 9046, 9048
- HEFFERON, Jim 241, \hookrightarrow [168, 169]
- HEIDER, André 241
- HEIN, Thorsten 241
- HELLMAN, Sten 241, 519, \hookrightarrow [66]
- HELSTRUP, Håvard 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
- HENEL, Yvon 241, \hookrightarrow [23, 302]
- HENKEL, Hartmut 241, \hookrightarrow [172]
- HENLICH, Thomas 241, \hookrightarrow [170]
- HENNIG, Stephan 51, 69, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [171]
- HENRY, Florence 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
- HERBORN, Stephen 241
- HESOLL, Jörg 241
- hia.tex (old example document) 586, 588
- hide.tex (old example document) 584
- hide1.tex (old example document) 584, 588
- hide2.tex (old example document) 584, 588
- hindi (language option) 36, 207, 481
- hindi-modern (language option) 36, 207, 482
- hindi-modern.mld (file) 227, 228, 238, 482, 587
- hindi.mld (file) 227, 228, 238, 481, 587
- hints** (default option) 49–51, 54, 67, 69,
71–73, 76, 77, 151, 157, 163, 207, 218,
235, 236, 250, 251, 253, 388, 397, 412,
415, 569, 572, 581
- hir.tex (old example document) 586, 588
- HL \TeX (package) 207, 440, 478, 479, \hookrightarrow [190]
- \hline (command) 310, 312, 315, 332, 334, 337
- \hline 3301, 3369, 3435, **4038, 4105, 4182,**
4624, 4689, 4754
- HODLEY, David 241, \hookrightarrow [292]
- HOEKWATER, Taco 241, \hookrightarrow [172]

- HOENIG, Alan 241, \hookrightarrow [173]
HOGG, Joe 241, \hookrightarrow [136]
HØGHOLM, Morten 241
HOLME, Alv Kjetil 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
hop.tex (old example document) 586, 588
HÖPPNER, Klaus 241, \hookrightarrow [174]
HORST, Umstatter 241, 506, \hookrightarrow [67]
HOSEK, Don 241, 572, \hookrightarrow [175]
\hrule (command) 276, 568
\hrule 1535, 3220, 5187–5189, 5196–5198, 5205–5207
Hu, Yufan 241, 561
HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel 241, \hookrightarrow [244]
\Huge (command) 218
\Huge 1466, 1468, 1475
\huge (command) 218
\huge 2024
hungarian (language option) 36, 482, 493
hungarian.mld (file) 227, 228, 482
HUSEBY, Dave W. 241
HYNA, Helene 241, \hookrightarrow [256, 257]
hypernat (package) 592, \hookrightarrow [32]
hyperref (package) 49, 59, 69, 85, 115, 137, 148, 163–165, 167, 207, 211, 225, 230, 234, 236, 256, 293, 394, 566, 576, 579, 591, 592, \hookrightarrow [255, 277, 278]
HyperTeX (package) 207, 208, 225, \hookrightarrow [272]
- I**
- icelandic (language option) 36, 483
icelandic.dtx (file) 483
icelandic.mld (file) 227, 228, 483, 567
idxtotoc (option of KOMA-Script) 47
\if@dominilof@used@ 2745, 3573, 6762, 6848
\if@dominilot@used@ 2745, 3592, 6762, 6848
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2745, 3539, 3554, 6762, 6848
\if@dopartlof@used@ 2739, 4269, 6733, 6819
\if@dopartlot@used@ 2739, 4288, 6733, 6819
\if@doparttoc@used@ 2739, 4250, 6733, 6819
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2751, 4883, 6715, 6791, 6877
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2751, 4902, 6715, 6791, 6877
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2751, 4864, 6791, 6877
\if@filesw 2773, 3169
\if@firstchapteris@used@ 2757, 3205, 7231
\if@firstpartis@used@ 2757, 3880, 7224
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2757, 7238
\if@longextensions 3265
\if@longextensions@ 2990, 3265, 3333, 3399, 3625, 3656, 3731, 3792, 4001, 4073, 4145, 4318, 4332, 4427, 4487, 4594, 4659, 4724, 4933, 4961, 5029, 5089, 6138, 7011, 7292, 7656
\if@mainmatter 7793, 7811
\if@minilof@used@ 2745, 3331, 6762, 6848, 6941
\if@minilot@used@ 2745, 3397, 6762, 6848, 6941
\if@minitoc@used@ 2745, 3263, 6762, 6848, 6941
\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ 6445
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2704, 2818, 7107
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2704, 2818, 7107
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2694, 2820, 7116
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 2694, 2820, 7116
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2694, 2824, 7134
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2694, 2824, 7134
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ 2694, 2822, 7125
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ 2694, 2822, 7125
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2694, 2826, 7143
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2694, 2826, 7143
\if@mtc@chapter@def@ 2729, 6762, 6848, 6941, 7011
\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ 2735, 4546, 5141
\if@mtc@checkfiles 2885, 6133
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2718, 3338, 7189
\if@mtc@empty@minilot@ 2723, 3404, 7196
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2718, 3270, 7182
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ 2718, 7168
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2718, 7175
\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ 2718, 7161
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2718, 7210
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2718, 7217
\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ 2724, 7203
\if@mtc@FE 2885, 3270, 3278, 3338, 3346, 3404, 3412, 4008, 4021, 4080, 4093, 4153, 4166, 4601, 4609, 4666, 4675, 4731, 4740
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2704, 2808, 7062
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2704, 2808, 7062
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2704, 2810, 7071
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2704, 2810, 7071
\if@mtc@Himlof@ 5922
\if@mtc@Himlot@ 5955
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ (command) 373
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ 5907, 5908
\if@mtc@hints@ (command) 250

- \if@mtc@hints@ 2685, 3554, 3573, 3592, 4250, 4269, 4288, 4864, 4883, 4902, 5161, 6443, 6690, 7339
- \if@mtc@hints@giben@ 2685
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ (command) 251
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ ... 2687, 6454, 6462, 6470, 6478, 6502, 6510, 6518, 6578, 6587, 6602, 6611, 6625, 6632, 6651, 6670, 6720, 6733, 6762, 6791, 6819, 6848, 6877, 6906, 6941, 6976, 7044, 7053, 7062, 7071, 7080, 7089, 7098, 7107, 7116, 7125, 7134, 7143, 7152, 7245
- \if@mtc@hints@given@true 7011
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ (command) 251
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ .. 2685, 6632, 6651, 6670, 6720
- \if@mtc@hyper@used@ 2787, 6632, 6651, 6670
- \if@mtc@insellang@ (command) .. 378, 379
- \if@mtc@insellang@ 6074, 6094
- \if@mtc@LI 2885
- \if@mtc@listfiles@ 6160, 7338
- \if@mtc@lof@used@ . 6445, 6690, 6694, 6703, 6919, 6954, 6989
- \if@mtc@lot@used@ . 6445, 6690, 6694, 6703, 6930, 6965, 7000
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ . 2694, 2828, 7152
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ .. 2694, 2828, 7152
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ (command) 269
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ ... 2689, 2830, 3043
- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ 2689, 2830
- \if@mtc@mislang (command) 382
- \if@mtc@mislang 6168, 6214, 6244
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ 2782, 6137, 7289
- \if@mtc@part@def@ . 2727, 6733, 6819, 6906, 7011
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ 2733
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ . 2689, 6720, 7283
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ . 2704, 2812, 7080
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ .. 2704, 2812, 7080
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ . 2704, 2814, 7089
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ .. 2704, 2814, 7089
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ 2688, 6715, 6720
- \if@mtc@section@def@ ... 2731, 4546, 5140, 6715, 6791, 6877, 6976, 7011
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ 2737
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ .. 2689, 2804, 7044
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2689, 2804, 7044
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ 5863, 5865, 5884
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ 5803, 5825, 5844
- \if@mtc@setfont@ .. 5277, 5279, 5298, 5317, 5395
- \if@mtc@setformat@ 5576, 5615
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5632, 5674
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ (command) 574
- \if@mtc@setrules@ 5708, 5729
- \if@mtc@setrules@act@ (command) 574
- \if@mtc@setttitle@ 5453, 5455, 5474
- \if@mtc@setttitlefont@ ... 5412, 5414, 5433
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 2704, 2816, 7098
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ . 2704, 2816, 7098
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ 5632, 5674
- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ 5708, 5750
- \if@mtc@ss@insection@ ... 6142, 6518, 7283
- \if@mtc@toc@used@ . 6445, 6690, 6694, 6703, 6908, 6943, 6978
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ . 2704, 2806, 7053
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ .. 2704, 2806, 7053
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ (command) 376
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ 6010
- \if@mtcfixindex@ 6053
- \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ 2830, 2853
- \if@partlof@used@ (command) 311
- \if@partlof@used@ . 2739, 4073, 6733, 6819, 6906
- \if@partlot@used@ (command) 314
- \if@partlot@used@ . 2739, 4145, 6733, 6819, 6906
- \if@parttoc@used@ (command) 308
- \if@parttoc@used@ . 2739, 4001, 6733, 6819, 6906
- \if@realch (command) 562
- \if@sectlof@used@ (command) 333
- \if@sectlof@used@ . 2751, 4659, 6715, 6791, 6877, 6976
- \if@sectlot@used@ (command) 336
- \if@sectlot@used@ . 2751, 4724, 6715, 6791, 6877, 6976
- \if@secttoc@used@ (command) 331
- \if@secttoc@used@ . 2751, 4594, 6791, 6877, 6976
- \if@setrules@false 5750
- \if@twocolumn 3940, 3954, 3968
- \if@twoside 2001
- \ifanappendix 7812
- \ifartopt 7798
- \ifcase (command) 206, 226, 418
- \ifdim 4819
- \IfFileExists . 2854, 2902, 5142, 6074, 6094, 6168, 6214, 7292
- \ifFTR (command) 573

- \ifheadnameref 7825
 - \ifkightmtc **1, 2785, 3251, 3989, 4582, 6129, 7656**
 - ifmtarg (package) 208, 260, [↔\[335\]](#)
 - \ifmtc@lof@used@ **6906, 6941, 6976**
 - \ifmtc@lot@used@ **6906, 6941, 6976**
 - \ifmtc@toc@used@ **6906, 6941, 6976**
 - \ifmtc@warn@ **7662, 7679, 7731**
 - \ifmtcsecondpart (command) 583
 - \ifmtcsecondpart . . . 293, **2760, 2761, 2767, 7656**, 8644
 - \ifnum (command) 339
 - \ifodd 2002
 - \ifscan@allowed 421, 630
 - \iftightmtc **1, 2785, 3251, 3989, 4582, 6129, 7656**
 - \ifundottedmtc (command) 289, 578
 - \ifundottedmtc **3030**, 3510, 3513, 3516, **3518, 3528, 6135, 7656**
 - \ignorespaces **3464**
 - IKEDA, Hiroya 241, [↔\[176\]](#)
 - imk (script) . . . 204, 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 576, 584
 - \immediate 2775, 2778, 2888, 2903, 2913–2915, 2917, 2918, 2993–2998, 3015–3018, 3170, 3611–3613, 3634, 3635, 3667, 3668, 3711, 3712, 3740, 3741, 3776, 3777, 3801, 3802, 3837, 3838, 3848, 3866, 4307–4309, 4327, 4328, 4341, 4342, 4412, 4413, 4436, 4437, 4472, 4473, 4496, 4497, 4532, 4533, 4921–4923, 4942, 4943, 4973, 4974, 5013, 5014, 5038, 5039, 5073, 5074, 5098, 5099, 5133, 5134, 7297, 7298, 7300, 7302
 - \in 10193, 10197, 10201
 - \incrementmtc (command) . . . 33, 84, 197, 276, 574
 - \incrementmtc **1, 3205, 7489**
 - \incrementptc (command) . . . 33, 84, 197, 236, 304, 574
 - \incrementptc **1, 3880, 7489**
 - \incrementstc (command) . . . 33, 84, 197, 329, 574
 - \incrementstc **1, 4548, 7489**
 - indon (language option) 36, 483
 - indon.mld (file) 227, 228, 483
 - indonesian (language option) 36, 483
 - indonesian.mld (file) 227, 228, 483
 - \input **2990, 7387**
 - \InputIfFileExists 6077, 6096, **7257**
 - insection (option) 29, 50, 77, 97, 105, 165, 171, 177, 190, 208, 220, 234, 235, 237, 381, 397, 413, 568, 570, 583
 - \insertchapterspace 7802
 - INSTALL (file) 208, 227, 228, 235, 238, 571, 584, 590
 - \interlinepenalty . . 1464, 1474, 3036, 3485, 3498, 4822
 - interlingua (language option) 36, 484
 - interlingua.dtx (file) 484
 - interlingua.mld (file) 227, 228, 484
 - irish (language option) 36, 484
 - irish.dtx (file) 484
 - irish.mld (file) 227, 228, 484, 581
 - italian (language option) 36, 485
 - italian.dtx (file) 485
 - italian.mld (file) 227, 228, 485, 579
 - italian2 (language option) 36, 485
 - italian2.mld (file) 227, 228, 485
 - \itemindent (command) 278, 307
 - \itemindent . . **3251**, 3306, 3374, 3440, **3989**, 4049, 4121, 4194, 4584, 4585, 4638, 4703, 4768
 - \itemsep (command) 278, 307
 - \itemsep **3251, 3989**, 4583
 - \itshape (command) 218
 - IVANOV, Dmitry 198, 241, 472–474, 491, 504, 508, 509, [↔\[194\]](#)
 - IVERSEN, Per Steinar 241, 501, 502, [↔\[49\]](#)
 - IWAKUMA, Tetsuo 241, [↔\[177\]](#)
 - IZAOLA, Zunbeltz 241, 447, [↔\[51\]](#)
- ## J
- JABRI, Youssef 198, 241, 444, 465, [↔\[178\]](#)
 - JAEGHNE, Bernd 59, 211, 234, 241, 293, 297, [↔\[311\]](#)
 - JALAM, Radwan 241
 - JANICH, Michael 241, 503, [↔\[85\]](#)
 - japanese (language option) 36, 486
 - japanese.mld (file) 41, 227, 228, 486
 - japanese.mlo (file) 227, 228, 486
 - japanese2 (language option) 36, 486
 - japanese2.mld (file) 227, 228, 486, 570
 - japanese2.mlo (file) 227, 228, 486
 - japanese3 (language option) 36, 487
 - japanese3.mld (file) 227, 228, 487, 570, 579
 - japanese3.mlo (file) 227, 228, 487
 - japanese4 (language option) 36, 487
 - japanese4.mld (file) 227, 228, 487, 570
 - japanese4.mlo (file) 227, 228, 487
 - japanese5 (language option) 36, 488
 - japanese5.mld (file) 227, 228, 488, 570
 - japanese5.mlo (file) 227, 228, 488
 - japanese6 (language option) 36, 488
 - japanese6.mld (file) 227, 228, 238, 488, 589

japanese6.mlo (file) . 227, 228, 238, 488, 589
 \jeem 7921, 7925, 7929, 8547, 8549, 8551, 8553,
 8555, 8557
 JEFFREY, Alan 241, ⇨[58, 179, 180, 246]
 JERNSLETEN, Regnor 241, 514, ⇨[68]
 JIANG, Zhuhan 73, 241, ⇨[181]
 JIS.cap (file) 486
 JIS.cpx (file) 487
 \jobname (command) . 206, 208, 261, 267, 268,
 279, 282, 285, 290, 291, 298, 300, 404,
 414, 418, 586
 \jobname **2990, 5142, 7292, 7387**
 JOLY, Loïc 241, ⇨[23]
 JONES, David M. 50, 76, 85, 241, ⇨[182]
 JORSSEN, Christophe 241, ⇨[23]
 JUHASZ, Robert 241, 506, ⇨[67]
 JUNGE, Stefan 241
 jura (class) . . 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 208, 389, 394,
 581, ⇨[92]
 JURAFSKY, Dan 24, 231, 241, 561

K

k-loose (default option) . 39, 77, 208, 236, 255,
 330, 380, 574
k-tight (option) 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 236, 255,
 278, 307, 330, 380, 574
 \kaf . 7920, 7924, 7928, 8548, 8552, 8556, 8995,
 9002, 9009
 KANERVA, Mikko 241, 465, 466, ⇨[69]
 kanlel.sty (file) 489
 kannada (language option) 36, 489
 kannada.mld (file) . . . 227, 228, 489, 581, 592
 KannadaT_EX (package) 489, ⇨[336]
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 241, 520, ⇨[233]
 KASTRUP, David 241
 \kern (command) 276, 563
 \kernafterminilof (command) 74, 82
 \kernafterminilot (command) 74, 82
 \kernafterminilot **2667, 3458, 7408**
 \kernafterminitoc (command) . . 74, 82, 591
 \kernafterminitoc **2667, 3322, 7408**
 \kernafterpartlof (command) 74, 82
 \kernafterpartlof **2667, 4139, 7408**
 \kernafterpartlot (command) 74, 82
 \kernafterpartlot **2667, 4212, 7408**
 \kernafterparttoc (command) . . 74, 82, 237
 \kernafterparttoc **2667, 4067, 7408**
 \kernaftersectlof (command) 74, 82
 \kernaftersectlof . **2667, 4719, 4785, 7408**
 \kernaftersectlot (command) 74, 82
 \kernaftersectlot **2667, 7408**

\kernaftersecttoc (command) 74, 82
 \kernaftersecttoc **2667, 4654, 7408**
 KERYELL, Ronan 207, 241
 khalkha (language option) 36, 489
 khalkha.mld (file) 227, 228, 489, 576
 KIELHORN, Axel 85, 241, ⇨[252]
 KIM, Ki-Joo 241, ⇨[183–185]
 KLEB, Bil 50, 241
 KLEIWEG, Peter 241, 484, ⇨[70]
 KLEVELAND, Rune 241, 501, 502, ⇨[49]
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 241, 446, 455, 461, ⇨[71, 72, 83]
 KNUTH, Donald E. . 202, 216, 217, 219, 223, 241,
 ⇨[186–189]
 KOAUNGHI, Un 207, 241, 478, 479, ⇨[190]
 KOHM, Markus 85, 241, ⇨[191, 252, 281]
 KOPKA, Helmut 241, ⇨[192]
 KOPPANYI, Attila 241, 493, 494, ⇨[55]
 KORAI, Adamantios 241, 474
 KRAKOVIAK, Vincent 241
 KRATT, Kai 241
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 241
 KROONENBERG, Siep 241, ⇨[193]
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. 198, 241, 472–474, 491, 504,
 508, 509, 518, ⇨[194]
 \ktightmtcfalse (command) 39, 78
 \ktightmtcfalse **1, 2786, 6132, 7658**
 \ktightmtctrue (command) 39, 78
 \ktightmtctrue **1, 6131**
 KUDLEK, Manfred 241, 462, 463, ⇨[35]
 KUHN, Markus G. 241, ⇨[195]
 KULZER, Florian 241
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 241, 486, 488
 KUMMER, Olaf 241, 462, 463, ⇨[35]
 KÜSTER, Frank . . . 50, 73, 85, 241, 515, ⇨[196]

L

\l@chapter (command) 67, 266, 288, 310
 \l@chapter **2969, 3462**, 4058, 4059, 5176, 5178,
 7582
 \l@chapter@SVPN 4058, 4059
 \l@coffee (command) 379
 \l@coffee **6121, 7714**
 \l@listof **5175, 7656**
 \l@mti . . . **3240, 3245, 3278, 3346, 3412, 3554,**
3573, 3592
 \l@paragraph (command) 68, 351
 \l@paragraph 5182, 7586
 \l@part (command) 67, 263
 \l@part **2932, 5177, 7581**
 \l@pchapter **4217**
 \l@psect **4217**

- `\l@pti` . . . 3930, 3940, 3983, 4021, 4093, 4166,
4250, 4269, 4288
- `\l@schapter` 4789
- `\l@section (command)` 67, 68, 264, 351
- `\l@section` 2958, 5175, 5179, 7583
- `\l@starchapter` 5175, 7581
- `\l@starparagraph` 5175, 7581
- `\l@starpart` 5175, 7581
- `\l@starsection` 5175, 7581
- `\l@starsubparagraph` 5175, 7581
- `\l@starsubsection` 5175, 7581
- `\l@starsubsubsection` 5175, 7581
- `\l@sti` . . . 4571, 4576, 4609, 4675, 4740, 4864,
4883, 4902
- `\l@subfigure` 2320
- `\l@subparagraph (command)` 68
- `\l@subparagraph` 5183, 7587
- `\l@subsection (command)` 67, 317
- `\l@subsection` 5180, 7584
- `\l@subsubsection (command)` 67
- `\l@subsubsection` 5181, 7585
- `\l@xchapter (command)` 265, 266, 288
- `\l@xchapter` 2969, 3462, 7528
- `\l@xpart (command)` 263, 317
- `\l@xpart` 2932, 4217, 7528
- `\l@xsect (command)` 264
- `\l@xsect` 2958, 4789, 7528
- `\l@xsection (command)` 586
- `\l@xsection` 2958, 4789
- `\label` . . . 2037, 2118, 2251, 2360, 2363, 2395,
2399, 2418, 2601, 2606, 2611, 2616,
2621, 2626, 2631, 2636
- `\labelitemi` 1518, 1523
- `\labelsep` 3307, 3375, 3441, 4050, 4122, 4195,
4639, 4704, 4769
- `\labelwidth` . . 3306, 3374, 3440, 4049, 4121,
4194, 4638, 4703, 4768
- LABORDE, Stéphane 241
- LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas 241, ↪[197]
- LAGALLY, Klaus 36, 198, 241, 443, 480,
↪[198, 199]
- `\lam` . 7919–7921, 7923–7925, 7927–7929, 8548,
8549, 8552, 8553, 8556, 8557
- `\lamed` 9000, 9007, 9014
- `lamed.eps (file)` 227–229, 583
- `lamed.pdf (file)` 227–229, 583
- `lamed.tex (file)` 227–229, 583
- LAMPORT, Leslie . . . 209, 241, ↪[58, 200–205]
- LANARI, Fabio 241
- `\LANG (command)` 206, 418
- `\LANG` 7371
- LANGE, Robert 241
- LANGMYHR, Dag 241, 501, 502, 565
- `\LangSig` 2247, 2283
- Language options
 - `acadian` 440, 569
 - `acadien` 36, 441, 569
 - `afrikaan` 36, 441, 442
 - `afrikaans` 36, 442
 - `albanian` 36, 442
 - `american` 36, 442
 - `arab` 36, 443, 444
 - `arab2` 36, 443
 - `arabi` 36, 444
 - `arabic` 36, 198, 444
 - `armenian` 36, 198, 444
 - `australian` 36, 445
 - `austrian` 36, 445
 - `bahasa` 36, 445
 - `bahasai` 36, 445, 446, 483
 - `bahasam` 36, 446, 494, 497
 - `bangla` 36, 199, 447, 568
 - `basque` 36, 447
 - `bicig` 36, 213, 448, 449, 521
 - `bicig2` 36, 449, 522
 - `bicig3` 36, 449, 522
 - `bithe` 36, 213, 450, 497
 - `brazil` 36, 450, 451
 - `brazilian` 36, 451
 - `breton` 36, 451
 - `british` 36, 451
 - `bulgarian` 36, 452
 - `bulgarianb` 36, 452
 - `buryat` 36, 453, 454
 - `buryat2` 36, 454
 - `canadian` 36, 454, 569
 - `canadien` 36, 454, 569
 - `castillan` 36, 455, 517
 - `castillian` 36
 - `catalan` 36, 455, 517
 - `chinese1` 36, 456
 - `chinese2` 36, 456
 - `croatian` 36, 457
 - `czech` 36, 457
 - `danish` 36, 458
 - `devanagari` 36, 207, 458, 481
 - `dutch` 36, 459
 - english** (default) . . 36, 77, 412, 442, 445,
451, 454, 459, 500, 522, 524, 569
 - `english1` 36, 460
 - `english2` 36, 460
 - `esperant` 36, 461
 - `esperanto` 36, 461
 - `estonian` 36, 462, 567
 - `ethiopia` 36, 462, 463
 - `ethiopian` 36, 204, 463
 - `ethiopian2` 36, 463

- farsi 198, 205
- farsi1 36, 464
- farsi2 36, 464
- farsi3 36, 465
- finnish 36, 465
- finnish2 36, 466
- français 36, 466
- french .. 36, 454, 466, 467, 469, 568, 569
- french1 36, 467
- french2 36, 88, 214, 468
- frenchb 36, 469
- frenchle 36, 469, 568
- frenchpro 36, 469, 568
- galician 36, 469, 517
- german 36, 120, 445, 470, 471
- germanb 36, 471, 500
- germanb2 36, 471
- greek 36, 472
- greek-mono 36, 41, 472
- greek-polydemo 36, 41, 473
- greek-polykatha 36, 41, 474
- guarani 36, 207, 475
- hangul-u8 36, 478
- hangul1 36, 476
- hangul2 36, 476
- hangul3 36, 477
- hangul4 36, 477
- hanja-u8 36, 479, 480
- hanja1 36, 478
- hanja2 36, 479
- hebrew 36, 198, 480
- hebrew2 36, 481
- hindi 36, 207, 481
- hindi-modern 36, 207, 482
- hungarian 36, 482, 493
- icelandic 36, 483
- indon 36, 483
- indonesian 36, 483
- interlingua 36, 484
- irish 36, 484
- italian 36, 485
- italian2 36, 485
- japanese 36, 486
- japanese2 36, 486
- japanese3 36, 487
- japanese4 36, 487
- japanese5 36, 488
- japanese6 36, 488
- kannada 36, 489
- khalkha 36, 489
- latin 36, 489
- latin2 36, 490
- latvian 36, 491
- letton 36, 491
- lithuanian 36, 491
- lowersorbian 36, 492, 493
- lsorbian 36, 492, 493
- magyar 36, 482, 493
- magyar2 36, 493
- magyar3 36, 494
- malay 36, 494
- malayalam-keli 36, 495
- malayalam-omega 36, 41, 440, 495
- malayalam-rachana 36, 496
- malayalam-rachana2 36, 496
- manju 36, 450, 497
- meyalu 36, 497
- mongol 36, 497
- mongolb 36, 498
- mongolian 36, 499
- naustrian 36, 499, 569
- newzealand 36, 500
- ngerman 36, 500, 569
- ngermanb 36, 499, 500, 569
- ngermanb2 36, 501
- norsk 36, 501
- norsk2 36, 502
- nynorsk 36, 502, 503
- nynorsk2 36, 503
- polish 36, 503, 504
- polish2 36, 41, 504
- polski 36, 220, 504
- portuges 36, 505
- portuguese 36, 505
- romanian 36, 506
- romanian2 36, 506
- romanian3 36, 507
- russian 36, 507–511
- russian-cca 36, 511
- russian-ccal 36, 512
- russian-lh 36, 512
- russian-lhcyralt 36, 512, 513
- russian-lhcyrkoi 36, 513
- russian-lhcyrwin 36, 513
- russian2m 36, 41, 508
- russian2o 36, 41, 509
- russianb 36, 510
- russianc 36, 511
- samin 36, 514
- scottish 36, 514
- serbian 36, 515
- serbianc 36, 515
- slovak 36, 516
- slovene 36, 517
- spanish 36, 455, 517
- spanish2 36, 517, 518
- spanish3 36, 41, 517, 518

- spanish4 36, 517, 519
- swedish 36, 519
- swedish2 36, 520
- thai 36, 520
- turkish 36, 521
- uighur 36, 521
- uighur2 36, 522
- uighur3 36, 522
- UKenglish 36, 522
- ukraineb 36, 522, 523
- ukrainian 36, 522, 523
- uppersorbian 36, 523, 524
- USenglish 36, 524
- usorbian 36, 523, 524
- vietnam 36, 525
- vietnamese 36, 525
- welsh 36, 525
- xalx 36, 489, 526, 527
- xalx2 36, 526
- xalx3 36, 527
- LAPKO, Olga G. 241, 452, 498, 510, 523,
↔[29–31, 73, 206–208]
- \LARGE (command) 218
- \LARGE 3928
- \Large (command) 218
- \Large 2026, 2223, 3914
- \large (command) 218
- \large . . . 1492, 1517, 1522, 1526, 1529, 1743,
3238, 4570
- LARSEN, Henning 241, 458, ↔[74]
- LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 241
- latex.fmt (file) 57
- latex.tex (file) 57, 563
- L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM,
↔[180, 203, 209–214, 315]
- latin (language option) 36, 489
- latin.dtx (file) 489, 490
- latin.mld (file) 227, 228, 489, 567
- latin2 (language option) 36, 490
- latin2.mld (file) 227, 228, 490, 572
- latvian (language option) 36, 491
- latvian.ldf (file) 491
- latvian.mld (file) . . . 198, 227, 228, 491, 570
- LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 241
- LAUNAY, Arnaud 241
- LAUVERNET, Claire 241
- LAVVA, Boris 241, 481, ↔[75]
- \ldots 1700, 1704, 1708, 2541, 2550
- LEBACQ, André 241
- \leftmargin . . 3259, 3305, 3373, 3439, 3997,
4048, 4120, 4193, 4590, 4637, 4702,
4767
- LEGRAND, Jeanne 241, ↔[259]
- LEHMAN, Philipp 241, ↔[215]
- LEMBERG, Werner 201, 241, 452, 456,
476–479, 486–488, 498, 510, 520, 525,
↔[73, 216–218, 240, 315]
- LEONHARDT, Thomas 241, 568
- LE PENNEC, Erwan 241, ↔[23]
- LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 241
- \let (command) 70, 566
- LE THUAUT, Julien 241
- letter (class) 24, 56, 191, 202, 209, 222, ↔[205]
- letton (language option) 36, 491
- letton.mld (file) 227, 228, 491, 570
- LEWENBERG, Adam 241
- LH (package) 512, ↔[251]
- lhcy (package) 512, 513, ↔[338]
- lhcyalt.sty (file) 512
- lhcyrkoi.sty (file) 513
- lhcyrwin.sty (file) 513
- LICKERT, Knut 212, 241, 379, ↔[219]
- LINDGREN, Ulf A. 50, 72, 85, 241, ↔[220]
- \linebreak (command) 55
- \linewidth (command) 42
- \linewidth . . . 1490, 1499, 1507, 2252, 2253
- LINGNAU, Anselm 241, ↔[221]
- lipsum (package) 90, 210, 585, ↔[157]
- \lipsum 17, 19, 24, 26, 39, 41, 46,
48, 244, 246, 251, 253, 255, 261, 263,
265, 271, 273, 275, 346–369, 372–407,
892, 894, 899, 902, 907, 954, 956, 958,
960, 963, 965, 967, 969, 971, 973, 975,
977, 979, 981, 983, 985, 987, 989, 991,
993, 995, 997, 999, 1001, 1003, 1005,
1007, 1009, 1011, 1013, 1015, 1021,
1023, 1032, 1034, 1036, 1045, 1050,
1052, 1054, 1056, 1058, 1060, 1070,
1072, 1074, 1076, 1078, 1086, 1088,
1098, 1100, 1102, 1104, 1114, 1116,
1127, 1131, 1133, 1135, 1144, 1150,
1152, 1154, 1156, 1158, 1216, 1218,
1220, 1222, 1225, 1227, 1229, 1231,
1233, 1235, 1237, 1239, 1241, 1243,
1245, 1247, 1249, 1251, 1253, 1255,
1257, 1259, 1261, 1263, 1265, 1267,
1269, 1271, 1273, 1275, 1277, 1279,
1281, 1289, 1291, 1306, 1308, 1310,
1318, 1321, 1324, 1327, 1330, 1333,
1336, 1343, 1345, 1347, 1349, 1351,
1358, 1360, 1369, 1371, 1373, 1375,
1382, 1384, 1386, 1388, 1396, 1398,
1400, 1413, 1415, 1417, 1423, 1781,
1783, 1785, 1787, 1789, 1791, 1793,
1829, 1831, 1833, 1835, 1837, 1839,
1841, 1858, 1862, 1866, 1871, 1875,
1878, 1883, 1887, 1891, 1906, 1910,

- 1914, 1919, 1923, 1926, 1931, 1935,
1939, 1959, 1967, 1978, 1986, 2186,
2188, 2190, 2192, 2196, 2198, 2200,
2202, 2233, 2235, 2237
- `\list` (command) 278
- `\list` **3251, 3989**, 4583
- `\list{}` (command) 307
- listfiles** (default option) 49, 57, 77, 148, 196,
210, 219, 236, 238, 382, 414, 575, 588
- `\listoffigures` (command) 20, 27, 28, 31, 47,
63, 78–81, 173, 174, 267
- `\listoffigures` **1**, 61,
124, 436, 647, 1206, 2343, 2507, 2590,
2949, 6694, 6923, 6958, 6993
- `\listoftables` (command) . 20, 27, 28, 31, 47,
50, 63, 78–81, 138, 173, 174, 267
- `\listoftables` **1**, 62,
125, 438, 649, 1207, 1855, 1903, 2389,
2949, 6694, 6934, 6969, 7004
- `\listparindent` (command) 278, 307
- `\listparindent` **3251**, 3307, 3375, 3441, **3989**,
4050, 4122, 4195, 4585, 4639, 4704,
4769
- liststotoc (option of KOMA-Script) . 47, 138
- liststotocnumbered (option of KOMA-Script)
47
- lithuanian (language option) 36, 491
- lithuanian.ldf (file) 491
- lithuanian.mld (file) 227, 228, 491, 579
- livre.tex (old example document) . . 586, 588
- LOBEL, Pierre 241
- `\localgreek` . . 8783, 8786, 8790, 8794, 8797,
8801, 8805, 8808, 8812, 8822, 8825,
8829, 8833, 8836, 8840, 8844, 8847,
8851, 8861, 8864, 8868, 8872, 8875,
8879, 8883, 8886, 8890
- `\locallatvian` 9299–9301, 9303–9305,
9307–9309
- `\localpolish` 9673–9675, 9677–9679,
9681–9683
- `\localrussian` . 9797, 9800, 9804, 9808, 9811,
9815, 9819, 9822, 9826, 9836, 9839,
9843, 9847, 9850, 9854, 9858, 9861,
9865
- `\localspanish` . . 10115–10117, 10119–10121,
10123–10125
- lotdepth (depth counter) 31, 210, 274, 303, 328
- LOVE, Tim 241, ⇨[223, 224]
- lowersorbian (language option) . 36, 492, 493
- lowersorbian.mld (file) 227, 228, 492, 493, 580
- LOZANO, Vincent 241, ⇨[225]
- lsorbian (language option) 36, 492, 493
- lsorbian.dtx (file) 492
- lsorbian.mld (file) 227, 228, 493, 581
- ltnews (class) 24, 202, 210, ⇨[180]
- ltxdoc (class) 24, 202, 210, ⇨[99]
- LuA_{TEX} (package) 219, ⇨[172]
- LUECKING, Daniel H. 241
- LUNDE, Ken 202, 241, ⇨[226–228]
- LYHNE, Anders 241
- ## M
- `\M@gettitle` 7825
- MACKAY, Pierre A. 241, 521, ⇨[57]
- MADSEN, Lars 241
- magyar (language option) 36, 482, 493
- magyar.dtx (file) 493, 494
- magyar.mld (file) 227, 228, 482, 493, 582
- magyar2 (language option) 36, 493
- magyar2.mld (file) 227, 228, 493, 572, 582
- magyar3 (language option) 36, 494
- magyar3.mld (file) 227, 228, 494, 579, 582
- MAHONEY, Richard 241, 458, 482
- `\mainmatter` (command) 75
- `\mainmatter` 217
- `\makeatletter` (command) 68, 210
- `\makeatother` (command) 68, 210
- `\maketitle` 2031
- `\MakeUpperCase` (command) 584
- `\MakeUppercase` 3277, 3345, 3411, **4015, 4087**,
4160, 4609, 4673, 4738
- MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 241, 452, 510, ⇨[208]
- malay (language option) 36, 494
- malay.mld (file) 227, 228, 494
- malayalam (package) . . 41, 440, 495, 496, ⇨[3]
- malayalam-keli (language option) . . . 36, 495
- malayalam-keli.mld (file) . 227, 228, 495, 573
- malayalam-omega (language option) 36, 41, 440,
495
- malayalam-omega.mld (file) 227, 228, 495, 581
- malayalam-omega.mlo (file) 227, 228, 495, 581
- malayalam-rachana (language option) 36, 496
- malayalam-rachana.mld (file) . 227, 228, 496,
573
- malayalam-rachana2 (language option) 36, 496
- malayalam-rachana2.mld (file) 227, 228, 496,
573

- manju (language option) 36, 450, 497
manju.mld (file) 227, 228, 497, 576
margincap (environment) 210
MARGOLIS, Bob 241, 446, \hookrightarrow [72]
\markboth (command) 68, 308, 572, 584
MARKEY, Nicolas 241, \hookrightarrow [23, 229, 230]
\markright (command) 68
MARR, Marcus 241
MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
MART, Terry 241, 446, \hookrightarrow [71, 72]
marvosym (package) 212, \hookrightarrow [170]
MASLOV, Vadim 241, 511, 512, \hookrightarrow [42, 165]
MASSIAS, Henri 63, 241
MATTHIAS, Andreas 241
MATTISSON, Sven 241, 520, \hookrightarrow [231]
mcaption (package) . . . 51, 69, 85, 166, 210, 236,
259, 409, 575, \hookrightarrow [171]
McDONNELL, Rowland . . 50, 67, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [232]
McKAY, Ben 241
\mdseries (command) 218
\mdseries . 925, 1777, 1825, 3228, 3239, 3904,
3917, 3919, 4561
\meem 7920, 7921, 7924, 7925, 7928, 7929, 8547,
8551, 8555
MEKNAVIN, Surapant 241, 520, \hookrightarrow [233]
\mem 8997, 8999, 9004, 9006, 9011, 9013
mem.tex (old example document) . . . 585, 588
mem1.tex (old example document) . . . 585, 588
memoir (class) . . . 49, 62, 69, 85, 102, 132, 133,
151–153, 156, 188, 194, 211, 214, 215,
226, 234, 236, 251, 259, 269, 392, 434,
568, 574–576, \hookrightarrow [331, 332, 334]
memoir.cls (file) 211, 259
MENGIN, Sébastien 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
\MessageBreak (command) 578
\MessageBreak . 2834, 2845, 2847, 2849, 2945,
3005, 3010, 3012, 3022, 3027, 3209,
3559, 3561, 3578, 3580, 3597, 3599,
3691, 3757, 3818, 3887, 4255, 4257,
4274, 4276, 4293, 4295, 4393, 4453,
4513, 4551, 4869, 4871, 4888, 4890,
4907, 4909, 4994, 5054, 5114, 5165,
5167, 5169, 5171, 5286, 5288, 5290,
5293, 5304, 5306, 5308, 5311, 5400,
5406, 5409, 5421, 5423, 5425, 5428,
5438, 5440, 5446, 5449, 5462, 5464,
5466, 5469, 5479, 5481, 5487, 5490,
5586, 5588, 5590, 5593, 5603, 5605,
5607, 5610, 5619, 5625, 5628, 5662,
5665, 5667, 5669, 5683, 5686, 5688,
5698, 5703, 5738, 5741, 5743, 5745,
5758, 5761, 5763, 5773, 5778, 5813,
5815, 5817, 5820, 5831, 5833, 5835,
5838, 5849, 5851, 5857, 5860, 5872,
5874, 5876, 5879, 5889, 5892, 5897,
5904, 5992, 5994, 6002, 6004, 6026,
6035, 6037, 6045, 6047, 6069, 6079,
6083, 6085, 6088, 6090, 6099, 6102,
6104, 6106, 6109, 6111, 6116, 6147,
6149, 6152, **6163**, 6176, 6178, 6180,
6182, 6192, 6194, 6196, 6198, 6205,
6207, 6209, 6221, 6223, 6225, 6227,
6230, 6232, **6244**, 6452, 6458, 6460,
6466, 6468, 6474, 6476, 6482, 6484,
6490, 6492, 6498, 6500, 6506, 6508,
6514, 6516, 6524, 6526, 6528, 6530,
6532, 6534, 6541, 6543, 6545, 6547,
6549, 6556, 6558, 6560, 6562, 6564,
6572, 6574, 6582, 6584, 6591, 6593,
6599, 6601, 6606, 6608, 6617, 6619,
6621, 6623, 6629, 6631, 6642, 6647,
6661, 6666, 6681, 6686, 6724, 6726,
6728, 6738, 6747, 6756, 6767, 6776,
6785, 6796, 6805, 6814, 6824, 6833,
6842, 6853, 6862, 6871, 6882, 6891,
6900, 6911, 6913, 6922, 6924, 6933,
6935, 6946, 6948, 6957, 6959, 6968,
6970, 6981, 6983, 6992, 6994, 7003,
7005, 7019, 7028, 7037, 7048, 7057,
7066, 7075, 7084, 7093, 7102, 7111,
7120, 7129, 7138, 7147, 7156, 7164,
7171, 7178, 7185, 7192, 7199, 7206,
7213, 7220, 7227, 7234, 7241, 7248,
7253, 7261, 7263, 7265, 7268, 7270,
7295, 7355, 7358, 7413, 7415, 7421,
7423, 7429, 7431, 7441, 7443, 7449,
7451, 7457, 7459, 7468, 7470, 7476,
7478, 7484, 7486, 7666, 7668, 7670,
7672, 7674, 7676, 7682, 7684, 7693,
7695, 7704, 7706, 7734, 7736, 7741,
7743, 7748, 7750, **7753**
METZINGER, Jochen 241, 462, 463, \hookrightarrow [35]
meyalu (language option) 36, 497
meyalu.mld (file) 227, 228, 497
MICHOU, Yanick 241
mini-art.tex (old example document) . . . 588
\minilof (command) 20, 27, 31, 34,
38, 39, 80, 83, 171, 173, 208, 278, 282,
285, 333, 563
\minilof **1**, 64, 79, 100, 127, 141, 160,
443, 508, 545, 570, 1286, 1410, 1957,
1975, 2345, 2348, 2593, 2596, **3330**,
6775, 6863, 6956, **7379**, **7515**
\minilof@ (command) 282, 289
\minilof@ **3330**, 3331, **3508**
\minilof@mtcck 5321, 5360

- minilofdepth (depth counter) 31, 203, 211, 274, 284
- \minilot (command) 20, 27, 31, 34, 38, 39, 80, 83, 171, 173, 208, 278, 285, 336, 563
- \minilot .. 1, 65, 80, 100, 127, 142, 161, 445, 510, 547, 572, 1288, 1411, 1905, 1925, **3396**, 6784, 6872, 6967, **7379**, **7515**
- \minilot@ (command) 285
- \minilot@ **3396**, 3397, **3508**
- \minilot@mtcck 5324, 5366
- minilotdepth (depth counter) 31, 203, 211, 287
- minipage (environment) 134, 561
- minitoc (package) 23, 245, ↪[124, 125]
- \minitoc (command) 20, 26, 27, 29, 32, 34, 35, 38, 39, 52, 55, 63, 75, 80, 83, 112, 171, 173, 208, 232, 235, 278, 279, 282, 291, 308, 331, 562–564, 570, 571
- \minitoc 1, 14, 21, 36, 43, 222, 242, 249, 259, 269, 344, 441, 506, 543, 568, 891, 898, 905, 1215, 1284, 1341, 1342, 1365, 1394, 1409, 1509, 1556, 1634, 1661, 1715, 1719, 1726, 1730, 1750, 1780, 1828, 1956, 1975, 2038, 2114, 2185, 2195, 2231, 2255, 2416, 2447, 2456, 2481, 2485, 2489, 2493, 2500, **3262**, 6766, 6854, 6945, **7379**, **7515**
- minitoc-ex.tex (old example document) . 588
- minitoc-hyper (package) 59, 211, ↪[311]
- minitoc-hyper.sty (file) 211
- minitoc-tds.zip (file) 212, 227, 229, 230, 238, 590, 592
- minitoc.bib (file) 211, 227–229, 569
- minitoc.bug (file) . 49, 54, 211, 227, 228, 236, 237, 569, 574, 575, 579, 580, 583
- minitoc.dtx (file) . 59, 206, 208, 211, 226–230, 236, 378, 418, 585
- minitoc.ins (file) 41, 206–208, 212, 215, 226–229, 378, 418, 440, 573, 585
- minitoc.ist (file) 212, 227–229, 572
- minitoc.l (file) 212, 226–228, 576
- minitoc.lan (file) ... 206, 212, 227–229, 418
- minitoc.pdf (file) 212, 227–229
- minitoc.pre (file) ... 212, 227–229, 576, 581
- minitoc.ps (file) 212
- minitoc.sty (file) 212, 226–228, 249
- minitoc.sum (file) 212, 227, 228
- minitoc.tex (file) 565, 569
- \minitoc@ (command) 277, 279, 289
- \minitoc@ **3262**, 3263, **3508**
- \minitoc@mtcck 5318, 5352
- minitocdepth (depth counter) 20, 26, 27, 31, 41, 63, 68, 80, 203, 211, 276, 281, 561
- \minitocno (command) 561, 562
- minitocoff (package) 232, 233, 565
- \minitocyes (command) 561
- minutes (package) 212, 277, 379, ↪[219]
- MITTELBACH, Frank 209, 232, 241, 277, 306, 330, 564, 567, 568, ↪[58, 204, 205, 234–246]
- \MLF@ **3766**, 3768
- \MLF@contentsline (command) 298
- \MLF@contentsline **3727**, **3768**
- \MLF@explist **3725**, **3752**
- \MLF@line 3765, **3766**
- \MLF@list **3722**, **3725**, **3752**, **3768**
- \MLF@lof **3725**, **3753**, **3768**
- \MLF@loop **3722**, **3753**
- \MLF@next (command) 298
- \MLF@next **3544**, **3722**, **3752**
- \mlf@pgno 3099, 3100
- \MLF@read **3753**, **3764**, **3768**
- \mlf@rule **3205**, **3346**, 3393, 5194, 5197, 5200
- \mlf@setform (command) 284, 363
- \mlf@setform **3381**, **5551**
- \MLF@test (command) 299
- \MLF@test **3766**, **3768**
- \mlf@dotsep **5521**, 5554
- \mlffont (command) 33, 34, 80, 283
- \mlffont 1, **3228**, **3346**, **7551**
- \mlflofrmargin **5512**
- \mlfname **3731**
- \mlfpagenumbers (command) 43, 82
- \mlfpagenumbers **3080**, **3093**, **3099**, **3112**, **7611**
- \mlfpnumwidth **5503**, 5552
- \mlfrule (command) 43, 82, 570
- \mlfrule **5184**, **7593**
- \mlfSfont (command) 33, 34, 40, 80, 576
- \mlfSfont 1, **3228**, **7551**
- \mlftitle (command) 34, 35, 80, 440
- \mlftitle 1, 3345, 3355, 3365, 3369, **6234**, **7259**, **7828**, 7846, 7867, 7888, 7906, 7924, 7946, 7975, 7992, 8009, 8027, 8043, 8058, 8073, 8088, 8104, 8125, 8152, 8182, 8203, 8219, 8252, 8291, 8310, 8327, 8344, 8360, 8376, 8399, 8425, 8442, 8463, 8483, 8514, 8552, 8569, 8586, 8607, 8630, 8663, 8701, 8720, 8737, 8752, 8770, 8797, 8801, 8836, 8875, 8904, 9004, 9034, 9067, 9089, 9113, 9129, 9146, 9163, 9248, 9249, 9269, 9286, 9304, 9326, 9343, 9367, 9384, 9401, 9422, 9445, 9462, 9486, 9516, 9562, 9577, 9595, 9611, 9625, 9640, 9660, 9678, 9696, 9717, 9734, 9751, 9784, 9811, 9850, 9890, 9915, 9979, 9995, 10011, 10033, 10053, 10069, 10089, 10104,

- 10120, 10140, 10156, 10172, 10196,
10232, 10260, 10287, 10308, 10323,
10338, 10353
- \mlftocrmarg 5516, 5553
- \MLT@ **3827**, 3829
- \MLT@contentsline (command) 300
- \MLT@contentsline **3788**, **3829**
- \MLT@explist **3786**, **3813**
- \MLT@line 3826, **3827**
- \MLT@list **3783**, **3786**, **3813**, **3829**
- \MLT@loop **3783**, **3814**
- \MLT@lot **3786**, **3814**, **3829**
- \MLT@next (command) 301
- \MLT@next **3549**, **3783**, **3813**
- \mlt@pgno 3105, 3106
- \MLT@read **3814**, **3825**, **3829**
- \mlt@rule **3205**, **3412**, 3459, 5203, 5206, 5209
- \mlt@setform (command) 287, 363
- \mlt@setform **3447**, **5566**
- \MLT@test (command) 301, 302
- \MLT@test **3827**, **3829**
- \mltdotsep **5521**
- \mltfont (command) 33, 34, 80, 286
- \mltfont **1**, **3228**, **3412**, **7551**
- \mlttitle 7868
- \mltlofrmarg **5512**
- \mltname **3792**
- \mltpagenumbers (command) 43, 82
- \mltpagenumbers ... **3086**, **3093**, **3099**, **3105**,
3112, **7611**
- \mltpnumwidth **5503**
- \mltrule (command) 43, 82, 570
- \mltrule **5184**, **7593**
- \mltSfont (command) 33, 34, 80, 576
- \mltSfont **1**, **3228**, **7551**
- \mlttitle .. **1**, 3411, 3421, 3431, 3435, **6234**,
7259, **7828**, 7847, 7889, 7907, 7925,
7947, 7976, 7993, 8010, 8028, 8044,
8059, 8074, 8089, 8105, 8126, 8155,
8184, 8204, 8220, 8253, 8292, 8311,
8328, 8345, 8361, 8377, 8400, 8426,
8443, 8464, 8486, 8516, 8553, 8570,
8587, 8608, 8631, 8664, 8702, 8721,
8738, 8753, 8771, 8840, 8879, 8905,
9006, 9037, 9068, 9090, 9114, 9130,
9147, 9164, 9270, 9287, 9305, 9327,
9344, 9368, 9385, 9402, 9423, 9446,
9463, 9487, 9518, 9563, 9578, 9596,
9612, 9626, 9641, 9661, 9679, 9697,
9718, 9735, 9752, 9769, 9770, 9785,
9815, 9854, 9893, 9916, 9980, 9996,
10012, 10035, 10054, 10070, 10090,
10105, 10121, 10141, 10157, 10173,
10197, 10234, 10261, 10288, 10309,
10324, 10339, 10354
- \mlttocrmarg 5519
- \mmm 9417–9419, 9421–9423, 9425–9427,
9440–9442, 9444–9446, 9448–9450,
9457–9459, 9461–9463, 9465–9467
- \mnr 8198–8200, 8202–8204, 8206–8208,
8214–8216, 8218–8220, 8222–8224,
9481–9483, 9485–9487, 9489–9491,
10318–10320, 10322–10324, 10326–
10328, 10333–10335, 10337–10339,
10341–10343
- mongol (language option) 36, 497
- mongol.mld (file) 227, 228, 497
- mongolb (language option) 36, 498
- mongolb.mld (file) 227, 228, 238, 239, 498, 499,
591
- mongolb.mlo (file) 238, 591
- mongolian (language option) 36, 499
- mongolian.dtx (file) 498
- mongolian.mld (file) . 227, 228, 239, 499, 591
- MonTeX (package) 41, 212, 440,
448–450, 453, 454, 497, 511, 526, 527,
584, ⇔[[110](#), [113](#)]
- MOON, Young Joon 241, ⇔[[247](#)]
- MOORE, ROSS 241, ⇔[[147](#)]
- MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 85, 241, ⇔[[191](#), [252](#)]
- morefloats (package) 572, ⇔[[175](#)]
- MORI, Lapo Filippo 241, ⇔[[149](#), [248](#), [249](#)]
- MORRISON, Michael A. 241, ⇔[[250](#)]
- mtc (counter) . 84, 262, 265, 274, 276, 294, 295,
298, 300, 354, 567
- mtc-2c.pdf (example document) 228
- mtc-2c.tex (example document) . 87, 213, 227,
228, 588
- mtc-2nd.pdf (example document) 228
- mtc-2nd.tex (example document) 88, 214, 227,
228, 255, 468, 588
- mtc-3co.pdf (example document) 228
- mtc-3co.tex (example document) 89, 214, 227,
228, 238, 591
- mtc-add.bib (example document) 214, 227, 588
- mtc-add.pdf (example document) 228
- mtc-add.tex (example document) . 48, 92, 93,
214, 227, 228, 588
- mtc-adds.tex (old example document) ... 590
- mtc-ads.pdf (example document) 228
- mtc-ads.tex (example document) 48, 97, 214,
227, 228, 588
- mtc-amem.tex (old example document) ... 590
- mtc-amm.pdf (example document) 228
- mtc-amm.tex (example document) 102, 214, 227,
228, 588

- mtc-apx.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-apx.tex (example document) 64, 87, 103,
 214, 227, 228, 584, 588
 mtc-apx.tex (file) 592
 mtc-art.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-art.tex (example document) 103, 214, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-bk.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-bk.tex (example document) 108, 214, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-bo.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-bo.tex (example document) 114, 214, 227,
 228, 585, 588
 mtc-book.tex (old example document) . . . 590
 mtc-ch0.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-ch0.tex (example document) 118, 214, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-cri.fko (example document) 214
 mtc-cri.log (file) 120
 mtc-cri.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-cri.tex (example document) 120, 214, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-fko.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-fko.tex (example document) 120, 227, 228,
 239, 591
 mtc-fo1.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-fo1.tex (example document) 121, 123, 214,
 227, 228, 588
 mtc-fo2.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-fo2.tex (example document) 123, 214, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-gap.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-gap.tex (example document) 73, 87, 124,
 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-gaps.tex (old example document) . . . 590
 mtc-hi1.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-hi1.tex (example document) 65, 87, 124,
 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-hi2.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-hi2.tex (example document) 66, 87, 124,
 214, 227, 228, 588
 mtc-hia.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-hia.tex (example document) 125, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-hir.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-hir.tex (example document) 125, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-hop.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-hop.tex (example document) 126, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-liv.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-liv.tex (example document) 128, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-mem.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-mem.tex (example document) 132, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-mem1.tex (old example document) . . . 590
 mtc-mm1.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-mm1.tex (example document) 132, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-mu.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-mu.tex (example document) 133, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-sbf.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-sbf.tex (example document) 135, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-scr.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-scr.tex (example document) 137, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-subf.tex (old example document) . . . 590
 mtc-syn.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-syn.tex (example document) 138, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-tbi.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-tbi.tex (example document) 140, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-tlc.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-tlc.tex (example document) 141, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-tlo.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-tlo.tex (example document) 75, 87, 142,
 215, 227, 228, 589
 mtc-tsf.pdf (example document) 228
 mtc-tsf.tex (example document) 142, 215, 227,
 228, 588
 mtc-tsfc.tex (old example document) . . . 590
 \MTC@ 3701, 3703
 \mtc@While 2871, 2873, 2878
 \mtc@admisslanguage (command) . . . 382
 \mtc@admisslanguage . . . 6163, 6168, 6214
 \mtc@addtomaf 7292
 \mtc@arg@dotinterval 5495
 \mtc@arg@numwidth 5501
 \mtc@arg@pagenumwidth 5499
 \mtc@arg@tocrightmargin 5497
 \mtc@BBR (command) 266
 \mtc@BBR . 2976, 3304, 3309, 3372, 3377, 3438,
 3443, 4047, 4051, 4119, 4123, 4192,
 4196, 4636, 4640, 4701, 4705, 4766,
 4770
 \mtc@Body 2885
 \mtc@bottom@rule . . 3321, 3326, 3391, 3457
 \mtc@ck 7679
 \mtc@CkFile (command) . . 261, 279, 283, 286
 \mtc@CkFile . . 2885, 3270, 3338, 3404, 4008,
 4080, 4153, 4601, 4666, 4731

- \mtc@CkStr **2885, 3278, 3346, 3412, 4021, 4093, 4166, 4609, 4675, 4740**
- \mtc@classck **7352**
- \MTC@contentsline (command) 294, 297, 302, 303
- \MTC@contentsline **3621, 3703**
- \mtc@dot **3845**
- \mtc@EndWhile **2860, 2885**
- \MTC@explist **3618, 3686**
- \mtc@featparam@ (command) 371
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev (command) 371
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev ... **5805, 5825, 5844**
- \mtc@featparam@third (command) 371
- \mtc@featparam@third **5825, 5844**
- \mtc@featureparam@after 5796
- \mtc@featureparam@before 5794
- \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle 5798
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev (command) 364
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev **5578, 5598, 5615**
- \mtc@glofix@level (command) 376
- \mtc@glofix@level . **5988, 6011, 6020–6022, 6028**
- \mtc@hints@@chapter **6651, 7346**
- \mtc@hints@@part **6632, 7343**
- \mtc@hints@@schapter **6651, 7346**
- \mtc@hints@@sect **6670, 7349**
- \mtc@hints@@spart **6632, 7343**
- \mtc@hints@@ssect **6670, 7349**
- \mtc@hints@begindoc (command) . 388, 396
- \mtc@hints@begindoc **6445, 6713, 7339**
- \mtc@hints@chapter (command) 394
- \mtc@hints@chapter **6632, 6651, 7346**
- \mtc@hints@checklongext **7011**
- \mtc@hints@enddoc (command) 388, 397, 412
- \mtc@hints@enddoc . **6445, 6714, 7245, 7339**
- \mtc@hints@part (command) 394
- \mtc@hints@part **6632, 7343**
- \mtc@hints@section (command) 394
- \mtc@hints@section **6632, 6670, 7349**
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile (command) 255, 281, 284, 287, 569
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile .. **2782, 3311, 3381, 3447, 4053, 4128, 4201, 4642, 4710, 4775**
- \mtc@hstrut .. **2976, 4116, 4189, 4697, 4762**
- \mtc@hstrutbox **2976**
- \mtc@ifmtarg (command) 260, 263–265
- \mtc@ifmtarg .. **2860, 2895, 2932, 2958, 2969**
- \mtc@ixfix@level (command) 377
- \mtc@ixfix@level .. **6031, 6054, 6063–6065, 6071**
- \mtc@level@abbrev (command) 355
- \mtc@level@abbrev **5298, 5316, 5395**
- \MTC@line **3699, 3701**
- \MTC@list **3614, 3618, 3686, 3703**
- \mtc@listmisslanguages (command) ... 382
- \mtc@listmisslanguages **6163, 6244**
- \mtc@LML **6163**
- \MTC@loop **3614, 3687**
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof 5788
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot 5789
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc 5787
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof 5785
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot 5786
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc 5784
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof 5791
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot 5792
- \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc 5790
- \mtc@maf (command) 414, 415
- \mtc@maf **7292, 7338**
- \mtc@maf@long (command) 414
- \mtc@maf@long **7292**
- \mtc@maf@short (command) 414
- \mtc@maf@short **7292**
- \mtc@markboth . **3180, 3277, 3345, 3411, 4015, 4087, 4160, 4609, 4673, 4738**
- \mtc@mta@abbrev (command) 354
- \mtc@mta@abbrev **5279, 5316, 5395**
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev (command) 372
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev **5865, 5884**
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev (command) 358
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev **5414, 5433**
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev (command) 359
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev **5455, 5474**
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev (command) 364
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev **5578, 5615**
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev (command) .. 370, 371
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev **5805, 5844**
- \mtc@mttprn@abbrev (command) 366
- \mtc@mttprn@abbrev **5653, 5674**
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev (command) 368
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev **5729, 5750**
- \MTC@next (command) 296
- \MTC@next **3539, 3614, 3686**
- \mtc@noX 5693, 5695, **5750**
- \mtc@onebackchap 2920
- \mtc@onebackchapter **2919**
- \mtc@onebackpart **2919**
- \mtc@onebacksect (command) 264
- \mtc@onebacksect 2921, **2949**
- \mtc@onebacksection **2919**
- \mtc@param **3845**
- \mtc@pgno 3093, 3094, **3311, 3381, 3447**
- \mtc@pns@abbrev (command) 366
- \mtc@pns@abbrev **5653, 5674**
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX 5692
- \MTC@read **3687, 3699, 3703**

- \mtc@restorelofdepth 5942, **7723**
- \mtc@restorelotdepth 5975, 5987, **7723**
- \mtc@restoretocdepth **5908**, 5938, 5954, 5971, **7723**
- \mtc@Rline **2885**
- \mtc@rule (command) 276, 563
- \mtc@rule **3205, 3278, 3326**, 5185, 5188, 5191
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev (command) 369
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev **5729, 5750**
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX 5767
- \mtc@savelofdepth 5941, 5948, **7723**
- \mtc@savelotdepth 5974, 5981, **7723**
- \mtc@savetocdepth (command) 373
- \mtc@savetocdepth **5908**, 5932, 5965, **7723**
- \mtc@schapter **3469**
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter 5266
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure 5273
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph 5270
- \mtc@sectlevel@section 5267
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure 5275
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph 5271
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection 5268
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection 5269
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable 5276
- \mtc@sectlevel@table 5274
- \mtc@setform (command) 281, 362
- \mtc@setform **3311, 5536**
- \mtc@setlangopt (command) 384
- \mtc@setlangopt **6168, 6266**
- \mtc@setlangoptm (command) 384
- \mtc@setlangoptm **6214, 6266**
- \mtc@setlangopto (command) 384
- \mtc@setlangopto **6168, 6266**
- \mtc@string (command) 266
- \mtc@string **2976, 3703, 3768, 3829, 3845, 3865, 4404, 4464, 4524, 5005, 5065, 5125, 7528**
- \mtc@strut **2976, 3311, 3381, 3447, 4053, 4128, 4201, 4642, 4710, 4775**
- \mtc@strutbox (command) 568
- \mtc@strutbox **2976**
- \mtc@sv@fklistoffigures **6703**
- \mtc@sv@fklistoftables **6703**
- \mtc@sv@fktableofcontents **6703**
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures **6694**
- \mtc@sv@listoftables **6694**
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth **5922**
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth **5955**
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents **6694**
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth **5908, 5922, 5955**
- \mtc@svchapter **2967**
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth **5922**
- \mtc@svpart **2922, 4222**
- \mtc@svsection **2955**
- \mtc@svspart **2922**
- \mtc@svss **2955**
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth **5955**
- \MTC@test (command) 296, 297
- \MTC@test **3701, 3703**
- \mtc@tmp@name **5316, 5395**
- \mtc@tmpde@name **5884**
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name **5844**
- \mtc@tmpfm@name **5615**
- \mtc@tmppn@name **5674, 5750**
- \mtc@tmptf@name **5433**
- \mtc@tmpti@name **5474**
- \MTC@toc **3618, 3687, 3703**
- \mtc@toks (command) 266, 294, 321, 324, 326
- \mtc@toks **2976, 3637, 3743, 3804, 3845, 3865, 4344, 4439, 4499, 4945, 5041, 5101, 5395, 5433, 5474, 5884**
- \mtc@typetable@minilof 5215
- \mtc@typetable@minilot 5216
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc 5214
- \mtc@typetable@partlof 5212
- \mtc@typetable@partlot 5213
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc 5211
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof 5218
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot 5219
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc 5217
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof 5224
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot 5225
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc 5223
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof 5221
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot 5222
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc 5220
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof 5227
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot 5228
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc 5226
- \mtc@v **2976, 3297, 3301, 3365, 3369, 3431, 3435, 4038, 4105, 4182, 4624, 4689, 4754**
- \mtc@verse (command) 278
- mtc@verse (environment) 89, 90, 278, 280, 281, 284, 287, 362, 363
- \mtc@verse 332, 334, 3251
- \mtc@While (command) 267
- \mtc@While **2860, 2885**
- \mtc@WhileBody **2860**
- \mtc@WhileCondition **2860**
- \mtc@WhileNext **2860**
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition **2860**
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline (command) 303
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline **3653, 3865, 4355, 4945**
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine **4315, 4929, 5025, 5085**

- \MTC@WriteContentsline (command) . . 302, 321, 324, 326
- \MTC@WriteContentsline . 3638, 3670, 3743, 3804, 3845, 4345, 4369, 4439, 4499, 4945, 4976, 5041, 5101
- \mtc@xifmtarg 2860
- \mtc@YN@F 5240
- \mtc@YN@f 5239
- \mtc@YN@FALSE 5236
- \mtc@YN@false 5235
- \mtc@YN@FAUX 5238
- \mtc@YN@faux 5237
- \mtc@YN@N 5234
- \mtc@YN@n 5233
- \mtc@YN@NO 5232
- \mtc@YN@no 5231
- \mtc@YN@NON 5241
- \mtc@YN@non 5242
- \mtc@YN@O 5262
- \mtc@YN@o 5263
- \mtc@YN@OFF 5230
- \mtc@YN@off 5229
- \mtc@YN@ON 5247
- \mtc@YN@on 5246
- \mtc@YN@OUI 5260
- \mtc@YN@oui 5261
- \mtc@YN@T 5255
- \mtc@YN@t 5254
- \mtc@YN@TRUE 5253
- \mtc@YN@true 5252
- \mtc@YN@V 5259
- \mtc@YN@v 5258
- \mtc@YN@VRAI 5257
- \mtc@YN@vrai 5256
- \mtc@YN@Y 5251
- \mtc@YN@y 5250
- \mtc@YN@YES 5249
- \mtc@YN@yes 5248
- \mtc@zrule (command) 266, 568
- \mtc@zrule 2976, 3304, 3324, 3372, 3394, 3438, 3460, 4047, 4067, 4119, 4139, 4192, 4212, 4636, 4654, 4701, 4719, 4766, 4785
- \mtcaddchapter (command) 33, 47, 48, 50, 63, 67, 68, 84, 89, 93, 138, 139, 193, 197, 214, 234, 265, 567
- \mtcaddchapter 1, 12, 176, 435, 437, 439, 478, 479, 482, 483, 488, 489, 537, 1633, 1703, 1707, 1713, 2390, 2431, 2436, 2441, 2477, 2479, 2497, 2499, 2509, 2969, 7679
- \mtcaddpart (command) . 33, 69, 84, 89, 193, 197, 263, 567
- \mtcaddpart 1, 1695, 1954, 2932, 7679
- \mtcaddsection (command) 33, 50, 67, 68, 84, 97, 193, 197, 214, 237, 264, 567, 579
- \mtcaddsection 1, 176, 646, 648, 650, 688–691, 696, 697, 777–780, 785, 786, 831, 1048, 2958, 7679
- \mtcArabTok 7900–7903, 7905–7907, 7909–7911
- \mtcdotsep 5521, 5539
- \mtcEnglishIIpart 8411, 8420–8422
- \mtcfixglossary (command) 84, 158, 159, 179, 187, 197, 236, 237, 376, 432, 572, 579, 581
- \mtcfixglossary . 1, 5993, 5999, 6001, 6010, 7729
- \mtcfixindex (command) 48, 84, 95, 101, 158, 159, 179, 188, 197, 235–237, 377, 432, 570, 571, 579, 581
- \mtcfixindex . 1, 534, 828, 6036, 6042, 6044, 6053, 7730
- \mtcfont (command) 27, 33–35, 80, 280
- \mtcfont 1, 1180, 3228, 3278, 7551
- \mtcFrenchIIpart . . 8642, 8654, 8657, 8660
- \mtcgapafterheads (command) . 73, 79, 214, 237, 584
- \mtcgapafterheads . . 194, 199, 2665, 3940, 3954, 3968, 7406
- \mtcgapbeforeheads (command) 73, 79, 214, 237, 584
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . . 193, 198, 2665, 3940, 3954, 3968, 7406
- mtcglo.ist (file) 575
- \mtchideinmainlof (command) . . 65, 84, 214
- mtchideinmainlof (environment) . 63, 65, 84, 179, 188, 197, 214, 235, 374, 431, 570, 573, 574, 583, 584
- \mtchideinmainlof 144
- \mtchideinmainlot (command) . 65, 84, 125, 126, 214
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) . 63, 65, 84, 180, 189, 197, 214, 235, 374, 375, 431, 570, 573, 574, 583, 584
- \mtchideinmainlot 152, 1868, 1916
- mtchideinmaintoc (environment) 63, 84, 113, 114, 180, 189, 197, 214, 235, 373, 431, 570, 583
- \mtcindent (command) 27, 42, 80, 87, 249, 276, 278
- \mtcindent 237, 328, 1179, 1451, 1741, 2245, 2661, 3205, 3251, 3304, 3372, 3438, 7396
- \mtcloadmlo (command) 189, 236, 378, 427, 574
- \mtcloadmlo . . 6094, 7592, 8268, 8279, 8532, 8541, 8919, 8930, 8940, 8951, 8959,

- 8970, 8981, 8989, 9177, 9189, 9201,
9213, 9226, 9235, 9432, 9928, 9937,
9943, 9951, 9959, 9967, 10184
- `\mtclofrmarg` **5512**
- `mtcmess` (package) 146, 215, 237, 420, 433, 582
- `mtcmess.sty` (file) 226–228
- `\mtcname` **3625, 3656**
- `mtcnorsk.sty` (file) 565
- `mtcnynorsk.sty` (file) 565
- `mtcuff` (package) . . 32, 52, 55, 92, 145, 192–194,
215, 232, 233, 419, 420, 431–433, 562,
565, 573, 574
- `mtcuff.sty` (file) 226–228, 571
- `\mtcuffwarn@false` 7662
- `\mtcuffwarn@true` (command) 573
- `\mtcuffwarn@true` . . 7410, 7418, 7426, 7438,
7446, 7454, 7465, 7473, 7481, 7679,
7690, 7701, 7731, 7738, 7745
- `\mtcPackageError` . . 2856, 5284, 5302, 5404,
5419, 5444, 5460, 5485, 5584, 5601,
5623, 5660, 5681, 5736, 5756, 5811,
5829, 5855, 5870, 5887, 5901, 5911,
5917, 5926, 5934, 5944, 5950, 5959,
5967, 5977, 5983, 5997, 6024, 6040,
6067, 6081, 6100, 6114, 6145, **6214**,
7259, 7352, 7753
- `\mtcPackageInfo` **2654**, 2787, 2832, 2839, 2841,
2843, 2926, 2939, 2941, 2947, 2966,
2990, 3001, 3003, 3272, 3340, 3406,
3557, 3576, 3595, 3626, 3630, 3659,
3663, 3695, 3732, 3736, 3761, 3793,
3797, 3822, 4010, 4082, 4155, 4253,
4272, 4291, 4319, 4323, 4333, 4337,
4397, 4428, 4432, 4457, 4488, 4492,
4517, 4603, 4668, 4733, 4867, 4886,
4905, 4934, 4938, 4965, 4969, 4998,
5030, 5034, 5058, 5090, 5094, 5118,
5142, 5398, 5436, 5477, 5617, 5696,
5701, 5771, 5776, 5847, 5895, 6078,
6097, 6174, 6190, 6203, 6450, 6464,
6472, 6480, 6488, 6496, 6504, 6580,
6604, 6615, 7251, 7293, **7753**, 7770
- `\mtcPackageWarning` 3207, 3689, 3755, 3816,
3885, 4391, 4451, 4511, 4549, 4992,
5052, 5112, 7411, 7419, 7427, 7439,
7447, 7455, 7466, 7474, 7482, 7680,
7691, 7702, 7732, 7739, 7746, **7753**
- `\mtcPackageWarningNoLine` 2923, 2943, 3008,
3020, 3025, 5990, 6000, 6033, 6043,
6140, **6168, 6244**, 6456, 6512, 6522,
6539, 6554, 6570, 6589, 6597, 6627,
6640, 6645, 6659, 6664, 6679, 6684,
6722, 6736, 6745, 6754, 6765, 6774,
6783, 6794, 6803, 6812, 6822, 6831,
6840, 6851, 6860, 6869, 6880, 6889,
6898, 6909, 6920, 6931, 6944, 6955,
6966, 6979, 6990, 7001, 7017, 7026,
7035, 7046, 7055, 7064, 7073, 7082,
7091, 7100, 7109, 7118, 7127, 7136,
7145, 7154, 7162, 7169, 7176, 7183,
7190, 7197, 7204, 7211, 7218, 7225,
7232, 7239, 7246, 7664, **7753**
- `\mtcpagenumbers` (command) . . . 43, 82, 564
- `\mtcpagenumbers` 1193, **3044, 3093, 3112, 7611**
- `mtcpatchmem` (package) 145, 194, 215, 226, 434
- `mtcpatchmem.sty` (file) 226–228
- `\mtcPfont` (command) . . . 33, 35, 68, 80, 563
- `\mtcPfont` **1, 1183, 3228, 7551**
- `\mtcpnumwidth` **5503, 5537**
- `\mtcprepare` (command) . 27, 39, 83, 157, 208,
221, 237, 350, 424, 581
- `\mtcprepare` **1, 5142, 7527**
- `\mtcprepare@` **5142**
- `\mtcrule` (command) 43, 82, 564
- `\mtcrule` **5184, 7593**
- `\mtcsecondpartfalse` 2760, 2765, 2771, 2779,
7660
- `\mtcsecondparttrue` 2763, 2769, 2776
- `\mtcselectlanguage` (command) . . . 35, 37,
38, 67, 72, 78, 146, 149, 180, 181, 189,
234, 236, 378, 384, 427, 440, 567, 574
- `\mtcselectlanguage` **1, 176, 6074**, 6171, 6216,
7591, 7828, 7830, 7834, 7855, 7876,
7934, 7955, 7959, 7963, 8113, 8134,
8228, 8232, 8237, 8242, 8451, 8501,
8595, 8672, 8676, 8680, 9053, 9076,
9098, 9102, 9257, 9313, 9410, 9471,
9475, 9539, 9543, 9547, 9551, 9705,
10205, 10209, 10213, 10217, 10269,
10296
- `\mtcsetdepth` (command) . . 27, 28, 31, 41, 63,
78–81, 149, 182, 236, 372, 572
- `\mtcsetdepth` **1**, 1688, 2330, 2347, 2529, 2595,
5864, 5871, 5888, 5896, 5902, 5906,
7573
- `\mtcsetfeature` (command) 45, 46, 78, 83, 150,
182, 186, 197, 199, 206, 223, 235, 274,
369, 370, 571
- `\mtcsetfeature` . . **1, 3160, 5803**, 5812, 5830,
5848, 5856, **7573**
- `\mtcsetfont` (command) 27, 28, 31,
40, 61–63, 68, 70, 71, 75, 78, 146, 150,
183, 187, 235, 277, 354, 357, 358, 569,
576, 580
- `\mtcsetfont` **1**, 211,
1742, 1771, 1774, 1777, 1819, 1822,
1825, 2217, 2218, 2331–2335, 2337–

- 2340, 2527, **5277**, **5278**, 5285, 5303,
5399, 5405, **7573**
- `\mtcsetformat` (command) 42, 43, 78, 90, 150,
183, 184, 187, 235, 281, 284, 287, 310,
313, 316, 333, 335, 338, 360–363, 570,
571
- `\mtcsetformat` 1, 329, **3311**, **3381**, **3447**, **5531**,
5576, 5585, 5602, 5618, 5624, **7573**
- `\mtcsetpagenumber@` **5652**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` (command) 44, 75, 78, 82,
184, 185, 235, 237, 365, 367, 570, 578
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` 1, **5634**, 5661, 5682, **7573**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` (command) . 365, 366
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` **5634**, 5652
- `\mtcsetrules` (command) 44, 78, 82, 185, 235,
237, 367, 570, 578
- `\mtcsetrules` **1**, **5710**, 5737, 5757, **7573**
- `\mtcsetrules@` (command) 368
- `\mtcsetrules@` **5710**, **5728**
- `\mtcsettitle` (command) 35, 37, 38,
40, 63, 67, 78, 146, 150, 186, 235, 359,
372, 570, 571
- `\mtcsettitle` . . . **1**, 30, **176**, 1744, 2225, **5453**,
5454, 5461, 5478, 5486, **7573**
- `\mtcsettitlefont` (command) . 40, 62, 63, 78,
150, 186, 235, 277, 358, 359, 569
- `\mtcsettitlefont` 1, 1743, 2223, **5412**, **5413**,
5420, 5437, **7573**
- `\mtcSfont` (command) 27, 33, 35, 61, 68, 80, 563
- `\mtcSfont` **1**, 1181, **3228**, **7551**
- `\mtcskip` (command) 27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 568,
572
- `\mtcskip` **1**, 442, 444, 507, 509, 544,
546, 569, 571, 652, 656, 715, 738, 742,
804, 836, 858, 953, 1019, 1049, 1068,
1094, 1120, 1122, 1129, 1285, 1287,
1513, 2346, 2594, **2661**, **7489**
- `\mtcskipamount` (command) . . 27, 28, 78, 234,
249, 421, 568
- `\mtcskipamount` **1**, **2661**, **7396**
- `\mtcSPfont` (command) 33, 35, 68, 80, 81, 563
- `\mtcSPfont` **1**, 1183, **3228**, **7551**
- `\mtcSSfont` (command) 33, 35, 40, 68, 80, 425,
563
- `\mtcSSfont` **1**, 1182, **3228**, **7551**
- `\mtcSSSfont` (command) 33, 35, 63, 68, 80, 563
- `\mtcSSSfont` **1**, 1183, **3228**, **7551**
- `\mtcsv@listoffigures` **2949**
- `\mtcsv@listoftables` **2949**
- `\mtcsv@tableofcontents` **2949**
- `mtcswedish.sty` (file) 564
- `\mtctitle` (command) . 34, 35, 40, 63, 80, 440
- `\mtctitle` . . **1**, 1455, 3277, **3278**, **3346**, **3412**,
6234, **7259**, **7828**, 7845, 7866, 7887,
7905, 7923, 7945, 7974, 7991, 8008,
8026, 8042, 8057, 8072, 8087, 8103,
8124, 8150, 8180, 8202, 8218, 8251,
8290, 8309, 8326, 8343, 8359, 8375,
8398, 8424, 8441, 8462, 8482, 8513,
8551, 8568, 8585, 8606, 8629, 8662,
8697, 8699, 8719, 8736, 8751, 8769,
8794, 8833, 8872, 8903, 9002, 9031,
9066, 9088, 9112, 9128, 9145, 9162,
9247, 9268, 9285, 9303, 9325, 9342,
9366, 9383, 9400, 9421, 9444, 9461,
9485, 9512, 9514, 9561, 9576, 9594,
9610, 9624, 9639, 9659, 9677, 9695,
9716, 9733, 9750, 9768, 9783, 9808,
9847, 9888, 9914, 9978, 9994, 10010,
10031, 10052, 10068, 10088, 10103,
10119, 10139, 10155, 10171, 10195,
10231, 10259, 10286, 10307, 10322,
10337, 10352
- `\mtctocrmarg` 5513, 5538
- `\mtifont` (command) 34, 35, 80, 280, 283, 286,
563
- `\mtifont` **1**, **3228**, **3278**, **3346**, **3412**, **7551**
- `mu.tex` (old example document) 586, 588
- MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . 241, 469, ⇨[60]
- MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan 241, 515, ⇨[77]
- multibib (package) 57, 216, ⇨[156]
- multicol (package) 87, 114, 569, ⇨[237]
- multicols (environment) 87, 90, 115
- `\multicolumnmtc` 330, 335
- `\multicolumntoc` 325
- multitoc (package) 89, ⇨[290]
- mypatches (package) 88
- `\mz` 9780, 9781, 9784, 9785, 9788, 9789

N

- `\n@mti` **3240**, **3278**, **3346**, **3412**, **3554**, **3573**, **3592**
- `\n@pti` . . . **3930**, **3937**, **4021**, **4093**, **4166**, **4250**,
4269, **4288**
- `\n@sti` **4571**, **4609**, **4675**, **4740**, **4864**, **4883**, **4902**
- `\name` (command) 587
- natbib (package) . . 199, 216, 592, ⇨[117, 118]
- NAUMOV, Sergei O. 241, 512, ⇨[251]
- naustrian (language option) 36, 499, 569
- naustrian.mld (file) 227, 228, 499
- needspace (package) 54, 216, ⇨[323]
- `\NeedsTeXFormat` . . . **2654**, **7392**, 7755, 7766
- NEUKAM, Frank 85, 241, ⇨[252]
- `\newblock` 2298, 2300, 2306, 2307
- `\newbox` 2979, 2983
- newcommand (tool) ⇨[262]
- `\newcommand` (command) 42

- `\newcommand` 330, 2247, 2325, 2561,
2572, 2932, 2958, 2969, 3214, 3892,
4555, 5278, 5413, 5454, 5577, 5634,
5652, 5710, 5728, 5804, 5864, 5908,
5909, 5941, 5942, 5974, 5975, 6011,
6054, 6124, 6169, 6185, 6214, 7493–
7495, 7679, 7690, 7701, 7729, 7730,
7756, 7758, 7760, 7762
- `\newcommand*` (command) 67
- `\newcounter` . . 3176, 3178, 3212, 3218, **3874**,
3880, **4540**, 4554, 4558
- `\newenvironment` . . 1488, 5910, 5925, 5943,
5958, 5976, 7717, 7719, 7721
- `\newif` (command) 250
- `\newif` 421, 630, 2685–2727, 2729,
2731, 2733, 2735, 2737, 2739–2760,
2782, 2785, 2786, 2788, 2830, 2885–
2887, 2992, 3030, 5277, 5412, 5453,
5576, 5632, 5633, 5708, 5709, 5803,
5863, 5907, 5922, 5955, 6010, 6053,
6074, 6142, 6160, 6168, 6445–6448,
7656–7660, 7662
- `\newlength` 2661, 3901, 4560
- `\newread` (command) 266, 563
- `\newread` **2976**, 3023
- `\newtoks` **2976**
- `\newwrite` (command) 232, 267
- `\newwrite` **2660**, 3169
- `newzealand` (language option) 36, 500
- `newzealand.mld` (file) 227, 228, 500
- `ngerman` (language option) 36, 500, 569
- `ngerman.mld` (file) 227, 228, 500
- `ngermanb` (language option) . . 36, 499, 500, 569
- `ngermanb.dtx` (file) 500, 501
- `ngermanb.mld` (file) 227, 228, 499, 500
- `ngermanb2` (language option) 36, 501
- `ngermanb2.mld` (file) 227, 228, 501, 575
- `NGUYEN, Cuong` 241
- `NICOLAS, Julien` 241
- `NIEPRASCHK, Rolf` 55, 241, ⇔[**143**, **279**]
- `nocheckfiles` (option) . . 31, 51, 167–169, 201,
218, 234, 380, 567
- `\nocite` 528, 822
- `nohints` (option) 49, 77, 207, 218, 388
- `\noindent` (command) 563
- `\noindent` 3294, 3362, 3428, 4036, 4108, 4181,
4625, 4690, 4755
- `NOIREL, Josselin` 241, ⇔[**23**]
- `nolistfiles` (option) . . 49, 77, 219, 382, 575
- `\nomlfpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\nomlfpagenumbers` . 1197, **3080**, **3093**, **3099**,
7611
- `\nomlfrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\nomlfrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\nomltpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\nomltpagenumbers` . 1198, **3086**, **3093**, **3099**,
3105, **7611**
- `\nomltrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\nomltrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\nomtcpagenumbers` (command) . 43, 82, 564,
568
- `\nomtcpagenumbers` . 1196, 1453, **3044**, **3093**,
7611
- `\nomtcrule` (command) 43, 82, 564, 566
- `\nomtcrule` 1195, 1452, **5184**, **7593**
- `\noopsort` 529, 823
- `\nopagebreak` (command) 563
- `\noplfpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\noplfpagenumbers` **3080**, 3104, **7611**
- `\noplfrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\noplfrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\nopltpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\nopltpagenumbers` **3086**, 3110, **7611**
- `\nopltrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\nopltrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\noptcpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\noptcpagenumbers` **3066**, 3098, **7611**
- `\noptcrule` (command) 43, 82
- `\noptcrule` 1194, **5184**, **7593**
- `\normalcolor` 3505
- `\normalfont` 211, 216, 1463, 1473, 3505
- `\normalsize` (command) 34, 218
- `\normalsize` . 1771, 1774, 1777, 1819, 1822,
1825, 2212, 2213, 2217, 2218, 2221,
2222, 3917–3919
- `norsk` (language option) 36, 501
- `norsk.dtx` (file) 501, 502
- `norsk.mld` (file) 227, 228, 501
- `norsk2` (language option) 36, 502
- `norsk2.mld` (file) 227, 228, 502, 575
- `\noslfpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\noslfpagenumbers` **3080**, 3102, **7611**
- `\noslfrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\noslfrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\nosltpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\nosltpagenumbers` **3086**, 3108, **7611**
- `\nosltrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\nosltrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\nostcpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\nostcpagenumbers` **3056**, 3096, **7611**
- `\nostcrule` (command) 43, 82
- `\nostcrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `notoccite` (package) . 49, 85, 219, 234, 255, 281,
284, 287, 381, 414, 569, ⇔[**8**]
- `notoccite` (option) 49, 77, 219, 255, 381, 414,
569
- `nottoc` (option of `tocbibind`) 140

NULL, Tim 241, \hookrightarrow [253, 254, 318]
`\numberline` 1224, **4812**
`\numwidth` (command) 42
`\nun` 8547, 8551, 8555, 8996, 9003, 9010
nynorsk (language option) 36, 502, 503
nynorsk.mld (file) 227, 228, 502
nynorsk2 (language option) 36, 503
nynorsk2.mld (file) 227, 228, 503, 575

O

OBERDIEK, Heiko 59, 85, 211, 234, 241, 293, 297,
302, 566, \hookrightarrow [255, 277, 278]
`\oe` 2109, 2139
OETIKER, Tobias 241, \hookrightarrow [256, 257]
OLD (file) 586
Old Examples
2c.tex 585, 588
add.bib 587, 588
add.tex 586, 588
addsec.tex 578, 586, 588
amem.tex 585
app-mem.tex 588
apx.tex 588
bo.tex 588
ch0.tex 586, 588
cri.tex 586, 588
fo1.tex 585, 588
fo2.tex 585, 588
gaps.tex 584, 588
hia.tex 586, 588
hide.tex 584
hide1.tex 584, 588
hide2.tex 584, 588
hir.tex 586, 588
hop.tex 586, 588
livre.tex 586, 588
mem.tex 585, 588
mem1.tex 585, 588
mini-art.tex 588
minitoc-ex.tex 588
mtc-adds.tex 590
mtc-amem.tex 590
mtc-book.tex 590
mtc-gaps.tex 590
mtc-mem1.tex 590
mtc-subf.tex 590
mtc-tsfc.tex 590
mu.tex 586, 588
scr.tex 585, 588
second.tex 585, 588
subf.tex 585, 588
tbi.tex 585, 588

tlc.tex 586, 588
tsfc.tex 585, 588
OLKO, Mariusz 241, 504, \hookrightarrow [258]
omal (package) 41, 440, 495, \hookrightarrow [4]
omega-greek.ldf (file) 472–474
omega-polish.ldf (file) 504
omega-russian.ldf (file) 509
omega-spanish.ldf (file) 518
omega.sty (file) 198
oneside (option of *many classes*) 572
`\openin` **3687, 3753, 3814**
`\openout` 2913, 2917, **2990**, 3170, **3625, 3656**,
3703, 3731, 3768, 3792, 3829, 4328,
4342, 4413, 4437, 4473, 4497, 4533,
4943, **4961**, 5014, 5039, 5074, 5099,
5134, 7298

Options

above (placeins) 29, 30, 177
addtotoc (abstract) 50, 67, 155, 197
below (placeins) 29, 30, 177
bibtotoc (KOMA-Script) 47, 138
bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) 47
checkfiles (default) 28, 31, 57, 148,
167–169, 201, 218, 234, 380, 567
dotted (default) 44, 77, 233, 380, 566
flsection 234, 568
flsectionb 234, 568
hints (default) 49–51, 54, 67, 69,
71–73, 76, 77, 151, 157, 163, 207, 218,
235, 236, 250, 251, 253, 388, 397, 412,
415, 569, 572, 581
idxtotoc (KOMA-Script) 47
insection 29, 50, 77, 97, 105, 165, 171,
177, 190, 208, 220, 234, 235, 237, 381,
397, 413, 568, 570, 583
k-loose (default) 39, 77, 208, 236, 255,
330, 380, 574
k-tight 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 236, 255,
278, 307, 330, 380, 574
listfiles (default) 49, 57, 77, 148, 196,
210, 219, 236, 238, 382, 414, 575, 588
liststotoc (KOMA-Script) 47, 138
liststotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) 47
loose (default) 39, 77, 208, 210, 224, 233,
255, 330, 380, 566, 568
nocheckfiles 31, 51, 167–169, 201, 218,
234, 380, 567
nohints 49, 77, 207, 218, 388
nolistfiles 49, 77, 219, 382, 575
notoccite 49, 77, 219, 255, 381, 414, 569
nottoc (tocbibind) 140
oneside (*many classes*) 572
parindent (KOMA-Script) 39
parskip (KOMA-Script) 39

section (placeins) . . . 29, 30, 50, 165, 413
 shorttext . . . 50, 56, 77, 162, 199, 222, 233,
 381, 566
 sort&compress (natbib) 592
 tight . . . 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 210, 224, 233,
 255, 278, 307, 330, 380, 566, 568
 undotted 44, 59, 77, 233, 380, 566
 verbose (placeins) 29, 413
 \or (command) 226, 418
 ORTOLO, Tanguy 241, \hookrightarrow [259]
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 241, 519, \hookrightarrow [66]
 OTT, Jörg 241
 \outer (command) 266
 overcite (package) 199, \hookrightarrow [11]

P

\pack 10114
 \PackageError (command) 215, 235
 \PackageError 7753
 \PackageInfo (command) 215, 235, 569, 573
 \PackageInfo 7753
 Packages
 abstract 50, 67, 85, 155, 197, 235, 393, 572,
 \hookrightarrow [325]
 afterpage 578, \hookrightarrow [98]
 Aleph 209, 219, \hookrightarrow [40, 150]
 alnumsec . . . 50, 73, 85, 178, 197, 237, 258,
 407, 584, \hookrightarrow [196]
 alphanum . . . 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 389, 581,
 \hookrightarrow [92]
 Antomega . . . 198, 440, 472–474, 491, 504,
 508, 509, 517, 518, \hookrightarrow [194]
 appendix 49, 60–62, 85, 155, 198, 235, 389,
 569, 583, \hookrightarrow [326]
 Arabi . . . 36, 41, 198, 444, 465, 586, \hookrightarrow [178]
 ArabTeX 36, 41, 198, 440, 443, 480,
 \hookrightarrow [198, 199]
 ArmTeX . . . 41, 198, 440, 444, 566, \hookrightarrow [114]
 babel 36, 41, 72, 120,
 198, 199, 204, 232, 440–442, 446, 447,
 450–452, 455, 457–462, 465–472, 481,
 483–485, 489–494, 498–503, 505–507,
 510, 514–519, 521, 523, 525, 564, 565,
 573, 582, \hookrightarrow [43, 45, 63]
 BangTeX . . . 41, 199, 440, 447, 578, \hookrightarrow [263]
 bibtopic 57, 199, \hookrightarrow [18]
 bibunits 57, 199, 216, \hookrightarrow [155]
 booktabs 20, \hookrightarrow [132]
 captcont 50, 73, 85, 178, 199, 237, 258, 407,
 584, \hookrightarrow [108]
 caption 51, 69, 85, 165, 166, 200, 236, 258,
 408, 575, \hookrightarrow [296]

caption2 51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 259, 408,
 575, \hookrightarrow [294, 295]
 ccaption 51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 259, 408,
 575, \hookrightarrow [329]
 CervanTeX 41, 519, \hookrightarrow [36]
 chapterbib 57, 200, 201, 216, \hookrightarrow [13]
 cite 591, \hookrightarrow [10]
 CJK 36, 41, 201, 202, 223,
 225, 440, 456, 476–479, 486–488, 520,
 \hookrightarrow [15, 16, 106, 130, 216, 217, 269]
 cmcyralt 511, 512, \hookrightarrow [42, 165]
 color 114, \hookrightarrow [101]
 comment \hookrightarrow [127]
 dblacnt 580, \hookrightarrow [240]
 Devanāgarī . . . 41, 204, 207, 440, 458, 482,
 \hookrightarrow [265]
 doc 20, \hookrightarrow [239]
 docmfp \hookrightarrow [330]
 docstrip 20, \hookrightarrow [209, 241]
 ε -TeX \hookrightarrow [94, 234]
 ethiop 41, 440, 462, 463, \hookrightarrow [35]
 FarsiTeX 41, 205, 440, 464, \hookrightarrow [129]
 flafter 29, 220, 413, 583, \hookrightarrow [210, 242]
 float 29, \hookrightarrow [221]
 floatrow 29, \hookrightarrow [207]
 fncychap . . . 50, 72, 85, 177, 206, 237, 257,
 405, 584, \hookrightarrow [220]
 franc 88, 207, 228, 229
 frbib 207, 228, 229
 frnew 88, 207, 228, 229
 fullpage 142, \hookrightarrow [116]
 geometry 114, \hookrightarrow [306]
 guarani 41, 207, 440, 475, \hookrightarrow [38]
 hangcaption 50, 76, 85, 178, 207, 238, 257,
 406, 562, 589, \hookrightarrow [182]
 HLT_εTeX 207, 440, 478, 479, \hookrightarrow [190]
 hypernat 592, \hookrightarrow [32]
 hyperref 49, 59, 69, 85, 115, 137, 148,
 163–165, 167, 207, 211, 225, 230, 234,
 236, 256, 293, 394, 566, 576, 579, 591,
 592, \hookrightarrow [255, 277, 278]
 HyperTeX 207, 208, 225, \hookrightarrow [272]
 ifmtarg 208, 260, \hookrightarrow [335]
 KannadaTeX 489, \hookrightarrow [336]
 LH 512, \hookrightarrow [251]
 lhcyr 512, 513, \hookrightarrow [338]
 lipsum 90, 210, 585, \hookrightarrow [157]
 LuaTeX 219, \hookrightarrow [172]
 malayalam 41, 440, 495, 496, \hookrightarrow [3]
 marvosym 212, \hookrightarrow [170]
 mcaption . . . 51, 69, 85, 166, 210, 236, 259,
 409, 575, \hookrightarrow [171]
 minitoc 23, 245, \hookrightarrow [124, 125]
 minitoc-hyper 59, 211, \hookrightarrow [311]

- minitocoff 232, 233, 565
- minutes 212, 277, 379, \hookrightarrow [219]
- MonTeX 41, 212, 440, 448–450, 453, 454, 497, 511, 526, 527, 584, \hookrightarrow [110, 113]
- morefloats 572, \hookrightarrow [175]
- mtcmess 146, 215, 237, 420, 433, 582
- mtcoff 32, 52, 55, 92, 145, 192–194, 215, 232, 233, 419, 420, 431–433, 562, 565, 573, 574
- mtcpatchmem 145, 194, 215, 226, 434
- multibib 57, 216, \hookrightarrow [156]
- multicol 87, 114, 569, \hookrightarrow [237]
- multitoc 89, \hookrightarrow [290]
- mypatches 88
- natbib 199, 216, 592, \hookrightarrow [117, 118]
- needspace 54, 216, \hookrightarrow [323]
- notoccite 49, 85, 219, 234, 255, 281, 284, 287, 381, 414, 569, \hookrightarrow [8]
- omal 41, 440, 495, \hookrightarrow [4]
- overcite 199, \hookrightarrow [11]
- pict2e 55, \hookrightarrow [143]
- placeins 29, 49, 50, 85, 165, 177, 206, 208, 220, 234, 251, 391, 397, 413, 574, 583, \hookrightarrow [9]
- PLATEX 41, 220, 504, \hookrightarrow [258, 319]
- PLATEX_{2 ϵ} 220, \hookrightarrow [176]
- quotchap 50, 72, 85, 177, 221, 237, 257, 406, 584, \hookrightarrow [301]
- RomanianTeX 506, 507, \hookrightarrow [280]
- romannum 50, 72, 85, 178, 221, 237, 257, 406, 584, \hookrightarrow [333]
- sectsty 50, 67, 85, 128, 166, 222, 236, 251, 256, 405, 572, 583, \hookrightarrow [232]
- sfheaders 50, 72, 85, 178, 222, 237, 258, 407, 584, \hookrightarrow [222]
- shorttoc 19, 222, 562, \hookrightarrow [123]
- shortverb \hookrightarrow [239]
- SLATEX 41, 223, 520, \hookrightarrow [231]
- splitbib 57, 223, \hookrightarrow [229]
- stdclsdv 221, 223, \hookrightarrow [322]
- subfig 31, 85, 142, 199, 215, 223, 372, \hookrightarrow [109]
- subfigure 31, 85, 135, 215, 223, \hookrightarrow [107]
- thailatex 223, 520, 585, \hookrightarrow [233]
- titlesec 50, 85, 224, \hookrightarrow [39]
- titletoc 50, 85, 167, 224, 390, \hookrightarrow [39]
- tocbibind 47, 49, 62, 85, 92, 94, 95, 97, 101, 138, 140, 141, 156, 214, 215, 224, 234, 389, 567, \hookrightarrow [327]
- toch 562
- tocloft 49, 61, 62, 68, 75, 76, 85, 114, 115, 128, 156, 214, 215, 224, 390, \hookrightarrow [324]
- tocvsec2 \hookrightarrow [328]
- txfonts 34, \hookrightarrow [285]
- url \hookrightarrow [14]
- varioref 136, \hookrightarrow [238]
- varsects 50, 69, 85, 166, 225, 236, 252, 256, 405, 577, \hookrightarrow [300]
- vietnam 41, 525, \hookrightarrow [218]
- vruler 73, \hookrightarrow [181]
- wrapfig 133, 215, 225, \hookrightarrow [12]
- xr 26, 225, 293, 562, 577, \hookrightarrow [97]
- xr-hyper 225, \hookrightarrow [100]
- \PackageWarning (command) 215, 235, 569, 573
- \PackageWarning 7753
- \PackageWarningNoLine (command) 215
- \PackageWarningNoLine 7753
- \pagebreak 3325, 3395, 3461, 4070, 4142, 4215, 4657, 4722, 4788
- \pagenumbering 2386, 2392
- \pageref 2639
- \pagestyle (command) 46
- \pagestyle 1539
- pageUn (environment) 115
- Pać, Alan 241, 457, \hookrightarrow [78]
- PAKIN, Scott 241, \hookrightarrow [260–262]
- PAL, Palash Baran 241, 447, \hookrightarrow [263]
- PANDEY, Anshuman 241, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow [264, 265]
- \par (command) 577
- \paragraph (command) 204, 222
- \paragraph 1033, 1055, 1075, 1103, 1309, 1331, 1350, 1383, **3638, 4345, 4945**
- \paragraph@mtcck 5331
- \parbox 1507, 2577
- parindent (option of KOMA-Script) 39
- PARK, Minje Byeng-sen 241, \hookrightarrow [266]
- \parsep (command) 39, 278, 307
- \parsep **3251, 3989**, 4587
- \parskip (command) 39, 249, 278, 307
- \parskip (option of KOMA-Script) 39
- \parskip **2661, 3989, 4030, 4102, 4175, 4619, 4684, 4749**
- \part (command) 25, 31, 48, 49, 56, 60, 79, 151, 158, 161, 165, 179, 198, 199, 204, 221, 222, 262, 267, 288, 289, 304, 308, 311, 314, 317, 320, 324, 326, 394, 415
- part (counter) 252, 253
- \part **1**, 189, 192, 197, 301, 305, 311, 651, 737, 945, 1061, 1118, 1209, 1337, 1390, 1694, 1710, 1723, 1767, 1815, 1953, **2922**, 3185, **3474, 4315, 4424, 4484**, 5998, 6014, 6041, 6057, **6632, 7343**
- \part* (command) 68, 69, 84, 89, 262, 275, 317, 567

- `\part@mtcck` . . . 5326, 5353, 5361, 5367, 5373, 5382, 5389
- `\partbegin` (command) 60, 317
- `\partbegin` . . 1, 1420, **4222**, 4414, 4474, 4534, **7502**
- `\partend` **4222**, **4404**, **4464**, **4524**, **7502**
- PARTL, Hubert 241, \hookrightarrow [256, 257]
- `\partlof` (command) 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 171, 173, 208, 305, 308, 311, 563, 564
- `\partlof` . . 1, 652, 738, 947, 1063, 1121, 1211, 1339, **3930**, **4000**, **4072**, 6746, 6834, 6921, **7371**, **7509**
- `\partlof@` (command) 311
- `\partlof@` **3518**, **4072**, **4073**
- `\partlof@mtcck` 5320, 5344
- `partlofdepth` (depth counter) 31, 203, 220, 303, 313
- `\partlot` (command) 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 172, 174, 208, 305, 308, 314, 563, 564
- `\partlot` . . 1, 652, 738, 948, 1064, 1123, 1212, **3930**, **4000**, **4144**, 6755, 6843, 6932, **7371**, **7509**
- `\partlot@` (command) 314
- `\partlot@` **3518**, **4144**, **4145**
- `\partlot@mtcck` 5323, 5348
- `partlotdepth` (depth counter) 31, 203, 220, 303, 316
- `\partoc` (command) 308
- `\partopsep` (command) 307
- `\partopsep` 3255, **3989**, 4586
- `\parttoc` (command) 20, 31, 34, 35, 38, 39, 50, 60, 79, 83, 89, 172, 174, 208, 305, 308, 396, 397, 399, 401, 563, 564, 567, 568
- `\parttoc` 1, 31, 190, 195, 200, 302, 306, 312, 652, 738, 946, 1062, 1119, 1210, 1338, 1391, 1697, 1711, 1724, 1769, 1772, 1775, 1778, 1817, 1820, 1823, 1826, **3930**, **4000**, 6737, 6825, 6910, **7371**, **7509**
- `\parttoc@` (command) 308
- `\parttoc@` **3518**, **4000**, **4001**
- `\parttoc@mtcck` 5317, 5338
- `parttocdepth` (depth counter) . 20, 31, 79, 203, 220, 304, 310
- PATASHNIK, Oren 199, 241, \hookrightarrow [267, 268]
- `\pchapter` **4217**, **4345**, **7528**
- PECHTA, Jonathan 241, \hookrightarrow [269–271]
- PEETERS, Kasper 241, \hookrightarrow [272]
- PELGER, Matthias 241
- People
 - ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 240, 464
 - ABRAHAMS, Paul W. 240, \hookrightarrow [1, 2]
 - ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 240
 - ADDABBO, Tommaso 240
 - AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . . 240, 447, \hookrightarrow [51]
 - AKOPIAN, Vartan 198, 240, 444, \hookrightarrow [114]
 - ALEX, A. J. 240, 495, 496, \hookrightarrow [3, 4]
 - ALFORD, Mark 240, \hookrightarrow [5]
 - ANDRÉ, Jacques 240, \hookrightarrow [244]
 - ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 240
 - ANGELI, Ralf 240
 - APPEL, Walter 240, \hookrightarrow [7]
 - ARADIAN, Achod André 240
 - ÁRNASON, Einar 240, 483, \hookrightarrow [52]
 - ARNOLD, Tim 240
 - ARSENEAU, Donald 29, 49, 85, 219, 234, 240, 255, 260, 266, 281, 284, 287, 563, 566, 569, 581, 589, \hookrightarrow [8–14, 335]
 - ASLASKEN, Helmer 240, \hookrightarrow [15, 16]
 - ASPINALL, David 240
 - ÅSSEN, Ivar 240, 502
 - BACHMANN, Philipp 240
 - BADENES, Gonçal 240, 455, \hookrightarrow [53]
 - BALGARENSKY, Marin 240
 - BASSO, Pierre 240, \hookrightarrow [18]
 - BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . . 240, 498, \hookrightarrow [19]
 - BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 240
 - BAUSUM, David 240, \hookrightarrow [20, 21]
 - BAYART, Benjamin . . 46, 235, 240, 352, 569, 571, \hookrightarrow [22, 23]
 - BAYET, Thierry 240, \hookrightarrow [23]
 - BECCARI, Claudio 240, 485, 489, 490, \hookrightarrow [24, 25, 54, 62]
 - BEFFARA, Emmanuel 58, 240, \hookrightarrow [26]
 - BELET, Benoît 240, \hookrightarrow [244]
 - BELMOUHOUB, Rachid 240, \hookrightarrow [27]
 - BÉRCES, József 240, 493, 494, \hookrightarrow [55]
 - BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . . 240, \hookrightarrow [28–31]
 - BERGER, Jens 240, \hookrightarrow [32]
 - BERRY, Karl 240, \hookrightarrow [1, 2, 33, 34]
 - BEYENE, Berhanu . . . 240, 462, 463, \hookrightarrow [35]
 - BEZOS, Javier . . 85, 240, 469, 475, 517, 519, \hookrightarrow [36–39]
 - BILOTTA, Giuseppe 219, 240, \hookrightarrow [40]
 - Bíró, Árpád 240, 493, 494, \hookrightarrow [55]
 - BITOUZÉ, Denis 240, \hookrightarrow [41]
 - BLOCH, Laurent 240
 - BOSHPANOV, Georgi 240, 452, \hookrightarrow [56]
 - BOUGETTE, Patrice 240
 - BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 240
 - BOYKO, Victor 240, 511, \hookrightarrow [42]
 - BRAAMS, Johannes L. 41, 199, 232, 240, 441, 459, 460, 471, 484, 501, 502, 525, 564, \hookrightarrow [43–91, 128, 202–205, 241–244]
 - BRAUN, Felix 85, 197, 208, 240, \hookrightarrow [92]
 - BREEN, Jim 240, \hookrightarrow [93]
 - BREITENLOHNER, Peter 240, \hookrightarrow [94]

- BURBANK, Mimi 240, ⇨[273]
 BURC, Mustafa 240, 521, ⇨[57]
 BURYKIN, Alexey 240, ⇨[29–31]
 CARCAGNO, Samuele 240, ⇨[95]
 CARDI, Olivier 240
 CARELLA, David 240, ⇨[96]
 CARLISLE, David P. . . 26, 225, 240, 293, 562,
 ⇨[58, 97–101, 242–244, 246]
 CARMODY, Kevin . . 240, 458, 482, ⇨[265]
 CARRIBA, Manuel . . . 240, 469, ⇨[59, 60]
 CASPAR, Régis 240
 CHANG, Winston 240, ⇨[102]
 CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 240,
 ⇨[41, 189, 244, 304]
 CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal 240, ⇨[103]
 CHEN, Pehong 240, ⇨[104]
 CHEONG, Otfried 240, ⇨[105]
 CHEVALIER, Céline 240, ⇨[7]
 CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana 240, 516, ⇨[61]
 CHOU, Pai H. 240, ⇨[106]
 CLEGG, Marian 240
 COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . . 31, 50, 73, 85,
 240, ⇨[107–109]
 CODOGNO, Maurizio 240, 485, ⇨[62]
 COOK, David B. 240
 CORFF, Oliver 240, 497, 526, 527,
 ⇨[110–113]
 CORNET, Emmanuel 240, ⇨[7]
 COUNTCHAM, Prakash 240, ⇨[23]
 DACHIAN, Sergueï . . 198, 240, 444, ⇨[114]
 DAERR, Adrian 240
 DALALYAN, Arnak . . 198, 240, 444, ⇨[114]
 DALY, Patrick W. . . 240, ⇨[115–118, 192]
 DANIELSSON, Holger . . . 240, ⇨[269–271]
 DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . 240, 450, ⇨[81]
 DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 240
 DEPARDIEU, Éric 240, ⇨[23]
 DE RYDT, Ben 240
 DESGRAUPES, Bernard . . 240, ⇨[119–121]
 DESPRAIRIES, Cécile 240,
 ⇨[27, 146, 291, 320]
 DESREUX, Sébastien 240, ⇨[7]
 DILLER, Antoni R. 240, ⇨[122]
 DORJ, Dorjpalam 240, 497, 526, 527,
 ⇨[113]
 DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. 24,
 ⇨[23, 123–125]
 DUCHIER, Denys 240, ⇨[241]
 DUDDING, Lyndon 61, 240
 DUNG, Ta Quang 240
 ÈEHAJA, Marko 240, 515
 EIJKHOUT, Victor . . 240, ⇨[63, 126–128, 202]
 ELS, Danie 240, ⇨[132]
 ESFAHBOD, Behdad 240, 464, ⇨[129]
 ESSER, Thomas 240
 ETIENNE, Gilhooly 240, ⇨[146]
 EVERITT, Karl F. 240, 567
 FABIAN, Mike 240, ⇨[130]
 FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 240, ⇨[131]
 FEAR, Simon 240, ⇨[132]
 FENN, Jürgen 240, ⇨[133, 302, 303]
 FERGUSON, Michael J. 240, ⇨[134]
 FESSLER, Jeff 240
 FISCHER, Ulrike 240
 FLECK, Jean-Julien 240, ⇨[7]
 FLIPO, Daniel 240, 467, 468, ⇨[64, 256]
 FLOM, Peter L. 240, ⇨[135–137]
 FLYNN, Peter 240, ⇨[138–141]
 FOX, Jim 240
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. 240
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo 240, ⇨[177]
 GARCIA, Federico 240, ⇨[142]
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 240
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 55, 240, ⇨[143]
 GELDERMAN, Maarten 240, ⇨[144]
 GENSCHTE, Chuck 240, ⇨[145]
 GHODSI, Mohammad . . 240, 440, 464, ⇨[129]
 GILHOOY, Helen 240, ⇨[146]
 GLEISZNER, Markus 240, 578
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali 240
 GOOSSENS, Michel 240, 564,
 ⇨[147, 242–244]
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu 240, ⇨[23]
 GRANT, Fraser 240, 484, 514, ⇨[48, 65]
 GRAY, Norman 225, 240, ⇨[148]
 GREGORIO, Enrico 240, ⇨[149]
 GRENON, Loïc 240
 GRETHER, Charles 240, ⇨[291]
 GRINEVA, Olga A. 240, ⇨[28]
 GROT, Sébastien 240
 GUIGNARD, Micael 240
 GUNN, Marion 240, 484, ⇨[48]
 GURARI, Eitan M. 240, ⇨[147]
 HAFNER, Thomas 240, ⇨[279]
 HAGEN, Hans 240,
 ⇨[136, 150, 151, 154, 172]
 HAMZI, Boumediene 240
 HÀN, Thé Thành 240, 525, 580, 591,
 ⇨[152–154, 218]
 HANSEN, Thorsten 240, ⇨[155, 156]
 HAPPEL, Patrick 240, ⇨[157]
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 219, 240,
 ⇨[158–164, 274, 275]
 HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. . . . 240, ⇨[1, 2]
 HARIN, Alexander 241, 512, ⇨[165]
 HARRIS, Russel L. 241
 HARRISON, Michael A. 241, ⇨[104]

- HARTKE, Stephen 241, \hookrightarrow [166]
 HEAP, Danny 241
 HEFFERON, Jim 241, \hookrightarrow [168, 169]
 HEIDER, André 241
 HEIN, Thorsten 241
 HELLMAN, Sten 241, 519, \hookrightarrow [66]
 HELSTRUP, Håvard 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
 HENEL, Yvon 241, \hookrightarrow [23, 302]
 HENKEL, Hartmut 241, \hookrightarrow [172]
 HENLICH, Thomas 241, \hookrightarrow [170]
 HENNIG, Stephan 51, 69, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [171]
 HENRY, Florence 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 HERBORN, Stephen 241
 HESOLL, Jörg 241
 HOADLEY, David 241, \hookrightarrow [292]
 HOEKWATER, Taco 241, \hookrightarrow [172]
 HOENIG, Alan 241, \hookrightarrow [173]
 HOGG, Joe 241, \hookrightarrow [136]
 HØGHOLM, Morten 241
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
 HÖPPNER, Klaus 241, \hookrightarrow [174]
 HORST, Umstatte 241, 506, \hookrightarrow [67]
 HOSEK, Don 241, 572, \hookrightarrow [175]
 HU, Yufan 241, 561
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel 241, \hookrightarrow [244]
 HUSEBY, Dave W. 241
 HYNA, Helene 241, \hookrightarrow [256, 257]
 IKEDA, Hiroya 241, \hookrightarrow [176]
 IVANOV, Dmitry 198, 241, 472–474, 491, 504, 508, 509, \hookrightarrow [194]
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
 IWAKUMA, Tetsuo 241, \hookrightarrow [177]
 IZAOLA, Zunbeltz 241, 447, \hookrightarrow [51]
 JABRI, Youssef 198, 241, 444, 465, \hookrightarrow [178]
 JAEHNE, Bernd 59, 211, 234, 241, 293, 297, \hookrightarrow [311]
 JALAM, Radwan 241
 JANICH, Michael 241, 503, \hookrightarrow [85]
 JEFFREY, Alan 241, \hookrightarrow [58, 179, 180, 246]
 JERNSLITTEN, Regnor 241, 514, \hookrightarrow [68]
 JIANG, Zhuhan 73, 241, \hookrightarrow [181]
 JOLY, Loïc 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 JONES, David M. 50, 76, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [182]
 JORSSEN, Christophe 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 JUHASZ, Robert 241, 506, \hookrightarrow [67]
 JUNG, Stefan 241
 JURAFSKY, Dan 24, 231, 241, 561
 KANERVA, Mikko 241, 465, 466, \hookrightarrow [69]
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 241, 520, \hookrightarrow [233]
 KASTRUP, David 241
 KERYELL, Ronan 207, 241
 KIELHORN, Axel 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [252]
 KIM, Ki-Joo 241, \hookrightarrow [183–185]
 KLEB, Bil 50, 241
 KLEIWEG, Peter 241, 484, \hookrightarrow [70]
 KLEVELAND, Rune 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 241, 446, 455, 461, \hookrightarrow [71, 72, 83]
 KNUTH, Donald E. 202, 216, 217, 219, 223, 241, \hookrightarrow [186–189]
 KOAUNGI, Un 207, 241, 478, 479, \hookrightarrow [190]
 KOHM, Markus 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [191, 252, 281]
 KOPKA, Helmut 241, \hookrightarrow [192]
 KOPPANYI, Attila 241, 493, 494, \hookrightarrow [55]
 KORAI, Adamantios 241, 474
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent 241
 KRATT, Kai 241
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 241
 KROONENBERG, Siep 241, \hookrightarrow [193]
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. 198, 241, 472–474, 491, 504, 508, 509, 518, \hookrightarrow [194]
 KUDLEK, Manfred 241, 462, 463, \hookrightarrow [35]
 KUHN, Markus G. 241, \hookrightarrow [195]
 KULZER, Florian 241
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 241, 486, 488
 KUMMER, Olaf 241, 462, 463, \hookrightarrow [35]
 KÜSTER, Frank 50, 73, 85, 241, 515, \hookrightarrow [196]
 LABORDE, Stéphane 241
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas 241, \hookrightarrow [197]
 LAGALLY, Klaus 36, 198, 241, 443, 480, \hookrightarrow [198, 199]
 LAMPORT, Leslie 209, 241, \hookrightarrow [58, 200–205]
 LANARI, Fabio 241
 LANGE, Robert 241
 LANGMYHR, Dag 241, 501, 502, 565
 LAPKO, Olga G. 241, 452, 498, 510, 523, \hookrightarrow [29–31, 73, 206–208]
 LARSEN, Henning 241, 458, \hookrightarrow [74]
 LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 241
 L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM, \hookrightarrow [180, 203, 209–214, 315]
 LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 241
 LAUNAY, Arnaud 241
 LAUVERNET, Claire 241
 LAVVA, Boris 241, 481, \hookrightarrow [75]
 LEBACQ, André 241
 LEGRAND, Jeanne 241, \hookrightarrow [259]
 LEHMAN, Philipp 241, \hookrightarrow [215]
 LEMBERG, Werner 201, 241, 452, 456, 476–479, 486–488, 498, 510, 520, 525, \hookrightarrow [73, 216–218, 240, 315]
 LEONHARDT, Thomas 241, 568
 LE PENNEC, Erwan 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 241
 LE THUAUT, Julien 241
 LEWENBERG, Adam 241

- LICKERT, Knut 212, 241, 379, \hookrightarrow [219]
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. . . 50, 72, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [220]
 LINGNAU, Anselm 241, \hookrightarrow [221]
 LOBEL, Pierre 241
 LOKAJICEK, Milos 241, 457, \hookrightarrow [76]
 LOMBARD, Stoffel 241, 441
 LORETI, Maurizio . . 50, 72, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [222]
 LORINO, Tristan 241
 LOVE, Tim 241, \hookrightarrow [223, 224]
 LOZANO, Vincent 241, \hookrightarrow [225]
 LUECKING, Daniel H. 241
 LUNDE, Ken 202, 241, \hookrightarrow [226–228]
 LYHNE, Anders 241
 MACKAY, Pierre A. 241, 521, \hookrightarrow [57]
 MADSEN, Lars 241
 MAHONEY, Richard 241, 458, 482
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 241, 452, 510, \hookrightarrow [208]
 MARGOLIS, Bob 241, 446, \hookrightarrow [72]
 MARKEY, Nicolas . . . 241, \hookrightarrow [23, 229, 230]
 MARR, Marcus 241
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise . . 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 MART, Terry 241, 446, \hookrightarrow [71, 72]
 MASLOV, Vadim . . . 241, 511, 512, \hookrightarrow [42, 165]
 MASSIAS, Henri 63, 241
 MATTHIAS, Andreas 241
 MATTISSON, Sven 241, 520, \hookrightarrow [231]
 McDONNELL, Rowland 50, 67, 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [232]
 MCKAY, Ben 241
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant . . . 241, 520, \hookrightarrow [233]
 MENGIN, Sébastien 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 METZINGER, Jochen . . 241, 462, 463, \hookrightarrow [35]
 MICHOU, Yanick 241
 MITTELBACH, Frank 209, 232, 241, 277, 306, 330, 564, 567, 568, \hookrightarrow [58, 204, 205, 234–246]
 MOON, Young Joon 241, \hookrightarrow [247]
 MOORE, ROSS 241, \hookrightarrow [147]
 MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe . 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [191, 252]
 MORI, Lapo Filippo . . . 241, \hookrightarrow [149, 248, 249]
 MORRISON, Michael A. 241, \hookrightarrow [250]
 MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . . 241, 469, \hookrightarrow [60]
 MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan . . . 241, 515, \hookrightarrow [77]
 NAUMOV, Sergei O. 241, 512, \hookrightarrow [251]
 NEUKAM, Frank 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [252]
 NGUYEN, Cuong 241
 NICOLAS, Julien 241
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf . . . 55, 241, \hookrightarrow [143, 279]
 NOIREL, Josselin 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 NULL, Tim 241, \hookrightarrow [253, 254, 318]
 OBERDIEK, Heiko . . . 59, 85, 211, 234, 241, 293, 297, 302, 566, \hookrightarrow [255, 277, 278]
 OETIKER, Tobias 241, \hookrightarrow [256, 257]
 OLKO, Mariusz 241, 504, \hookrightarrow [258]
 ORTOLO, Tanguy 241, \hookrightarrow [259]
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 241, 519, \hookrightarrow [66]
 OTT, Jörg 241
 PAIĆ, Alan 241, 457, \hookrightarrow [78]
 PAKIN, Scott 241, \hookrightarrow [260–262]
 PAL, Palash Baran 241, 447, \hookrightarrow [263]
 PANDEY, Anshuman 241, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow [264, 265]
 PARK, Minje Byeng-sen 241, \hookrightarrow [266]
 PARTL, Hubert 241, \hookrightarrow [256, 257]
 PATASHNIK, Oren . . . 199, 241, \hookrightarrow [267, 268]
 PECHTA, Jonathan 241, \hookrightarrow [269–271]
 PEETERS, Kasper 241, \hookrightarrow [272]
 PELGER, Matthias 241
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . . . 241, 501, 502, \hookrightarrow [49]
 PICAUREAU, Paul 241, \hookrightarrow [7]
 PICHERAL, Éric 241, \hookrightarrow [164]
 PIGUET, Bruno 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 PÍŠKA, Karel 241, \hookrightarrow [273]
 PLAICE, John 219, 241, \hookrightarrow [160–164, 274, 275]
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr . . . 241, 520, \hookrightarrow [233]
 POPINEAU, Fabrice 241, \hookrightarrow [304]
 POPPELIER, Nico 241, \hookrightarrow [63]
 PORRAT, Rama 241, 481
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 241
 POURNADER, Roozbeh . . . 241, 464, \hookrightarrow [129]
 RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. 241, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow [276]
 RAHTZ, Sebastian 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [147, 154, 277, 278]
 RAICHEL, Bernd . . . 241, 471, 500, 501, 506, 507, \hookrightarrow [79, 80, 279, 280]
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro 241, 450, 505, \hookrightarrow [81]
 REINO, Keranen 241, 465, 466, \hookrightarrow [69]
 REZUŞ, Adrian 241, 506, 507, \hookrightarrow [280]
 ROBBERS, Yuri 241, \hookrightarrow [281]
 ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . . 59, 211, 234, 241, 297, \hookrightarrow [311]
 ROBERTSON, Will 241, \hookrightarrow [282]
 ROEGEL, Denis B. 232, 241, 564, 565
 ROLLAND, Christian . . 241, 451, \hookrightarrow [82, 283]
 ROULUND, Rasmus Pank 241, \hookrightarrow [281]
 ROWLEY, Chris A. 241, \hookrightarrow [58, 179, 242–246, 284]
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 241, 461, \hookrightarrow [83]
 RYNNING, Jan Michael 241, 519, 564
 RYU, Young 241, \hookrightarrow [285]
 SAAR, Enn 241, 462, \hookrightarrow [84]
 SAMSOEN, David 241

- SÁNCHEZ, Julio 241, 447, 517, ⇨[51]
 SANGEUX, Morgan 241
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie 241, ⇨[286, 287]
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar 241, 503, ⇨[85]
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth 241, ⇨[256, 257]
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias 241, 516, ⇨[61]
 SCHMIDT, Walter 241, 500, 501, ⇨[80, 288]
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. 241, ⇨[289]
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe 241
 SCHÖPF, Rainer 241, ⇨[58, 205]
 SCHRÖDER, Martin 89, 241, ⇨[290]
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth 241, ⇨[291]
 SHELL, Michael 241, ⇨[292]
 SHIN, Jungshik 241
 SHOUKAT, Ali 241
 SHVAIKA, Andriy M. 241, 523, ⇨[86]
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop 241, 520, ⇨[233]
 SINGH, Sindhu 241, ⇨[293]
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna 241, ⇨[320]
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic 241, 515, ⇨[77]
 SMITH, John 241, 458, 482, ⇨[265]
 SOCHA, Robin S. 241
 SOFRONIOU, Nick 241, ⇨[298]
 SOMMERFELDT, Axel 51, 69, 85, 200, 241,
 ⇨[294–296]
 SONG, Lianyi 241, ⇨[291]
 SOULET, Yves 241, ⇨[244]
 STEINER, Arjen 241
 STORY, D. P. 241, ⇨[297]
 STREIT, Éric 241, ⇨[23]
 STUBNER, Ralf 241
 SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. 241, 489, ⇨[336]
 SUTOR, Robert S. 241, ⇨[147]
 SWOYER, Chris 241
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 241, 472,
 ⇨[25, 87, 298]
 TALBOT, Nicola 241, ⇨[136, 299]
 TAUPIN[†], Daniel 50, 69, 85, 241, ⇨[300]
 TAYLOR, Philip 241, ⇨[136]
 THIELE, Christina 241, ⇨[136, 273]
 THUREAU, Aurélien 241
 TINNEFELD, Karsten 50, 72, 85, 241, ⇨[301]
 'T LAM, Ton 241
 TOLUŠIS, Sigitas 241, 491
 TORDELLA, Laurent 241
 TRETIN, Mark 241, ⇨[302, 303]
 TRUU, Ahto 241
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis 241, ⇨[298]
 TWS-TDS, ⇨[304, 305]
 ULRICH, Stefan 33, 241, 566, ⇨[18]
 UMEKI, Hideo 241, ⇨[306]
 UYAR, Turgut 241, 521, ⇨[57]
 VAARIO, Jari 241
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 241, ⇨[308]
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 241,
 ⇨[23, 309]
 VAQUIN, Vincent 241
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. 241, ⇨[310]
 VERNÉ, Didier 59, 211, 234, 241, 293, 297,
 ⇨[311]
 VESCO, Sylvain 241
 VEYTSMAN, Boris 241, ⇨[312]
 VIAL, Alexandre 241
 VIOLANTE, André 242, ⇨[313]
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. 242, ⇨[314]
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. 242, ⇨[314]
 VOGEL, Martin 242, ⇨[170]
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir 242, 452, 498, 510,
 ⇨[73, 315]
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. 242, 260, 567,
 ⇨[316, 317]
 VOSS, Herbert 242
 WAGNER, Zdeněk 242, 458, 482, ⇨[265]
 WALDEN, David 242, ⇨[136]
 WARD, Nigel 24, 231, 242, 561
 WARNOCK, John 242, ⇨[145]
 WAUD, Douglas 242, ⇨[318]
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 242, ⇨[319]
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. 242
 WERNER, Eduard 242, 492, 523, ⇨[88, 89]
 WEST, Daphne 242, ⇨[320]
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen 242, ⇨[269–271]
 WILLIAMS, Graham 242, ⇨[321]
 WILSON, Peter R. 47, 50, 51, 60–62,
 67, 69, 72, 85, 197, 198, 211, 242, 260,
 ⇨[322–334, 334, 335]
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin 242, 504, ⇨[241, 258]
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 242
 WOODING, Mark 242, ⇨[241]
 WRIGHT, Tim 242
 WUJASTYK, Dominik 242, 458, 482, ⇨[265]
 WYART, Damien 242, ⇨[23]
 YOGANANDA, C. S. 242, 489, ⇨[336]
 ZAIMI, Adi 242, 442, ⇨[90]
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig 242, 461
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo 242, 517, ⇨[91]
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad 242, 489,
 490, ⇨[54]
 ZENDER, Charlie S. 242, ⇨[337]
 ZENITH, Federico 242, ⇨[269–271]
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. 242, 512, 513,
 ⇨[165, 338]
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe 242
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon 242, 517, ⇨[91]
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset 241, 501, 502, ⇨[49]
 \pfill 425, 634
 PICAUREAU, Paul 241, ⇨[7]

- PICHERAL, Éric 241, \hookrightarrow [164]
 pict2e (package) 55, \hookrightarrow [143]
 PIGUET, Bruno 241, \hookrightarrow [23]
 PŘSKA, Karel 241, \hookrightarrow [273]
 placeins (package) 29, 49, 50, 85, 165, 177, 206,
 208, 220, 234, 251, 391, 397, 413, 574,
 583, \hookrightarrow [9]
 placeins.sty (file) 29
 placeins.txt (file) 29, 220
 PLAICE, John . . 219, 241, \hookrightarrow [160–164, 274, 275]
 plain.bst (file) 204, 207
 plainurl.bst (file) 238, 587
 PLT_EX (package) . . . 41, 220, 504, \hookrightarrow [258, 319]
 PLT_EX_{2_E} (package) 220, \hookrightarrow [176]
 \PLF@ 4462, 4464
 \PLF@contentsline (command) 324
 \PLF@contentsline 4424, 4464
 \PLF@explist 4422, 4448
 \PLF@line 4460, 4462
 \PLF@list 4419, 4422, 4448, 4464
 \PLF@lof 4422, 4449, 4464
 \PLF@loop 4419, 4449
 \PLF@next (command) 324
 \PLF@next 4239, 4419, 4448
 \plf@pgno 3103, 3104, 4128
 \PLF@read 4449, 4460, 4464
 \plf@rule 3205, 4105, 4139, 5193, 5196, 5199
 \plf@setform (command) 313, 362
 \plf@setform 4128, 5546
 \PLF@test (command) 325
 \PLF@test 4462, 4464, 4464
 \PLF@WriteContentsLine 4424
 \plfdotsep 5521, 5549, 5569, 5574
 \plffont (command) 34, 37, 70, 79
 \plffont 1, 1807, 3903, 3916, 4102, 7539
 \plfname 4424, 4427
 \plfpagenumbers (command) 43, 82
 \plfpagenumbers . . . 3080, 3103, 3112, 7611
 \plfpnumwidth 5503, 5547, 5567, 5572
 \plfrule (command) 43, 82, 570
 \plfrule 5184, 7593
 \pltSfont (command) 34, 37, 70, 79, 576
 \pltSfont 1, 1808, 3903, 3916, 7539
 \plftitle (command) 34, 37, 79, 440
 \plftitle 1, 4087, 4093,
 4105, 6234, 7259, 7828, 7842, 7863,
 7884, 7902, 7920, 7942, 7971, 7988,
 8005, 8023, 8039, 8054, 8069, 8084,
 8100, 8121, 8143, 8175, 8199, 8215,
 8248, 8287, 8306, 8323, 8340, 8356,
 8372, 8391, 8421, 8438, 8459, 8475,
 8508, 8548, 8565, 8582, 8603, 8622,
 8655, 8693, 8716, 8733, 8748, 8766,
 8786, 8790, 8825, 8864, 8900, 8997,
 9024, 9063, 9085, 9109, 9125, 9142,
 9159, 9244, 9245, 9265, 9282, 9300,
 9322, 9339, 9363, 9380, 9397, 9418,
 9441, 9458, 9482, 9506, 9558, 9573,
 9591, 9607, 9629, 9644, 9656, 9674,
 9692, 9713, 9730, 9747, 9780, 9800,
 9839, 9881, 9911, 9975, 9991, 10007,
 10027, 10049, 10065, 10085, 10100,
 10116, 10136, 10152, 10168, 10192,
 10238, 10256, 10283, 10304, 10319,
 10334, 10349
 \plftocrmarg 5512, 5548, 5568, 5573
 \PLT@ 4522, 4524
 \PLT@contentsline (command) 326
 \PLT@contentsline 4484, 4524
 \PLT@explist 4482, 4508
 \PLT@line 4520, 4522
 \PLT@list 4479, 4482, 4508, 4524
 \PLT@loop 4479, 4509
 \PLT@lot 4482, 4509, 4524
 \PLT@next (command) 327
 \PLT@next 4243, 4479, 4508, 4857
 \plt@pgno 3109, 3110, 4201
 \PLT@read 4509, 4520, 4524
 \plt@rule 3205, 4182, 4213, 5202, 5205, 5208
 \plt@setform (command) 316, 363
 \plt@setform 4201, 5561
 \PLT@test (command) 327
 \PLT@test 4522, 4524, 4524
 \PLT@WriteContentsLine 4484
 \pltdotsep 5521, 5564
 \pltfont (command) 34, 37, 70, 79
 \pltfont 1, 1809, 3903, 3916, 4175, 7539
 \pltname 4484, 4487
 \pltpagenumbers (command) 43, 82
 \pltpagenumbers . . . 3086, 3109, 3112, 7611
 \pltpnumwidth 5503, 5562
 \pltrule (command) 43, 82, 570
 \pltrule 5184, 7593
 \pltSfont (command) 34, 37, 70, 79, 576
 \pltSfont 1, 1810, 3903, 3916, 7539
 \plttitle (command) 34, 37, 79, 440
 \plttitle . . . 1, 4160, 4166, 4182, 6234, 7259,
 7828, 7843, 7864, 7885, 7903, 7921,
 7943, 7972, 7989, 8006, 8024, 8040,
 8055, 8070, 8085, 8101, 8122, 8146,
 8177, 8200, 8216, 8249, 8288, 8307,
 8324, 8341, 8357, 8373, 8394, 8422,
 8439, 8460, 8478, 8510, 8549, 8566,
 8583, 8604, 8625, 8658, 8694, 8717,
 8734, 8749, 8767, 8829, 8868, 8901,
 8999, 9027, 9064, 9086, 9110, 9126,
 9143, 9160, 9266, 9283, 9301, 9323,

- 9340, 9364, 9381, 9398, 9419, 9442,
9459, 9483, 9508, 9559, 9574, 9592,
9608, 9630, 9645, 9657, 9675, 9693,
9714, 9731, 9748, 9765, 9766, 9781,
9804, 9843, 9884, 9912, 9976, 9992,
10008, 10029, 10050, 10066, 10086,
10101, 10117, 10137, 10153, 10169,
10193, 10240, 10257, 10284, 10305,
10320, 10335, 10350
- `\plttocrmarg` **5512**, 5563
- `pmk` (script) 220, 227–230
- `polish` (language option) 36, 503, 504
- `polish.dtx` (file) 503
- `polish.mld` (file) 227, 228, 503
- `polish2` (language option) 36, 41, 504
- `polish2.mld` (file) ... 198, 227, 228, 504, 570
- `polski` (language option) 36, 220, 504
- `polski.dtx` (file) 504
- `polski.mld` (file) 227, 228, 504, 581
- POONLAP, Veerathanabutr ... 241, 520, ⇨[233]
- POPINEAU, Fabrice 241, ⇨[304]
- POPPELIER, Nico 241, ⇨[63]
- PORRAT, Rama 241, 481
- `portuges` (language option) 36, 505
- `portuges.dtx` (file) 450, 505
- `portuges.mld` (file) .. 227, 228, 505, 572, 573
- `portuges.mld` (file) 572, 573
- `portuguese` (language option) 36, 505
- `portuguese.mld` (file) 227, 228, 505, 573
- POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 241
- POURNADER, Roozbeh 241, 464, ⇨[129]
- `\printglossary` (command) 48
- `\printindex` (command) 48
- `\printindex` **1**, 533, 827
- `proc` (class) 24, 202, 221, 222, ⇨[203]
- `\ProcessOptions` 7282
- `\ProcessOptions*` **7282**
- `\protect` (command) 55, 58, 565
- `\protect` **1**
- `\providecommand` ... 2018, 2210, 2211, 2219,
2220, **6234**, **7259**, **7362**
- `\ProvidesFile` (command) 590
- `\ProvidesFile` 3,
54, 117, 178, 206, 230, 284, 319, 415,
626, 881, 916, 1171, 1428, 1626, 1679,
1737, 1758, 1798, 1847, 1896, 1944,
1996, 2172, 2207, 2242, 2316, 2376,
2425, 2468, 2519, 2555, 7388, 7829,
7833, 7837, 7854, 7858, 7875, 7879,
7896, 7914, 7933, 7937, 7954, 7958,
7962, 7966, 7983, 8000, 8017, 8035,
8051, 8066, 8081, 8096, 8112, 8116,
8133, 8137, 8169, 8195, 8211, 8227,
8231, 8235, 8240, 8245, 8260, 8271,
8282, 8299, 8318, 8335, 8352, 8368,
8384, 8407, 8433, 8450, 8454, 8471,
8499, 8504, 8526, 8535, 8544, 8560,
8577, 8594, 8598, 8615, 8638, 8671,
8675, 8679, 8683, 8713, 8728, 8745,
8760, 8778, 8817, 8856, 8895, 8912,
8922, 8933, 8943, 8954, 8962, 8973,
8984, 8992, 9017, 9052, 9056, 9075,
9079, 9097, 9101, 9105, 9121, 9137,
9154, 9171, 9180, 9192, 9204, 9216,
9229, 9238, 9256, 9260, 9277, 9294,
9312, 9316, 9334, 9351, 9358, 9375,
9392, 9409, 9413, 9430, 9436, 9453,
9470, 9474, 9478, 9494, 9532, 9542,
9546, 9550, 9554, 9570, 9585, 9603,
9619, 9637, 9652, 9668, 9686, 9704,
9708, 9725, 9742, 9759, 9777, 9792,
9831, 9870, 9907, 9923, 9931, 9940,
9946, 9954, 9962, 9970, 9987, 10003,
10019, 10044, 10061, 10077, 10097,
10112, 10128, 10148, 10164, 10180,
10187, 10204, 10208, 10212, 10216,
10220, 10226, 10250, 10268, 10272,
10279, 10295, 10299, 10316, 10331,
10346
- `\ProvidesPackage` (command) 147
- `\ProvidesPackage` .. **2654**, **7392**, 7754, 7767
- `\ps@chapterverso` 1999, 2008
- `\ps@empty` 1999, 2008
- `\psect` **4217**, **7528**
- `ptc` (counter) . 84, 262, 263, 274, 304, 317, 320,
324, 326
- `\PTC@` 4402, 4404
- `\PTC@contentsline` (command) 320
- `\PTC@contentsline` **4315**, **4404**
- `\PTC@explist` **4313**, **4388**
- `\PTC@line` **4400**, **4402**
- `\PTC@list` **4310**, **4313**, **4388**, **4404**
- `\PTC@loop` **4310**, **4389**
- `\PTC@next` (command) 322
- `\PTC@next` **4235**, **4310**, **4388**
- `\ptc@pgno` 3097, 3098, **4053**
- `\PTC@read` **4389**, **4400**, **4404**
- `\ptc@rule` (command) 304
- `\ptc@rule` **3898**, **4038**, **4067**, **4212**, 5184, 5187,
5190
- `\ptc@setform` (command) 310, 362
- `\ptc@setform` **4053**, **5531**
- `\ptc@spart` **4222**
- `\PTC@test` (command) 323
- `\PTC@test` **4402**, **4404**
- `\PTC@toc` **4313**, **4389**, **4404**
- `\ptc@verse` (command) 307

ptc@verse (environment) . 307, 310, 313, 316,
362, 363

\ptc@verse **3989**

\ptcCfont (command) 31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79, 305

\ptcCfont **1, 3916, 7539**

\ptcdotsep **5521, 5534**

\ptcfont (command) 31, 34, 35, 37, 40, 69–71,
79

\ptcfont **1, 1803–1810, 3903, 3916, 4030, 7539**

\ptcindent (command) 31, 79, 307

\ptcindent **3901, 3989, 4047, 4119, 4192, 7400**

\ptcname **4315, 4332**

\ptcpagenumbers (command) 43, 82

\ptcpagenumbers . . . **3066, 3097, 3112, 7611**

\ptcPfont (command) 35, 37, 70, 71, 79

\ptcPfont **1, 1805, 3903, 3916, 7539**

\ptcpnumwidth **5503, 5532**

\ptcrule (command) 43, 82

\ptcrule **5184, 7593**

\ptcSfont (command) . . 31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79

\ptcSfont **1, 3903, 3916, 7539**

\ptcSPfont (command) . . . 35, 37, 69–71, 79

\ptcSPfont **1, 1806, 3903, 3916, 7539**

\ptcSSfont (command) . . . 35, 37, 70, 71, 79

\ptcSSfont **1, 1803, 3903, 3916, 7539**

\ptcSSSfont (command) . . 35, 37, 70, 71, 79

\ptcSSSfont **1, 1804, 3903, 3916, 7539**

\ptctitle (command) . . . 34, 37, 79, 440, 517

\ptctitle . . **1, 4015, 4021, 4038, 6234, 7259,**
7828, 7841, 7862, 7883, 7901, 7919,
7941, 7970, 7987, 8004, 8022, 8038,
8053, 8068, 8083, 8099, 8120, 8141,
8173, 8198, 8214, 8247, 8286, 8305,
8322, 8339, 8355, 8371, 8388, 8420,
8437, 8458, 8474, 8507, 8547, 8564,
8581, 8602, 8619, 8652, 8689, 8691,
8715, 8732, 8747, 8765, 8783, 8822,
8861, 8899, 8995, 9021, 9062, 9084,
9108, 9124, 9141, 9158, 9243, 9264,
9281, 9299, 9321, 9338, 9362, 9379,
9396, 9417, 9440, 9457, 9481, 9502,
9504, 9557, 9572, 9590, 9606, 9628,
9643, 9655, 9673, 9691, 9712, 9729,
9746, 9763, 9764, 9779, 9797, 9836,
9875, 9878, 9910, 9974, 9990, 10006,
10025, 10048, 10064, 10081, 10083,
10099, 10115, 10132, 10134, 10151,
10167, 10191, 10237, 10255, 10282,
10303, 10318, 10333, 10348

\ptctocmarg **5512, 5533**

\ptifont (command) . . 34, 37, 40, 63, 79, 570

\ptifont **1, 3903, 3916, 3940, 3954, 3968, 4038,**
4105, 4182, 7539

Q

\qaf 7920, 7921, 7924, 7925, 7928, 7929

\quad (command) 33

\quad 1466, 2604, 2614, 2619, 2629

quotchap (package) . . 50, 72, 85, 177, 221, 237,
257, 406, 584, \hookrightarrow [301]

quote (environment) 577

\qva 8340, 8344, 8348, 9063, 9067, 9071

R

\r@mti **3240, 3278, 3346, 3412, 3554, 3573, 3592**

\r@pti . . . **3930, 3954, 4021, 4093, 4166, 4250,**
4269, 4288

\r@sti **4571, 4609, 4675, 4740, 4864, 4883, 4902**

\ra 7919, 7923, 7927, 8547, 8551, 8555

RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. . . . 241, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow [276]

\raggedbottom 930, 1185

\raggedcolumns 335

\raggedright (command) 563

\raggedright . . 1473, 2026, 2353, 3288, 3356,
3422, 3948, **4030, 4102, 4175, 4619,**
4684, 4749

RAHTZ, Sebastian 85, 241, \hookrightarrow [147, 154, 277, 278]

RAICHLER, Bernd . . . 241, 471, 500, 501, 506, 507,
 \hookrightarrow [79, 80, 279, 280]

RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . . . 241, 450, 505, \hookrightarrow [81]

rapport.doc (file) 520

\re 8339, 8343, 8347, 9062, 9066, 9070

\read 2888, 2976, **3699, 3764, 3825**, 4401, 4461,
4521, 5002, 5062, 5122

README (file) 227, 228

\ref 2108, 2367, 2639–2643, 2646, 2649

\refstepcounter **4812, 7794**

REINO, Keranen 241, 465, 466, \hookrightarrow [69]

\relax (command) 288, 317, 418, 424, 425, 428,
563

\removelastskip 334

\renewcommand (command) . 27, 28, 31, 34, 35,
37, 38, 42, 61, 62, 67, 70, 71, 73, 74,
250, 425, 428

\renewcommand 193, 194, 198, 199,
216, 325, 925, 927, 1180–1182, 1455,
1518, 1523, 1537, 1546, 1547, 2025,
2212, 2213, 2221, 2222, 2320, 7772

\renewcommand* (command) 68

report (class) 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58,
67, 68, 71, 73, 108, 125, 190, 191, 202,
204, 206, 209, 214, 215, 221, 222, 225,
263, 265, 272, 305, 587, \hookrightarrow [204]

- `\RequirePackage` . . . **2654**, 2855, **7283**, **7289**, 7395, 7769
- `\reset@font` (command) 57, 268, 563
- `\reset@font` . . **3019**, 3290, 3297, 3301, 3358, 3365, 3369, 3424, 3431, 3435, 3849, 3854, 3867, 3869, 4032, 4040, 4044, 4104, 4111, 4115, 4177, 4184, 4188, 4621, 4629, 4633, 4686, 4693, 4698, 4751, 4758, 4763
- `\resh` 8997–8999, 9004–9006, 9011–9013
- REZUŞ, Adrian 241, 506, 507, ⇨[280]
- `\rightmargin` . . 3259, 3305, 3373, 3439, 3997, 4048, 4120, 4193, 4590, 4637, 4702, 4767
- `\rmfamily` (command) 218
- `\rmfamily` 925, 1771, 1819, 2221, 2222, 2331–2335, 2337–2340, 3228, 3229, 3238, 3239, 3904, 3905, 3914, 3917–3919, 3928, 4561, 4562, 4570
- rmk (script) 221, 227–230
- ROBBERS, Yuri 241, ⇨[281]
- ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . 59, 211, 234, 241, 297, ⇨[311]
- ROBERTSON, Will 241, ⇨[282]
- ROEGEL, Denis B. 232, 241, 564, 565
- ROLLAND, Christian 241, 451, ⇨[82, 283]
- `\Roman` . . . 8390, 8393, 8396, 8419, 8621, 8624, 8627, 8651
- romanian (language option) 36, 506
- romanian.dtx (file) 506, 507
- romanian.mld (file) 227, 228, 506
- romanian2 (language option) 36, 506
- romanian2.mld (file) . . 227, 228, 506, 579, 587
- romanian3 (language option) 36, 507
- romanian3.mld (file) . . 227, 228, 507, 579, 587
- RomanianTeX (package) . . . 506, 507, ⇨[280]
- romannum (package) . . 50, 72, 85, 178, 221, 237, 257, 406, 584, ⇨[333]
- ROULUND, Rasmus Pank 241, ⇨[281]
- ROWLEY, Chris A. 241, ⇨[58, 179, 242–246, 284]
- `\rs` 8339, 8343, 8347, 9062, 9066, 9070
- `\ru` 2561, 2585
- rubber (tool) 58, 221, 574, ⇨[26]
- RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 241, 461, ⇨[83]
- `\rule` (command) 568
- `\rule` 1490, 1499, 2980, 2984, 2988, 3329, 3899, 4559, 5190–5192, 5199–5201, 5208–5210
- russian (language option) 36, 507–511
- russian-cca (language option) 36, 511
- russian-cca.mld (file) . . . 227, 228, 511, 582
- russian-cca.mlo (file) 227, 228, 511
- russian-cca1 (language option) 36, 512
- russian-cca1.mld (file) . . . 227, 228, 512, 582
- russian-cca1.mlo (file) 227, 228, 512
- russian-lh (language option) 36, 512
- russian-lh.mld (file) 227, 228, 512, 582
- russian-lh.mlo (file) 227, 228, 512
- russian-lhcyralt (language option) . 36, 512, 513
- russian-lhcyralt.mld (file) . . 227, 228, 512, 582
- russian-lhcyralt.mlo (file) . . 227, 228, 512, 513
- russian-lhcyrkoi (language option) . 36, 513
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mld (file) . . 227, 228, 513, 582
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo (file) . . 227, 228, 513
- russian-lhcyrwin (language option) . 36, 513
- russian-lhcyrwin.mld (file) . . 227, 228, 513, 582
- russian-lhcyrwin.mlo (file) . . 227, 228, 513
- russian.def (file) 511
- russian.mld (file) 227, 228, 507
- russian.sty (file) 511, 512
- russian2m (language option) 36, 41, 508
- russian2m.ldf (file) 508
- russian2m.mld (file) . . 198, 227, 228, 508, 570
- russian2o (language option) 36, 41, 509
- russian2o.mld (file) . . 198, 227, 228, 509, 570
- russianb (language option) 36, 510
- russianb.dtx (file) 452, 498, 510
- russianb.mld (file) 227, 228, 510, 581
- russianc (language option) 36, 511
- russianc.mld (file) 227, 228, 511
- RYNNING, Jan Michael 241, 519, 564
- RYU, Young 241, ⇨[285]

S

- SAAR, Enn 241, 462, ⇨[84]
- `\samepage` (command) 563
- samepage (environment) 280, 281, 283, 284, 286, 287, 309, 311, 312, 314–316, 331, 333, 334, 336–338, 563
- samin (language option) 36, 514
- samin.dtx (file) 514
- samin.mld (file) 227, 228, 514, 567
- SAMSOEN, David 241
- SÁNCHEZ, Julio 241, 447, 517, ⇨[51]
- SANGEUX, Morgan 241
- SAUDRAIS, Eddie 241, ⇨[286, 287]
- `\scan@allowedtrue` 422, 631
- SCHALÜCK, Elmar 241, 503, ⇨[85]
- `\schapter` 1, **4789**
- SCHLEGL, Elisabeth 241, ⇨[256, 257]

- SCHLEMMER, Tobias 241, 516, \hookrightarrow [61]
 SCHMIDT, Walter 241, 500, 501, \hookrightarrow [80, 288]
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. 241, \hookrightarrow [289]
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe 241
 SCHÖPF, Rainer 241, \hookrightarrow [58, 205]
 SCHRÖDER, Martin 89, 241, \hookrightarrow [290]
 scottish (language option) 36, 514
 scottish.dtx (file) 514
 scottish.mld (file) 227, 228, 514
 scr.tex (old example document) 585, 588
 scrartcl (class) 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 155, 208, 209,
 221, 222, \hookrightarrow [191, 252, 281]
 scrbook (class) 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 120,
 126, 155, 208, 209, 214, 215, 221, 222,
 \hookrightarrow [191, 252, 281]
 scrbook.cls (file) 121
 Scripts
 cmk 202, 206, 212, 227–229, 591
 emk 204, 208, 221, 227–230, 576
 fmk 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 576
 imk 204, 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 576, 584
 pmk 220, 227–230
 rmk 221, 227–230
 tmk 224, 227–230, 238, 590
 xmk 225, 227–230, 586
 \scriptsize (command) 218
 scrlettr (class) 208, 209, \hookrightarrow [191, 252, 281]
 scrlltr2 (class) 208, 209, \hookrightarrow [191, 252, 281]
 scrreprt (class) 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 137, 155, 208,
 209, 215, 221, 222, \hookrightarrow [191, 252, 281]
 \scshape (command) 218
 \scshape 2212, 2213, 2217, 2218, 2221–2223
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth 241, \hookrightarrow [291]
 secnumdepth (depth counter) 203, 204
 second.tex (old example document) 585, 588
 \sectbegin (command) 340
 \sectbegin 4841, 5005, 5065, 5125, 7502
 \sectend (command) 61, 340
 \sectend 4841, 5005, 5065, 5125, 7502
 \sectfont (command) 121
 \sectfont 1742, 1743
 \section (command) 24, 25, 28, 30,
 48, 49, 63, 81, 147, 152, 158, 159, 161,
 167, 198, 199, 204, 220–222, 263, 264,
 267, 288, 289, 328, 331, 333, 336, 339,
 343, 346, 348, 381, 394, 395, 416, 561
 section (counter) 253
 section (option of placeins) 29, 30, 50, 165, 413
 \section 1, 2939, 2955, 3474, 3638, 4345, 4802,
 4929, 5025, 5085, 6632, 6670, 7349
 \section* (command) 32, 68, 84, 234, 264, 275,
 567
 \section@mtcck 5328, 5375, 5384, 5391
 \sectionfont 2026
 \sectlof (command) 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83,
 172, 174, 208, 330, 333, 397, 563–565
 \sectlof 1, 656, 715, 742,
 804, 836, 858, 953, 1020, 1049, 1068,
 1094, 1129, 1148, 4658, 6725, 6804,
 6892, 6991, 7382, 7521
 \sectlof@ (command) 333
 \sectlof@ 3528, 4658, 4659
 \sectlof@mtcck 5322, 5381
 sectlofdepth (depth counter) 31, 203, 222, 328,
 335
 \sectlot (command) 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83,
 172, 174, 208, 330, 336, 397, 563, 564
 \sectlot 1, 656, 715, 742,
 804, 836, 858, 1149, 1857, 1877, 4723,
 6725, 6813, 6901, 7002, 7382, 7521
 \sectlot@ (command) 336
 \sectlot@ 3528, 4723, 4724
 \sectlot@mtcck 5325, 5388
 sectlotdepth (depth counter) 31, 63, 203, 222,
 328, 338
 sectsty (package) 50, 67, 85, 128, 166, 222, 236,
 251, 256, 405, 572, 583, \hookrightarrow [232]
 \secttoc (command) 28, 34, 35, 38, 39, 81, 83,
 172, 175, 208, 329–331, 563, 564
 \secttoc 1, 656, 715, 742,
 804, 836, 858, 952, 1018, 1049, 1066,
 1067, 1093, 1128, 1147, 2535, 2544,
 4593, 6795, 6883, 6980, 7382, 7521
 \secttoc@ (command) 331
 \secttoc@ 3528, 4593, 4594
 \secttoc@mtcck 5319, 5372
 secttocdepth (depth counter) 28, 31, 81, 203,
 222, 329, 332
 \seen 7919, 7923, 7927, 8547–8549, 8551–8553,
 8555–8557
 \selectlanguage 9355, 10223, 10276
 serbian (language option) 36, 515
 serbian.dtx (file) 515
 serbian.mld (file) 227, 228, 515, 580
 serbianc (language option) 36, 515
 serbianc.mld (file) 41, 227, 228, 515, 570, 580
 \setcounter (command) 28, 31, 56, 60, 79–81,
 373
 \setcounter 1, 3874, 3880, 4235, 4239, 4243,
 4540, 5884, 5908, 5922, 5955, 6125
 \setlength (command) 28, 31, 73
 \setvruler 186
 \sf 927, 1182
 \sffamily (command) 218
 \sffamily 1466, 1468, 1475, 2024
 sfheaders (package) 50, 72, 85, 178, 222, 237,
 258, 407, 584, \hookrightarrow [222]

- \sh 8198, 8202, 8206
- \sheen ... 7920, 7924, 7928, 8548, 8552, 8556
- SHELL, Michael 241, ⇨[292]
- \shin 8997, 8999, 9004, 9006, 9011, 9013
- SHIN, Jungshik 241
- \SHORTEXT (command) 563
- shorttext (option) 50, 56, 77, 162, 199, 222, 233, 381, 566
- shorttoc (package) 19, 222, 562, ⇨[123]
- \shorttoc (command) 19
- shortverb (package) ⇨[239]
- SHOUKAT, Ali 241
- SHVAIKA, Andrij M. 241, 523, ⇨[86]
- SILPA-ANAN, Chanop 241, 520, ⇨[233]
- SINGH, Sindhu 241, ⇨[293]
- SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna 241, ⇨[320]
- \sixt@n 2976
- SJIS.cap (file) 487
- SJIS.cpx (file) 488
- SL_AT_EX (package) 41, 223, 520, ⇨[231]
- \SLF@ 5063, 5065
- \SLF@contentsline (command) 346
- \SLF@contentsline 5025, 5065
- \SLF@explist 5023, 5049
- \SLF@line 5061
- \SLF@list 5020, 5023, 5049, 5065
- \SLF@lof 5023, 5050, 5065
- \SLF@loop 5020, 5050
- \SLF@next (command) 346
- \SLF@next 4853, 5020, 5049
- \slf@pgno 3101, 3102, 4710
- \SLF@read 5050, 5061, 5065
- \slf@rule 3205, 4689, 4720, 5195, 5198, 5201
- \slf@setform (command) 335, 363
- \slf@setform 4710, 5556
- \SLF@test (command) 347
- \SLF@test 5061, 5065
- \slfdotsep 5521, 5559
- \slffont (command) 34, 37, 81
- \slffont 1, 4561, 4684, 7562
- \slflotrmarg 5512
- \slfname 5025, 5029
- \slfpagenumbers (command) 43, 82
- \slfpagenumbers ... 3080, 3101, 3112, 7611
- \slfpnumwidth 5503, 5557
- \slfrule (command) 43, 82, 570
- \slfrule 5184, 7593
- \slfSfont (command) 34, 37, 81, 576
- \slfSfont 1, 4561, 7562
- \slftitle (command) 34, 38, 81, 440
- \slftitle 1, 4673, 4675, 4689, 6234, 7259, 7828, 7850, 7871, 7892, 7910, 7928, 7950, 7979, 7996, 8013, 8031, 8047, 8062, 8077, 8092, 8108, 8129, 8161, 8189, 8207, 8223, 8256, 8295, 8314, 8331, 8348, 8364, 8380, 8403, 8429, 8446, 8467, 8491, 8520, 8556, 8573, 8590, 8611, 8634, 8667, 8709, 8724, 8741, 8756, 8774, 8808, 8812, 8847, 8886, 8908, 9011, 9044, 9071, 9093, 9117, 9133, 9150, 9167, 9252, 9253, 9273, 9290, 9308, 9330, 9347, 9371, 9388, 9405, 9426, 9449, 9466, 9490, 9526, 9566, 9581, 9599, 9615, 9633, 9648, 9664, 9682, 9700, 9721, 9738, 9755, 9788, 9822, 9861, 9899, 9919, 9983, 9999, 10015, 10039, 10057, 10073, 10093, 10108, 10124, 10144, 10160, 10176, 10200, 10244, 10264, 10291, 10312, 10327, 10342, 10357
- \slftocrmarg 5517, 5558
- slides (class) 202, ⇨[236]
- SLOBODAN, Jankovic 241, 515, ⇨[77]
- \sloppy 949, 1213
- slovak (language option) 36, 516
- slovak.dtx (file) 516
- slovak.mld (file) 227, 228, 516
- slovene (language option) 36, 517
- slovene.dtx (file) 517
- slovene.mld (file) 227, 228, 517
- \slshape (command) 218
- \slshape 2332, 2334, 2337, 2339, 3239
- \SLT@ 5123, 5125
- \SLT@contentsline (command) 348
- \SLT@contentsline 5085, 5125
- \SLT@explist 5083, 5109
- \SLT@line 5121
- \SLT@list 5080, 5083, 5109, 5125
- \SLT@loop 5080, 5110
- \SLT@lot 5083, 5110, 5125
- \SLT@next (command) 348
- \SLT@next 4860, 5080, 5109
- \slt@pgno 3107, 3108, 4775
- \SLT@read 5110, 5121, 5125
- \slt@rule 3205, 4756, 4786, 5204, 5207, 5210
- \slt@setform (command) 338, 363
- \slt@setform 4775, 5571
- \SLT@test (command) 349
- \SLT@test 5121, 5125
- \sltdotsep 5521
- \sltfont (command) 34, 37, 81
- \sltfont 1, 4561, 4749, 7562
- \sltlotrmarg 5512
- \sltname (command) 566
- \sltname 5085, 5089
- \sltpagenumbers (command) 43, 82

- `\sltpagenumbers` . . . **3086**, 3107, **3112**, **7611**
- `\sltpnumwidth` **5503**
- `\sltrule` (command) 43, 82, 570
- `\sltrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\sltSfont` (command) 34, 37, 81, 576
- `\sltSfont` **1**, **4561**, **7562**
- `\sltttitle` (command) 34, 38, 63, 81, 440
- `\sltttitle` . . **1**, 4738, **4740**, **4754**, **6234**, **7259**,
 7828, 7851, 7872, 7893, 7911, 7929,
 7951, 7980, 7997, 8014, 8032, 8048,
 8063, 8078, 8093, 8109, 8130, 8164,
 8191, 8208, 8224, 8257, 8296, 8315,
 8332, 8349, 8365, 8381, 8404, 8430,
 8447, 8468, 8494, 8522, 8557, 8574,
 8591, 8612, 8635, 8668, 8710, 8725,
 8742, 8757, 8775, 8851, 8890, 8909,
 9013, 9047, 9072, 9094, 9118, 9134,
 9151, 9168, 9274, 9291, 9309, 9331,
 9348, 9372, 9389, 9406, 9427, 9450,
 9467, 9491, 9528, 9567, 9582, 9600,
 9616, 9634, 9649, 9665, 9683, 9701,
 9722, 9739, 9756, 9773, 9774, 9789,
 9826, 9865, 9902, 9920, 9984, 10000,
 10016, 10041, 10058, 10074, 10094,
 10109, 10125, 10145, 10161, 10177,
 10201, 10246, 10265, 10292, 10313,
 10328, 10343, 10358
- `\slttocrmarg` 5520
- `\small` (command) 218
- SMITH, John 241, 458, 482, ⇨[**265**]
- SOCHA, Robin S. 241
- SOFRONIOU, Nick 241, ⇨[**298**]
- SOMMERFELDT, Axel 51, 69, 85, 200, 241,
 ⇨[**294–296**]
- SONG, Lianyi 241, ⇨[**291**]
- `sort&compress` (option of `natbib`) 592
- SOULET, Yves 241, ⇨[**244**]
- `\space` (command) 33
- spanish (language option) 36, 455, 517
- spanish.dtx (file) 469, 517–519
- spanish.mld (file) 227, 228, 455, 517, 581
- spanish2 (language option) 36, 517, 518
- spanish2.mld (file) 227, 228, 518, 572
- spanish3 (language option) 36, 41, 517, 518
- spanish3.mld (file) 198, 227, 228, 518, 574
- spanish4 (language option) 36, 517, 519
- spanish4.mld (file) 227, 228, 519, 579
- `\spart` **1**
- `\special` (command) 207, 208
- `splitbib` (package) 57, 223, ⇨[**229**]
- `\star` 1518, 1523
- `\starchapter` (command) 295
- `\starchapter` **3539**, **3656**, **4369**
- `\starparagraph` **3670**, **4369**, **4976**
- `\starp` 4330
- `\starsection` (command) 339
- `\starsection` **3670**, **4369**, **4802**, **4961**
- `\starsubparagraph` **3670**, **4369**, **4976**
- `\starsubsection` **3670**, **4369**, **4976**
- `\starsubsubsection` **3670**, **4369**, **4976**
- `stc` (counter) 84, 262, 264, 274, 329, 343, 346,
 348, 567
- `\STC@` 5003, 5005
- `\STC@contentsline` (command) 343
- `\STC@contentsline` **4929**, **5005**
- `\STC@explist` **4927**, **4989**
- `\STC@line` **5001**, **5003**
- `\STC@list` **4924**, **4927**, **4989**, **5005**
- `\STC@loop` **4924**, **4990**
- `\STC@next` (command) 344
- `\STC@next` **4849**, **4924**, **4989**
- `\stc@pgno` 3095, 3096, **4642**
- `\STC@read` **4990**, **5001**, **5005**
- `\stc@rule` (command) 329
- `\stc@rule` **4548**, **4624**, **4654**, **4719**, **4754**, **4785**,
 5186, 5189, 5192
- `\stc@sect` **4841**
- `\stc@setform` (command) 333, 362
- `\stc@setform` **4642**, **5541**
- `\STC@test` (command) 345
- `\STC@test` **5003**, **5005**
- `\STC@toc` **4927**, **4990**, **5005**
- `stc@verse` (environment) 330, 332, 333, 335,
 338, 362, 363, 572
- `\stc@verse` 4582
- `\stcdotsep` **5521**, 5544
- `\stcfont` (command) 28, 34, 35, 37, 81
- `\stcfont` **1**, 925, **4561**, **4619**, **7562**
- `\stcindent` (command) 28, 81, 329
- `\stcindent` 923, 2526, **4548**, 4590, **4636**, **4701**,
 4766, **7396**
- `\stclotrmarg` **5512**
- `\stcname` **4929**, **4933**, **4961**
- `\stcpagenumbers` (command) 43, 82
- `\stcpagenumbers` **3056**, 3095, **3112**, **7611**
- `\stcPfont` (command) 35, 37, 81
- `\stcPfont` **1**, 928, **4561**, **7562**
- `\stcpnumwidth` **5503**, 5542
- `\stcrule` (command) 43, 82
- `\stcrule` **5184**, **7593**
- `\stcSPfont` (command) 35, 37
- `\stcSPfont` **1**, 928, **4561**, **7562**
- `\stcSSfont` (command) 28, 35, 37, 81
- `\stcSSfont` **1**, 927, **4561**, **7562**
- `\stcSSSfont` (command) 35, 37, 81
- `\stcSSSfont` **1**, 928, **4561**, **7562**
- `\stctitle` (command) 34, 38, 81, 440

- `\stctitle` **1, 4609, 4624, 6234, 7259, 7828**, 7849, 7870, 7891, 7909, 7927, 7949, 7978, 7995, 8012, 8030, 8046, 8061, 8076, 8091, 8107, 8128, 8159, 8187, 8206, 8222, 8255, 8294, 8313, 8330, 8347, 8363, 8379, 8402, 8428, 8445, 8466, 8490, 8519, 8555, 8572, 8589, 8610, 8633, 8666, 8705, 8707, 8723, 8740, 8755, 8773, 8805, 8844, 8883, 8907, 9009, 9041, 9070, 9092, 9116, 9132, 9149, 9166, 9251, 9272, 9289, 9307, 9329, 9346, 9370, 9387, 9404, 9425, 9448, 9465, 9489, 9522, 9524, 9565, 9580, 9598, 9614, 9632, 9647, 9663, 9681, 9699, 9720, 9737, 9754, 9772, 9787, 9819, 9858, 9897, 9918, 9982, 9998, 10014, 10037, 10056, 10072, 10092, 10107, 10123, 10143, 10159, 10175, 10199, 10243, 10263, 10290, 10311, 10326, 10341, 10356
- `\stctocrmarg` 5514, 5543
- `stdclsdv` (package) 221, 223, [↪\[322\]](#)
- STEINER, Arjen 241
- `\stepcounter` (command) . . . 32, 262, 264, 265
- `\stepcounter` . . **2922, 2955, 2967, 3182**, 3624, **3656**, 3730, 3791, **4222**, 4317, 4331, 4426, 4486, 4932, **4961**, 5028, 5088
- `\stifont` (command) 34, 38, 81
- `\stifont` **1, 4561, 4624, 4689, 4754, 7562**
- STORY, D. P. 241, [↪\[297\]](#)
- STREIT, Éric 241, [↪\[23\]](#)
- STUBNER, Ralf 241
- subappendices (environment) 198
- subf.tex (old example document) . . 585, 588
- subfig (package) . . . 31, 85, 142, 199, 215, 223, 372, [↪\[109\]](#)
- `\subfigbottomskip` 2327, 2357
- `\subfigcapskip` 2647
- `\subfigtopskip` 2326, 2357
- subfigure (package) 31, 85, 135, 215, 223, [↪\[107\]](#)
- `\subfigure` 2355, 2358, 2360, 2600, 2605, 2610, 2615, 2620, 2625, 2630, **3743, 4439, 5041**
- `\subfigure@mtcck` . . 5335, 5340, 5350, 5356, 5370, 5377, 5393
- `\subparagraph` (command) 204, 222
- `\subparagraph` . 1035, 1057, 1077, 1113, 1385, **3638, 4345, 4945**
- `\subparagraph@mtcck` 5332
- SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. 241, 489, [↪\[336\]](#)
- `\subref` 2640–2643
- `\subsection` (command) . . 204, 222, 339, 561
- `\subsection` 370, 657, 666, 716, 725, 743, 752, 805, 814, 837, 846, 859, 868, 955, 957, 959, 961, 964, 966, 968, 970, 972, 974, 976, 978, 980, 982, 984, 986, 988, 990, 992, 994, 996, 998, 1000, 1002, 1004, 1006, 1008, 1010, 1012, 1014, 1022, 1044, 1051, 1059, 1071, 1087, 1099, 1115, 1130, 1132, 1134, 1143, 1151, 1153, 1155, 1157, 1278, 1305, 1325, 1346, 1372, 1589, 1594, 1606, 1611, 1648, 1784, 1786, 1790, 1792, 1832, 1834, 1838, 1840, 2047, 2066, 2085, 2092, 2102, 2106, 2118, 2124, 2135, 2142, 2148, 2536, 2541, 2545, 2550, **3638, 4345, 4945**
- `\subsection@mtcck` 5329
- `\subsubsection` (command) 204, 222
- `\subsubsection` . . 734, 735, 1031, 1053, 1073, 1101, 1307, 1328, 1348, 1374, 2070, 2075, 2080, 2129, 2153, 2159, 2164, 2537, 2539, 2546, 2548, **3638, 4345, 4945**
- `\subsubsection@mtcck` 5330
- `\subtable` **3804, 4499, 5101**
- `\subtable@mtcck` . . . 5336, 5342, 5346, 5358, 5364, 5379, 5386
- Suffixes *see* Extensions
- SUTOR, Robert S. 241, [↪\[147\]](#)
- `\sv@chapter` **3464**
- `\SV@endmtc@verse` 333, 337
- `\sv@minilof@` **3508**
- `\sv@minilot@` **3508**
- `\sv@minitoc@` **3508**
- `\SV@mtc@verse` 332, 334
- `\sv@part` **4222**
- `\sv@partlof@` **3518**
- `\sv@partlot@` **3518**
- `\sv@parttoc@` **3518**
- `\sv@sect` 4795, 4801
- `\sv@sectlof@` **3528**
- `\sv@sectlot@` **3528**
- `\sv@secttoc@` **3528**
- `\sv@spart` **4222**
- swedish (language option) 36, 519
- swedish.dtx (file) 519
- swedish.mld (file) 227, 228, 519
- swedish2 (language option) 36, 520
- swedish2.mld (file) 227, 228, 520, 583
- SWOYER, Chris 241
- SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 241, 472, [↪\[25, 87, 298\]](#)

T

- `\taa` 8547–8549, 8551–8553, 8555–8557
- `\table` (command) 301
- `table` (environment) 200, 223
- `\table` **3804, 4499, 5101**
- `\table@mtc` . . . 5334, 5341, 5345, 5357, 5363, 5378, 5385
- `\tableofcontents` (command) . 20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 50, 55, 60, 62, 75, 78–81, 173–175, 234, 267, 274, 396, 401, 567, 571
- `\tableofcontents` **1**, 11, 214, 240, 342, 434, 645, 888, 942, 1205, 1631, 1693, 1747, 1766, 1814, 1951, 2034, 2182, 2228, 2250, 2342, 2388, 2444, 2474, **2949, 6694**, 6912, 6947, 6982
- `\tableofcontents*` (command) 132
- `tabular` (environment) . 280, 283, 286, 310, 312, 315, 332, 334, 337
- TALBOT, Nicola 241, ⇨[136, 299]
- TAUPIN[†], Daniel 50, 69, 85, 241, ⇨[300]
- `\tav` . 8995, 8997, 8999, 9000, 9002, 9004, 9006, 9007, 9009, 9011, 9013, 9014
- TAYLOR, Philip 241, ⇨[136]
- `tbi.tex` (old example document) . . . 585, 588
- TDS 212, 223, 224, 228–230, 238, 590
- `\testtemp` 2560, 2562–2565, 2568
- `\tet` 9000, 9007, 9014
- `\textbf` (command) 218
- `\textheight` 2523
- `\textit` (command) 218
- `\textit` 1493
- `\textmd` (command) 218
- `\textrm` (command) 218
- `\textsc` (command) 218
- `\textsc` . . . 466, 2028, 2042, 2044, 2099, 2111, 2247
- `\textsf` (command) 218
- `\textsf` 463, 594, 602, 610
- `\textsl` (command) 218
- `\textsl` 466, 676, 763
- `\textsuperscript` 2018
- `\texttt` (command) 218
- `\texttt` 490, 596, 604, 612, 698, 787
- `\textup` (command) 218
- `\textwidth` (command) 587
- `\textwidth` 2521
- `\tf@mtc` (command) 249, 266, 414
- `\tf@mtc` . . **2660, 2885, 2990, 3611, 3621, 3625, 3656, 3703, 3731, 3768, 3792, 3829, 3845, 3865, 4307, 4315**, 4341, 4342, 4412, 4413, **4424**, 4436, 4437, 4472, 4473, **4484**, 4496, 4497, 4532, 4533, **4921, 4929**, 4942, 4943, 4973, 4974, 5013, 5014, **5025**, 5038, 5039, 5073, 5074, **5085**, 5098, 5099, 5133, 5134, **7292, 7528**
- `thai` (language option) 36, 520
- `thai.ldf` (file) 520
- `thai.mld` (file) 227, 228, 520, 570
- `thai.mlo` (file) 227, 228, 520
- `thaicjk.ldf` (file) 520
- `thailatex` (package) 223, 520, 585, ⇨[233]
- `\The@chapter` (command) 567
- `\The@mtc` (command) 276, 567
- `\The@mtc` . **3205**, 3266, 3268, 3334, 3336, 3400, 3402
- `\thechapter` 1466, 1547, 7814, 7817
- `\themtc` (command) 276
- `\themtc` . . **3205, 3621, 3625, 3656**, 3728, **3731**, 3789, **3792**
- `\Thepart` (command) 304
- `\Thepart` **3880, 4001, 4073, 4145**
- `\theptc` (command) 304
- `\theptc` . . **3880, 4315**, 4334, 4335, 4338, 4339, **4424**, 4429, 4430, 4433, 4434, **4484**, 4489, 4490, 4493, 4494
- `\thesection` 1546, 1547, 2025
- `\thestc` . . **4594, 4659, 4724**, 4779, **4929**, 4935, 4936, 4939, 4940, **4961, 5025**, 5031, 5032, 5035, 5036, **5085**, 5091, 5092, 5095, 5096
- THIELE, Christina 241, ⇨[136, 273]
- `\thispageminilofstyle` (command) . 83, 283
- `\thispageminilofstyle` . . **3147, 3344, 7638**
- `\thispageminilotstyle` (command) . 83, 286
- `\thispageminilotstyle` . . **3147, 3410, 7638**
- `\thispageminitocstyle` (command) . 83, 280
- `\thispageminitocstyle` . . **3147, 3276, 7638**
- `\thispagepartlofsty` (command) . . 45, 83, 566
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . . **3147, 4087, 7629**
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` (command) . . 45, 83, 566
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` . . **3147, 4160, 7629**
- `\thispageparttocstyle` (command) . . 45, 83, 272, 566
- `\thispageparttocstyle` . . **3147, 4015, 7629**
- `\thispagesectlofsty` (command) 83
- `\thispagesectlofsty` . . **3147, 4672, 7647**
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` (command) 83
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` . . **3147, 4737, 7647**
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` (command) 83
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` . . **3147, 4607, 7647**
- `\thispagestyle` (command) . . 45, 46, 83, 272
- `\thispagestyle` **3147**
- THUREAU, Aurélien 241

tight (option) . . . 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 210, 224,
 233, 255, 278, 307, 330, 380, 566, 568
 \tightmtcfalse (command) 39, 78
 \tightmtcfalse 1, 2785, 6130, 7657
 \tightmtctrue (command) 39, 78
 \tightmtctrue 1, 6129
 TINNEFELD, Karsten . . . 50, 72, 85, 241, ↪[301]
 \tiny (command) 218
 \title 2027
 titlesec (package) 50, 85, 224, ↪[39]
 titletoc (package) . . 50, 85, 167, 224, 390, ↪[39]
 titletoc.sty (file) 224
 'T LAM, Ton 241
 tlc.tex (old example document) . . . 586, 588
 tmk (script) 224, 227–230, 238, 590
 tocbibind (package) 47, 49, 62, 85, 92, 94, 95, 97,
 101, 138, 140, 141, 156, 214, 215, 224,
 234, 389, 567, ↪[327]
 tocdepth (depth counter) 31, 60, 68, 79–81, 203,
 224, 276, 281, 284, 373, 561, 572
 toch (package) 562
 \toclevel@chapter 2797
 \toclevel@paragraph 2801
 \toclevel@part 2796
 \toclevel@section 2798
 \toclevel@starchapter 2797
 \toclevel@starparagraph 2801
 \toclevel@startpart 2796
 \toclevel@starsection 2798
 \toclevel@starsubparagraph 2802
 \toclevel@starsubsection 2799
 \toclevel@starsubsubsection 2800
 \toclevel@subparagraph 2802
 \toclevel@subsection 2799
 \toclevel@subsubsection 2800
 \toclevel@xchapter 2793
 \toclevel@xpart 2792
 \toclevel@xsect 2794
 \toclevel@xsection 2795
 tocloft (package) 49, 61, 62, 68, 75, 76, 85,
 114, 115, 128, 156, 214, 215, 224, 390,
 ↪[324]
 tocloft.pdf (file) 75
 tocvsec2 (package) ↪[328]
 TODO (file) 224, 227, 228
 Toluŝis, Sigita 241, 491
 Tools
 newcommand ↪[262]
 rubber 58, 221, 574, ↪[26]
 urlbst . . . 204, 207, 225, 237, 582, ↪[148]
 xargs 575
 \topsep (command) 278, 307
 \topsep 3251, 3989
 TORDELLA, Laurent 241

TRETIN, Mark 241, ↪[302, 303]
 TRUU, Ahto 241
 tsfc.tex (old example document) . . . 585, 588
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis 241, ↪[298]
 \ttfamily (command) 218
 \ttfamily 1774, 1777, 1822, 1825
 turkish (language option) 36, 521
 turkish.dtx (file) 521
 turkish.mld (file) 227, 228, 521
 TWS-TDS, ↪[304, 305]
 txfonts (package) 34, ↪[285]
 \typeout (command) 569

U

u8hangul.mld (file) 581
 u8hangul.mlo (file) 581
 u8hangul.tex (file) 478
 u8hanja.mld (file) 581
 u8hanja.mlo (file) 581
 u8hanja.tex (file) 479
 uighur (language option) 36, 521
 uighur.mld (file) 227, 228, 521, 584
 uighur2 (language option) 36, 522
 uighur2.mld (file) 227, 228, 522, 584
 uighur3 (language option) 36, 522
 uighur3.mld (file) 227, 228, 522, 584
 UKenglish (language option) 36, 522
 UKenglish.mld (file) 227, 228, 522, 573
 ukraineb (language option) 36, 522, 523
 ukraineb.dtx (file) 523
 ukraineb.mld (file) 227, 228, 522
 ukrainian (language option) 36, 522, 523
 ukrainian.mld (file) . . 227, 228, 522, 523, 580
 ULRICH, Stefan 33, 241, 566, ↪[18]
 UMEKI, Hideo 241, ↪[306]
 undotted (option) . . . 44, 59, 77, 233, 380, 566
 \undottedmtcfalse (command) 78
 \undottedmtcfalse 3030, 6136, 7659
 \undottedmtctrue (command) 78
 \undottedmtctrue 6135
 \unhcopy 2982, 2986
 \unitlength . . 1025, 1038, 1080, 1106, 1137,
 1293, 1299, 1312, 1353, 1377, 1402
 \unpenalty 2989
 unsrt 49
 uppersorbian (language option) . . 36, 523, 524
 uppersorbian.mld (file) 227, 228, 523, 524, 580
 \upshape (command) 218
 \upshape . . 925, 1771, 1774, 1777, 1819, 1822,
 1825, 2331, 2333, 2335, 2338, 2340,
 3228, 3229, 3238, 3904, 3905, 3914,
 3917–3919, 3928, 4561, 4562, 4570

url (package) \hookrightarrow [14]
 \url 597, 605, 613
 urlbst (tool) . . . 204, 207, 225, 237, 582, \hookrightarrow [148]
 USenglish (language option) 36, 524
 USenglish.mld (file) 227, 228, 524, 573
 \usepackage (command) . . . 26–29, 31, 75, 194,
 197, 220, 221, 420, 439
 \usepackage 1, 5–7, 56, 119, 180, 183,
 184, 208, 209, 232–234, 236, 286–291,
 321–324, 327, 417–419, 427, 428, 628,
 636, 637, 883, 884, 918–920, 1173–
 1176, 1430, 1432–1439, 1449, 1450,
 1628, 1681–1684, 1739, 1740, 1760–
 1762, 1800–1802, 1849, 1850, 1898,
 1899, 1946, 1947, 2010–2017, 2174–
 2177, 2179, 2209, 2215, 2216, 2244,
 2246, 2318, 2323, 2324, 2380–2384,
 2427, 2470, 2471, 2525, 2557–2559,
 7675
 usorbian (language option) 36, 523, 524
 usorbian.dtx (file) 523
 usorbian.mld (file) 227, 228, 524, 581
 UYAR, Turgut 241, 521, \hookrightarrow [57]

V

VAARIO, Jari 241
 \value . . . 2768, **7011**, 8388, 8391, 8394, 8411,
 8619, 8622, 8625, 8642, 8652, 8655,
 8658
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 241, \hookrightarrow [308]
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas . . . 241,
 \hookrightarrow [23, 309]
 VAQUIN, Vincent 241
 varioref (package) 136, \hookrightarrow [238]
 varsects (package) 50, 69, 85, 166, 225, 236, 252,
 256, 405, 577, \hookrightarrow [300]
 \vav . 8995, 8998, 9000, 9002, 9005, 9007, 9009,
 9012, 9014
 \vbox 2356, 2359, 2361, 2574, 2581
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. 241, \hookrightarrow [310]
 verbose (option of placeins) 29, 413
 VERNÉ, Didier 59, 211, 234, 241, 293, 297,
 \hookrightarrow [311]
 verse (environment) . . . 33, 278, 307, 330, 561
 VESCO, Sylvain 241
 VEYTSMAN, Boris 241, \hookrightarrow [312]
 \vfil 2356, 2359, 2361, 2575, 2580
 \vfill 1494, 1511
 VIAL, Alexandre 241
 vietnam (package) 41, 525, \hookrightarrow [218]
 vietnam (language option) 36, 525
 vietnam.mld (file) 227, 228, 525, 565

vietnamese (language option) 36, 525
 vietnamese.mld (file) 227, 228, 525
 VIOLANTE, André 242, \hookrightarrow [313]
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. 242, \hookrightarrow [314]
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. 242, \hookrightarrow [314]
 VOGEL, Martin 242, \hookrightarrow [170]
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir 242, 452, 498, 510,
 \hookrightarrow [73, 315]
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. . . . 242, 260, 567,
 \hookrightarrow [316, 317]
 VOSS, Herbert 242
 \vref 2370, 2371
 \vrule (command) 568
 \vrule 2566, 2567, 2569
 vruler (package) 73, \hookrightarrow [181]
 \vspace* (command) 563

W

WAGNER, Zdeněk 242, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow [265]
 WALDEN, David 242, \hookrightarrow [136]
 WARD, Nigel 24, 231, 242, 561
 WARNOCK, John 242, \hookrightarrow [145]
 WAUD, Douglas 242, \hookrightarrow [318]
 \waw 7921, 7925, 7929, 8549, 8553, 8557
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 242, \hookrightarrow [319]
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. 242
 welsh (language option) 36, 525
 welsh.dtx (file) 525
 welsh.mld (file) 227, 228, 525
 WERNER, Eduard 242, 492, 523, \hookrightarrow [88, 89]
 WEST, Daphne 242, \hookrightarrow [320]
 while.tip (file) 260
 \widowpenalty (command) 563
 WINHOUT, Jeroen 242, \hookrightarrow [269–271]
 WILLIAMS, Graham 242, \hookrightarrow [321]
 WILSON, Peter R. 47, 50, 51, 60–62,
 67, 69, 72, 85, 197, 198, 211, 242, 260,
 \hookrightarrow [322–334, 334, 335]
 win-gn.def (file) 475
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin 242, 504, \hookrightarrow [241, 258]
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 242
 WOODING, Mark 242, \hookrightarrow [241]
 wrapfig (package) 133, 215, 225, \hookrightarrow [12]
 wrapfigure (environment) 134, 215, 225
 wratable (environment) 225
 WRIGHT, Tim 242
 \write 2775, 2778, 2914, **2990**, **3845**, **3865**, 7302
 WUJASTYK, Dominik 242, 458, 482, \hookrightarrow [265]
 WYART, Damien 242, \hookrightarrow [23]

Y

```
\ya . . . . . 8548, 8549, 8552, 8553, 8556, 8557
\yahamza . 7920, 7921, 7924, 7925, 7928, 7929
\ychapter (command) . . . . . 572
\yod . . . . . 8996–8999, 9003–9006, 9010–9013
YOGANANDA, C. S. . . . . 242, 489, ↪[336]
\ypart (command) . . . . . 572
\ysection (command) . . . . . 572
```

\z@ (command)	568
ZAIMI, Adi	242, 442, ↪[90]
ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig	242, 461
ZAVRTANIK, Danilo	242, 517, ↪[91]
ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad	242, 489, 490, ↪[54]
ZENDER, Charlie S.	242, ↪[337]
ZENITH, Federico	242, ↪[269–271]
ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V.	242, 512, 513, ↪[165, 338]
ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe	242
ŽLAJPAH, Leon	242, 517, ↪[91]